



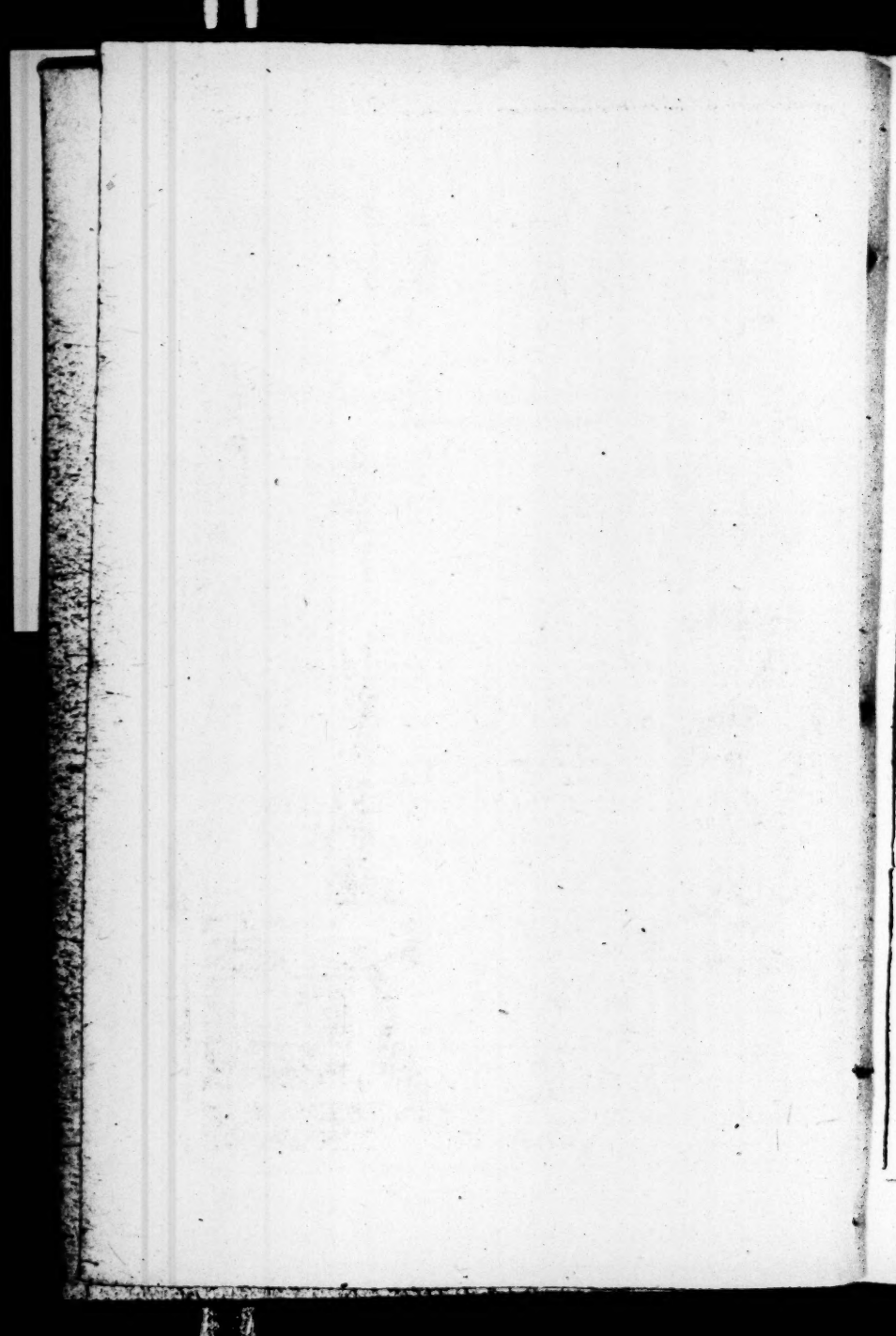
A
FRENCH GRAMMAR &
SYNTAXE, Containing most
 exact & certaine Rules, for y^e
Pronunciation, Orthography,
Construction and vse of the
French Language. Written
in french by
C. H. MAUPAS.

of Blois.
Translated into English
with many additions and ex-
plications, peculiarly usefull
to the English.
Together with a preface and
an Introduction, wherein are
conteined, diuerse necessary
Instructions, for y^e better vnder-
standing of it. by W. A.

London.
Printed for Richard Mylne
in little Brittain at y^e signe
of 5^e Paul. 1634.



G. Glover fecit.



A
FRENCH GRAM.

mar and Syntaxe, Contay-
ning most Exact and certaine
Rules, for the Pronunciation, Or-
thography, Construction, and
Vſe of the French Lan-
guage.

Written in *French*, by CH. MAV-
PAS of *Blois*.

Translated into English, with
many Additions and Explicati-
ons, peculiarly usefull to us
English.

Together with a Preface and an Intro-
duction, wherein are contained di-
vers necessary Instructions,
for the better understan-
ding of it.

By W. A.

London Printed by B. A. and T. F. for
Rich: Mynne, dwelling in little Bri-
taine, at the signe of St. Paul. 1634.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.

MADE IN U.S.A.



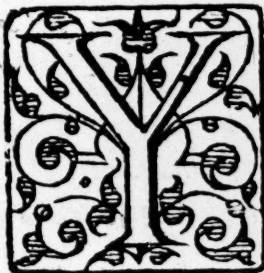
TO
THE RIGHT

Gracious Prince

GEORGE,

Duke, Marquess and Earle
of Buckingham, Earle of Co-
ventry, Vicount Villers, and
Baron of Whaddon.

Gen. Rec. 30 Aug. 43 King = 1634



*Our Noble Father
(Right Gracious)
was a man, whom,
out of a secret in-
stinct of Nature, I
ever honoured most*

A 3 . high-

THE EPISTLE

highly : and having the honour to be knowne to him, though but for a small time, I received from him such favours, as made me out of gratitude, what I was naturally before, his truly devoted Servant. Now, though the fruits of his Favour dyed with him, yet I should much doubt the reality of my former respects, if I were not a most affectionate honourer of his whole Family : or if, being his debtour, I should not acknowledge my selfe such to your Grace, who are now Heyre to all that was his. I cannot therefore forbear, to make my addresse unto you, and tell you, that he, who for his rare endowments, was so firmly loved, and of so neere trust, to two such perfectly compleat Princes, as King JAMES of blessed Memory, and our present King CHARLES, hath layd this Obligation upon your Grace, by being your Father

DEDICATORIE.

ther, that you must follow his steps, because you inherit his Honour. One way that Hee tooke, to enable himselfe for his high Employments, was travailling into Foraigne Countreyes, observing their Customes and Manners, and learning their Languages: All which Particulars, though Your Graces tender yeares will not yet permit, yet their Languages, you may, by the helpe of good Teachers, be so well skill'd in, that, when your Grace shall come into other Countreyes, you may study the men, while others study their Language: and so make a quicker dispatch of the maine businesse of your Travailes. That your Grace may doe this with better advantage in the French, I here humbly present you with the best Instructions for that Language, by the consent of all that know the Booke,

THE EPISTLE

that ever were written. They are the Fruits of neere thirty yeares Observation and Teaching, and therefore, in Reason, likely to be more Exact, then any man can helpe you to, that eyther observeth onely for his owne use, as almost all Travailers doe, or that teacheth onely what other men have set downe to his hand in English, many yeares agoe, as most of our French Teachers doe. The Authour of this Booke, was Teacher to my Lord your Father for the French Tongue, and the Booke it selfe, by him very prudently Dedicated to his Grace: For who would not glory to be the Master of so good a proficient? Or who would not desire to have him for his Master, that had him for his Scholler?

The Booke was much sought after when it came first into England:
but

DEDICATORIE.

but, the Rules being written in French, it could not be usefull to any, but those that understood French already. I have therefore Translated it into English, partly for the Benefit of our English Nobility and Gentry, who are commonly taught by this Grammar, and are forced, when they travaile into France, first to learne French enough, to converse with their Teachers, before they can learne of their Teachers, how to converse with others: but chiefly, out of a desire to doe your Grace some Service, who are the Sonne of that Father, whose memory I must eyther honour, or be ingratefull: and of that Mother, whose outward Grace and demeanour, hath such a large measure of Naturall sweetnesse, that it draweth all eyes upon her, and layeth upon all hearts,
though

*

THE EPISTLE

though Gentle, yet powerfull Com-
mands, first to attend her Graces
pleasure, before they can proffer their
Service elsewhere. To this when I
adde, the consideration of her perfect
Comingall Love to your Graces No-
ble Father, her tender care of your
Graces Education, with your hope-
full Brother and Sister: Her Prudence
in governing her Family, and ordering
her Estate, together with her other
Vertues (so call and conspicuous, that
no man yet durst ever doubt of them)
I must needs say with the rest of the
World, that all things in her Grace,
are most suitable to the Greatnesse of
of her Princely Husband, and her owne
high birth: and therefore, that she is
to be served, by me as well as others, in
her designements, among which, your
Graces Education (as I am informed)
is one of the chiefest.

May

DEDICATORIE.

*May it please your Grace therefore,
to accept these my Labours, which with
my selfe, I humbly cast at
your Graces feete, out of a
most affectionate de-
sire to be honou-
red with the
Title of*

**Your Graces humbly
devoted Servant,**

W. AVFIELD.

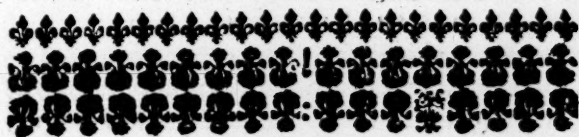
DEB. 1840

My dear Sir,
I have the honor to acknowledge
the receipt of your letter of the
10th inst. and in reply to inform
you that the same has been
forwarded to the proper
authorities for their consideration.
I am, Sir, very respectfully,
Your obedient servant,
J. H. [Signature]

Yours truly,
J. H. [Signature]

W. A. [Signature]

Enclosed



THE PREFACE

To the Reader.



He Authour of this Booke (gentle Reader,) was in his life-time, a man well knowne, to be a famous Teacher of the French Tongue, to many of the English and Dutch Nobility and Gentry, for the space of thirty yeares; during which time, he treasured up the most exact observations, concerning that tongue, that ever I saw, or could heare of, since I began to study the French, which is now ten yeares and somewhat more: The directions wherein hee most excelleth, are, for the use of the *Articles*: the placing and use of the *Pronounes*: the forming of the *Verbes*, and the use of theyr *Moods* and *Tenses*: the use and *Syntaxe* of the *Participles*: as also, of all the *undeclined* parts of Speech, viz. the *Adverbes*, *Conjunctions*, *Prepositions*, and *Interjections*, none of which, I could ever yet meet with, so exactly set downe in any Grammar; and in

The Preface

a word, his Rules for the *Pronunciation*, *Declining* of the *Articles*, *Nounes*, *Pronounes* and *Verbes*, (which others have pretended to, and in some measure performed) are so farre beyond all others, & we haue extant in the English tongue, that (I dare adventure my credit vpon it) all of them put together, doe not teach halfe so well, the *Idiome* of the French tongue, as this one doth. The French language, as any man can tell that knoweth it, is so generally vsfull for conuerse, in most parts of Christendome, and withall so refined, within these 20. yeares last past, that no *Nobleman*, *Gentleman*, *Souldier*, or *man of Action* in the busineses betweene *Nation* and *Nation*, can well be without it. I suppose therefore, that in translating this booke, so vsfull for the attayning of that language, I have done a good office to very many. How well, or ill I haue performed my vndertaking, I must not be judge, But if you wil know, wherein I haue indeauoured, to make it peculiarly vsfull to us English, observe what followeth.

In the *Pronuntiation*, sometimes by way of *explication*, sometimes in the *Marginall* notes, I haue showne the Reader how to write all difficult sounds, after the *English* manner, in such sort, that if he pronounce the one like an English man, he must needs pronounce the same sound, written after *French* manner, like a *Frenchman*: for example, that which the French write *je*, let an Englishman write *zye*; then let him pronounce *zye*, like an English man, and he pronounceth *je* like

to the Reader.

a French man: And this, is the onely new invention, that I challenge for mine in the whole worke.

Every letter in the Booke, which, by the Rules of the Pronunciation, are not to be sounded, hath a little marke under it, and is put in a different character from the rest of the word, that better notice might be taken of it.

Those letters, which the Author giueth noe particular Rule for, saue onely that in the end of a word they are to be pronounced little or nothing, viz. *b, d, g, m, n, s, t, x,* and *z*, are not marked, when they come before a word, *y* beginneth with a vowel, no point comming betweene them and it: for then they are *alwayes pronounced*, though (as he saith) but little; but when these letters are next before a point, whither it be a *Comma, Colon, or Period*, they are marked; for then indeed, most commonly, they are not pronounced at all. those which are a little pronounced, before a point, as they are also before a Consonant, are *g,* and *n*; *z* *s,* and *t*, are sometimes sounded, and therefore vnmarked before a point, but never if the next word beginneth a Consonant, vnlesse (as I said) there be a point betweene them and it. By this intimation, which here I have giuen you particularly, concerning those 9. Letters, and by the Authors Rules for the Pronunciation, you may supply any oversight of the marked letters.

This for the Pronunciation.

The Preface

a word, his Rules for the *Pronunciation*, *Declining* of the *Articles*, *Nounes*, *Pronounes* and *Verbes*, (which others have pretended to, and in some measure performed) are so farre beyond all others, ~~we~~ we haue extant in the English tongue, that (I dare adventure my credit vpon it) all of them put together, doe not teach halfe so well, the *Idiome* of the French tongue, as this one doth. The French language, as any man can tell that knoweth it, is so generally vsfull for conuerse, in most parts of Christendome, and withall so refined, within these 20. yeares last past, that no *Nobleman*, *Gentleman*, *Souldier*, or *man of Action* in the businesse betweene *Nation* and *Nation*, can well be without it. I suppose therefore, that in translating this booke, so vsfull for the attayning of that language, I have done a good office to very many. How well, or ill I haue performed my vndertaking, I must not be judge; But if you wil know, wherein I have indeauoured, to make it peculiarly vsfull to us English, observe what followeth.

In the *Pronuntiation*, sometimes by way of *explication*, sometimes in the *Marginall* notes, I have shewne the Reader how to write all difficult sounds, after the *English* manner, in such sort, that if he pronounce the one like an English man, he must needs pronounce the same sound, written after *French* manner, like a *Frenchman*: for example, that which the French write *je*, let an Englishman write *eye*; then let him pronounce *eye*, like an English man, and he pronounceth *je* like

to the Reader.

a French man: And this, is the onely new invention, that I challenge for mine in the whole worke.

Every letter in the Booke, which, by the Rules of the Pronunciation, are not to be sounded, hath a little *marke* under it, and is put in a *different* character from the rest of the word, that better notice might be taken of it.

Those letters, which the Author giueth no particular Rule for, saue onely that in the end of a word they are to be pronounced *little or nothing*, viz. *b, d, g, m, n, s, t, x,* and *z*, are not marked, when they come before a word, & beginneth with a *vowell*, no point comming betweene them and it: for then they are *alwayes pronounced*, though (as he saith) but little; but when these letters are *next before a point*, whither it be a *Comma, Colon, or Period*, they are marked; for then indeed, most commonly, they are not pronounced at all. those which are a *little pronounced*, before a point, as they are also before a *Consonant*, are *g,* and *n*; *z* *s,* and *t,* are sometimes sounded, and therefore vnmarked before a point, but *never* if the *next word* beginneth a *Consonant*, vnlesse (as I said) there be a point betweene them and it. By this intimation, which here I have giuen you particularly, concerning those 9. Letters, and by the Authors Rules for the Pronunciation, you may supply any oversight of the marked letters.

This for the Pronunciation.

The Preface.

I haue besides *Englisht* all the French throughout the whole booke, and consequently, saued the reader so many lookings in his Dictionary.

I haue oftentimes, where I found the *Authours stile perplexed* (as sometimes I did) added many words, by way of *explication*: which you shall finde included in this *Parenthesis* []

In the last place, you are to note, that oftentimes, those words of the *Rules*, which are of most note, are printed in an *Italicke* letter, because the *Rules* themselves are in *Roman*: But in the examples, all those words, wherein the force of the Rule lyeth, are put in a *Roman* letter: because, all the example besides, being printed in an *Italicke* letter, the reader may *quicker* find them, by the difference of the Character, then he can by his owne study

Now I haue told you what I haue done, I will, in the next place, tell what you must doe (at least in my opinion) if you will make your best advantage of this booke: In breife then, I would not haue you read it in order as it layeth: but, first to picke out a generall notion of the whole Language, and then read it over againe with the *Syntaxe*: how you shall doe this, I shall shew you, after I haue giuen you a reason, why I advise you so to doe.

First then for the *Pronuntiation*; in my opinion, it is but a dull and wearisome thing for a man, to take a great deale of paines, in learning to *Pronounce*, what he *understandeth not*: And indeed

to the Reader.

indeed, for an *unlearned* Reader, I suppose the true pronounciation of some words, to be *impossible*, till he hath had a generall tast of the whole language; and for a *learned* Reader *scarse possible*, I am sure it is very difficult.

For *instance*, you shall find in the 7th page, a Rule, that when many Nounes come together, in the *Plurall* number, and the *same* case, the *last letter* of the *last Noun*, shall be pronounced, though the *next word* begin with a *Consonant*, and though there be *never a point* betweene the two words: Again, pag. 25. you shall find, that, in all the third *Persons Plurall* of Verbes, ending in *ent*, *n*, is not pronounced! And you are to note besides, that *many Adverbes* end in *ent*: Now, vnlesse a man can *distinguish* an *Adverbe*, from a *Verbe*, or till he know, how the *Plurall* number, is made of the *Sing.* how shall he know, either to sound the *last letter*, of the *last nounce* of the *Pl.* number, or when to *leave out n*, before *t*? More instances might be giuen in other things, why this booke should not be read as it lyeth: but, if the reason drawne from this instance, doe not satisfie, another of the same nature will not. I will therefore spare my labour, and those that are of my opinion, I shall advise to *reade it in this manner*,

Begin first with the *Articles*, and read from page 54. to page 60. where you shall find, *which* are the *Articles*, *how* they are *declined*, *wherefore* they are called *Definite*, and *wherefore Indefinite*, which will serue your turne very well, till you

The Preface

you come to the exact knowledge of the vse of them, which indeed *cannot* be *knowne*, till you haue at the least some generall knowledge, of the *other* parts of speech. And take it *once for all*, that the *reason*, why I would haue the *most exact* rules *omitted*, at the *first reading*, is, because (as I said) the *full understanding* of them, *dependeth* vpon the knowledge of *something*, that commeth *behind*.

For the *Nounes*, begin page 93. and reade to 122. begin againe at page 126. and reade to 146.

For the *Pronounes* begin at page 146. and read to 151. begin againe at the *Demonstrative* Pronounes page 171. and read to 174. begin againe pag. 182. and read *almost* to the end of 183. begin againe p. 188 and read the *declining* of *Lequel*. begin againe p. 201. at the *Possessives*, and read to *Mien, tien, sien*, seldome use &c. in p. 205. begin againe pag. 207 at the *declining* of *nostre*, and read to the *rules* beginning in the *middle* of the p. 209. begin againe p. 212. and read the *declining* of *Leur*. begin againe p. 215. and read that page. begin againe p. 224. and reade the *declining* of *Autrui* and *l'autrui*.

For the *Verbes* begin p. 227. & read to the middle of the page 282 begin againe p. 287. at [How] *seuerall persons*, and read to the *Use of the Verbs* page 317.

For the *undeclined* parts of speech, you may begin at the *Adverbes* p. 393. and soe read to the end.

to the Reader.

end. For from *that page* to the end, you shall find *nothing*, which will require any other knowledge of the other parts of speech, then what I have pointed you out in this direction,

When you have a generall knowledge of the whole language, you may begin at the *Pronunciation*, and so goe through it againe in order as it lyeth: and be not too greedy (if I may aduise) to be thought a *speaker* of French, before you are sure you *understand* what you read. It may be, that they which take another way, may speake more words in halfe a yeare, then you shall in a *twelue month*: but in a yeares space, you may, with diligence and industry, speake *better* (and after a while *more*) then another shall doe all his life time, vnlesse there be a vast *disparity*, between your abilities of mind.

In the *last* place, I must advise you, to looke for no *impossibilities*; my meaning is, that I would not haue you expect, that the *pronunciation* or *Syntaxe* should be so perfectly here set downe, but that you shall find many exceptions; nor would I haue you therefore think, that you can learne as well *without*, as *with Rules*: for if, with Rules, you shall be often at a losse, certainly you shall sticke at every word *without them*. Againe, you may perhaps find, that all men will not be of Monsieur *Maupas* his opinion in every thing, and withall you will finde, that who-soever shall differ from him, will be as well *condemned* by others, as *Maupas* by him; but take him with all his faules and erreurs, that
either

The Preface

either he hath indeede, or may be thought
to haue, and yet, I know not whom
you can equall to
him.

Vale et fruere.

The



The Introduction.



Now, that nothing might be wanting to this Booke, which my skill can reach to, I have thought it fit, by way of Introduction to the Pronunciation, to adde that which followeth.

The Letters *A, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, x, y, z*, are pronounced in this manner.

Aw, bé, cé, dé, é, eaf, zye, afb, ee, eal, eam, ean, o, pé, cu, er, effe, zé, u, eaz, ee grec. zed.

A, e, i, o, u, y, are called *Vowels*, all the rest *Confs.* of the *Conf.* *l, m, n, r*, are *liquids*, the rest are *mutes*.

For the division of the Syllables (which as I conceive, is of great importance in all languages) observe these Rules.

First, that your *syllable* if it be possible, must end in a *Vowel*: and it is possible, when the following Letters, can begin the next Syllable; I doe not here meane the last Syllable, in which, all the *Consonants*, in the end of a word, are included, or else they could not be sounded: for no *Consonants* can make a sound of themselves.

Secondly, that all the *Vowels*, of a *Diphthong* or a *Triphthong*, must be of the same Syllable.

Thirdly, that neither two *Mutes*, nor two *Liquids*,

The Introduction.

quids, nor a liquid before a mute, can begin a Syllable : If therefore you meet with two Mutes, two Liquids, or a Liquid before a Mute, in the middle of a word, the *first* belongeth to the *former*, and the *latter* to the *following* Syllable.

Fourthly then, all Syllables begin either with a *Vowell*, or a *single Consonant*, or a *Mute* before a *Liquid*. Now, because every Mute, cannot stand before every liquid, in the beginning of a Syllable, I have here set downe Alphabetically, what Mutes, and what liquids may come together, and begin a Syllable ; viz.

<i>Bl.</i>	<i>pl.</i>	
<i>br.</i>	<i>pr.</i>	(from the Greek.
<i>sb, chr.</i>	<i>ps, and pt,</i>	in words derived
<i>cl.</i>	<i>sc, scb, scl, scr.</i>	
<i>cr.</i>	<i>sb.</i>	
<i>dr.</i>	<i>st.</i>	
<i>fl.</i>	<i>sm.</i>	
<i>fr.</i>	<i>sp, sph, spl, spr.</i>	
<i>gl.</i>	<i>st, str.</i>	
<i>gn.</i>	<i>squa.</i>	
<i>gr.</i>	<i>th, thr, tr.</i>	

The use of this Introduction, you will finde, when you read the Pronunciation.

There now remaineth nothing, but the *Mending of the faults*, where I must desire you to take notice, that by a little blotting of the Inke, *e*, for *ε*, *t* for *τ*, *fi* for *φ*, *f*, for *ψ*, *b* for *β*, *e* for *ε*, or any other literall fault, might easily be overseene, and withall, if you take that course in the reading, that I have advised (which is not to read the Pronun-

The Introduction.

nunciation, till you have a generall tast of the whole language) it may be as easily mended.

That which I would have particularly noted, is, that *l*, in the Pronounce *il*, is *never* pronounced, when it is the *Rom.* Case to the *Principall Verbe* in *Interrogative, Exceptive, Adversative* Sentences, or in *yeilding* answers, in all which, it is commonly the last word : and seeing it is not to be pronounced, it is to be written *il*.

Remember likewise, that *esbahi, hier, and estime*, are to be written *esbahi, hier, estime*: and for the rest, I referre you to the *Errata*, as they are set downe together : most of which perhaps, will beare the name but of *Literall* faults, and might have bin observed, & mended by the Reader himselfe, *very easily* : but I had rather be *overcurious* then *over negligent*, in giving the Reader *Ease* and *Advantage*.

☞ Note that *p.* standeth for *Page*; *l.* for *line*; *r.* for *read*; and that the word here set downe, standeth for the word *most like* to it, in the Page & line mentioned.

Errata.

PAge 6.l.17, for *aimant* a Loadstone, *r. main* much. *Jb.* l.27, after *neufs, euifs*, *r.* but pronounce the *f.* gently. *p.* 7.l. 1. after *m, n, c*, put *q.* *p.* 9.l. 7.*r. elle.* *p.* 22. in *¶ Marg.* note, for *if l.*, *r. if i.* *p.* 25. 1.9.

l.9. for *ostner* r. *ouster*, p.28. l.13. after *sinse* r. held
 p.34. l.26. r. *seixie* (ms), p.37. l.11. after *au*, r. *ei*, p.
 38. l.30. r. *bailier*, ib. l.31. & 32. r. *travaillier*, p.39
 l.18. r. *liquefie* l, ib. l.20. r. unparalell'd, p.41. l.17
 rare a Diphthong, p.42. l.7. r. *je-li-e-té*, p.44. l.1.
 for *it* r. *v*, ib. l.28. r. other, p.46. in the Marg. note
 for *boy* r. *yea*, p.47. l.22. r. *impetueux*, p.63. l.6. after
or or *e*, p.70. l.19. for *de*, r. *du*, p.82. l.2. for *des*,
 r. *de*, p.84. l.5. r. *mere*, p.88. l.33. r. *teint*, p.89. l.14
 r. *endurer*, p.92. l.5. r. *du drap*, ib. l. ult. r. of the wo-
 men, p.95. l.10. r. *sum*, p.99. l.9. for *une* r. *un*, p.
 107. l.28. r. *banter*, p.109. l.6. r. *moitié*, p.111. l.14.
 r. *clyster*, p.118. l.5. r. *prix*, p.121. l.10. r. *hardy*, p.
 122. l.30. r. *icy*, p.124. l.19. r. *connoisse*, p.137. l.7.
 after *un* one, r. *l'un* y one, p.152. l.12. r. *obci* p.157
 l.7. for and if, r. and so, p.160. l.24. r. Proposition,
 p.176. l.12. r. a common Participle, p.185. l.8. for
 hisr. this. p.188. l.21. r. *qui*, p.190. l.4. after follow
 r. the Syntaxe of Interr. &c. p.192. l.14. r. *voylà*,
 p.199. l.26. for for-*ss*, r. forget, p.209. l.30. r.
reshault, p.221. l.5. for *d'* r. *de*, p.225. l.7. r. *Defi-*
nire, ib. l.20. for *es*, r. *est*, p.230. l.11. 19. after *pleust*
à Dieu r. *que*, p.231. l.16. r. *il eust*, p.239. l. ult. r.
il fust, p.246. l.29. after the Parenth. r. and in the
Inf. Mood. p.260. l.23. put as, after the first *en chan-*
tant & the Colon, p.281. l.32. r. chose p.300. l.15.
 r. *connoissant*, p.331. l.23. 26. 27. r. *reste*, p.333. l.
 25. r. *arquebusades*, p.341. l.7. r. or the one, p.348
 l.17. for *que Cesar fut*, r. *que fut Cesar*, p.393. l.1.
 r. mediation, p.395. l.22. for the last *ce soir*, r. *à ce*
soir, p.403. l.10. r. *tant que*, p.407. l.29. r. Not; Ne,
 ni, nor, p.413. l.5. for or, r. of, p.419. l.5. r. con-
 joinctement.



A
FRENCH GRAM-
MAR AND SYNTAXE,
 contrayning most exact and certaine
Rules for the Pronunciation, Ortho-
graphy, Construction and use of
 our *Language*, for the benefit
 of those Strangers which
 are desirous to learne
 it.



VE use ordinarily in the
French tongue 22. Letters,
 viz. *A, B, C, D, E, F, G,*
H, I, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R,
S, T, V, X, Y, Z. The
 Vowels *a, e, i, o, u, y,* are well
 enough knowne. The rest are
 Consonants, and sometimes *j,* and *v,* viz.
 when they are in the beginning of a Syllable
 before a Vowel: likewise *v,* before *r,* for the
 most part as in *vray, li-vre.* The most ex-
 B 28

and Writers, to avoid mistake, for the vowell write *u*, and *v* for the Consonant : likewise *i*, for the vowell, and *j*, for the consonant, which I desire should be observed throughout this Booke.

*Of the Pronounciation and sound of
the Letters in generall.*

IN all Languages speciall care is to be had of the pronounciation : for except that be naturall, the language will loose its grace. And though it be to be learned by the eare and observation, yet good instructions may be given, both to helpe the memory, and to regulate the Orthography : wherein is so great variety, that Strangers find no small difficulty and trouble in it. I will notwithstanding use my best indeavour to cleere those mists, upon condition I may be as long about it as necessity requires, and not be thought tedious.

First, that manner of Pronounciation which many Strangers use is to be avoyded ; which is, to pronounce only the first syllable of a word strong and full : the rest they passe over so sleightly, that a man can scarce understand them. For our language must have every syllable distinctly and cleerely pronounced, and especially the last : which indeed are of most importance, whatsoever some prate to the contrary.

On the other side, too harsh a pronouncing of the Consonants, which many strangers use in the learning of our Language, is to be avoyded. For

as wee require a distinct pronouncing of the syllables, so we shun too harsh an expression of the consonants : and above all wee avoyd that unpleasant sound which the Greekes call *Cacophonia*. We rather follow the advice of *Cicero*, in the first of his Offices : where commending the *Catuli*, for being so judicious and exact in the use of the Letters, he saith, *Sonus erat dulcis, litera neque expressa, neque oppressa, ne aut obscurum esset aut puridum*. The sound was sweet and gentle, the letter neither forced; nor smothered, to avoyd both mumbling and clowney.

Some Consonants at the end of a word are sounded little or nothing, viz. *b, d, g, m, n, s, t, x, z*, and yet they are not altogether needlesse; because they serve to make the syllable longer.

Some other Consonants are for the most part pronounced, as *c, l, f, q, p, r*. Yet is it gracefull at the end of a period, to give any consonant whatsoever a reasonable full sound : as also in the middle where wee continue our speech, if the word following begin with a vowel or *h*, mute : where note also, that the consonant at the end of a word must be so linked, and tyed to the word following, as if it belonged to it. As for example : *Un bon amy est-un seur appuy en adversitè*. A good friend is a sure prop in adversity ; the same is to be observed in the Latine tongue. The conjunction *et*, alwayes excepted in the French, where *t*, is never pronounced.

Generall Rules for the pronouncing of Consonants.

HOW and when single Consonants are to be sounded, you may know in part, by what hath beene already sayd, but more fully, by what followeth in the particular Rules for every Letter. Yet I conceive, it will be a great helpe to the Learner, if I here set downe some Generall Rules for the pronounciation of Consonants, when two or more of them come together. Note therefore that Consonants may come together, eyther in the beginning, in the middle, or end of a word; As for those which begin a word, there is no difficulty in the pronouncing of them, for they are all pronounced, save onely *p*, before *s*, as *pseaulme*, which is pronounced *seaulme*: unlesse you will reckon *b*, among the Consonants, which after *s*, is not pronounced, as you may see in the peculiar Rules for *s*.

Concerning those Consonants which come together in the middle you are to observe:

That there can be but foure together, in any word: and those which have so many, are commonly words compounded; which are pronounced according to the Rules of the simples, whereof they are compounded: as *transcrire*, to transcribe, which hath all the Consonants pronounced; because the preposition *trans* soundeth *s*, after *n*, and *escrire* to write, soundeth *c*, before *r*, as you may see in the particular Rules of

of *s*, and *c* ; but commonly in the middle of a syllable there are but three together : all which three, if *s*, be the first of them, belong to the following vowel, and begin a syllable : as in *essrit*, wit, *re-splendir*, to shine : if *s*, be not the first, then the first Consonant belongeth to the Vowel going before, and the other two to the Vowel following : as in *sim-ple*, single : this Rule if it be well observed, will be very usefull.

When you meet with those Consonants in the middle of a word, which you find in the Introduction may begin a syllable, they be all pronounced : unless *s*, be the first, which sometimes is pronounced, and sometimes not, as you may see in the particular Rules of *s*.

When three Consonants come together, which cannot begin a syllable, if the first be *m*, *n*, or *r*, as in *sim-ple*, simple, *craindre*, to feare, *ordre*, order, it is pronounced ; otherwise not : as in, *pouldre*, powder, *titre*, a title ; except some few words derived of the Latine, in which *b*, is the first of the three, as *substance*, substance, *non-obstant*, notwithstanding, *soustraire*, to withdraw.

The pronunciation of two Consonants in the middle of a word, is sufficiently set downe in the particular Rules of every Letter.

Consonants at the end of a word, are considerable two wayes : First, how they are to be pronounced, when no other word followeth them, or when the word following, maketh no alteration in the sound of them. Secondly, when they

are to be left unsounded in respect of the Consonants which begin the following word.

For the pronunciation of Consonants in the end of a word, without reference to the word following, you must note:

1 That there can be but three, at the end of a word.

2 That when there be three, the last is alwayes *s*, or *z*.

3 That a Mute between eyther of these three consonants *m*, *n*, *r*, and *s*, or *z*, is never pronounced: as in *accords*, *agreements*, *corps*, *bodies*, *champs*, *fields*, *aimants* Loadstones

4 When two Consonants end a word, the first whereof is eyther *m*, *n*, or *r*, and the last *s*, *z*, or any other mute, they must be both sounded: as in *art*, *art*, *aimant*, a Loadstone, *sang*, blood, *noms*, names; except *b*, after *m*, which is never pronounced: as in *plomb*, lead, *colomb*, a Pigeon, *palomb*, a ring-dove. If they be both mutes, the last onely is pronounced, as in *faict*, *lict*, *dict*; or if the first be a mute, and the last *s*, or *z*, as in *sots*; but when the first is *l*, and the last *s*, or *z*, the *l* is sometimes pronounced, as in *bals*, *dances*, *bocals*, *vials*, & sometimes not, as in *filz*, *ilz*; but if *f* be the first of the two, they be both pronounced; as *neufs*, *oeufs*.

5 When a word endeth in two mutes and *s*, or *z*, the two mutes are unsounded, as in *dicts* *faicts*.

When the word following beginneth with a Consonant, the last Consonant of a word, if it be *s*, or *z*, or any mute, it is not pronounced: as in *touts les longs jours*, all the day long. But if

if it be *m*, *n*, *c*, or *f*, it is alwayes pronounced; *r*, and *l*, also for the most part are sounded: but sometimes they are not, as you may see in the Letter *l*, and *r*.

This Rule then for cutting off of the last Consonant, holdeth chietely if the last Letter be one of these, *viz. b, d, l, s, t, x, z*; yet in some cases, every one of these is pronounced, as well as any other.

First then, the last Cōsonant of a word if a vowel follow, or any pause or point (whether it be an Interrogation, as (?) a Comma, as (,) a Colon, as (:), a full point, as (.) is pronounced, as *Que faites vous?* What doe you? *Si nous disons que nous sommes justifiés, par nos bonnes œuvres, sans le mérite de Iesus Christ, nous nous seduisons.* If we say that we are justified by our Workes, without the merit of IESVS CHRIST, wee deceive our selves. Heere *s*, in *vous* is pronounced, because it commeth next before an Interrogation: *z*, in *justifiés*, *s*, in *œuvres*, *t*, in *Christ*, are pronounced, because of the Comma following; and *s*, in *seduisons*, because it is the last Letter in the Period.

If many Nounes come together in the same case, and the plurall number, the last Noun onely shall pronounce the last Letter; as *Nous ne faisons tous les longs jours de nostre vie que cheminer à la mort.* All our whole life-time we doe nothing but travell towards death. Here *s*, in *jours*, onely is pronounced; but if the Nounes be of divers cases, the last word of each case soundeth the last Letter: as *voyez toutes les globes glissan-*

glissantes, et rondeurs des corps superieurs de tous les cieux. See the gliding globes, and the roundnesse of the superiour bodyes of the Heavens. Here *s*, in *rondeurs*, in *superieurs*, and *x*, in *cieux* are pronounced ; for *rondeurs* is of the Accusative case, and *superieurs*, is of the Genitive case. Yet if the particle *là*, follow the last Nounne, the last Consonant of that Nounne shall not be pronounced : as *ces gens là*, those people there, *ces chevaux là*, those Horses there.

To this Rule doe belong these Pronounes *ceux*, as *ceux de la ville*, as also *miens*, *tiens*, *siens*, *nostres*, *vostres*, *mesmes*, when they bee put substantively : as *les miens*, *les tiens*, *les nostres*, *les vostres*, *eux mesmes ne le scauront faire*. So likewise *quelq'uns*, or *quelques uns*, *aucuns*, *autres* ; As, *Cecy quelques uns disent*, *les autres le nient*, This some say, and some deny. *Aucuns veulent que le ciel se tourne*, Some will have it that the Earth turne round.

Particular observations upon every Letter.

A
* Like a, in
the English
word all.

A, is pronounced as in the Latine with * open mouth, *L'avare cache son avoir*, The covetous concealeth what he hath. The English pronounce it almost like our diphthong *ai*, which in our Language is uncomely.

When you meet with this Letter double (which is seldome) you are onely to pronounce the Syl-
lable

lable longer; as for *aage*, age, *baailler*, to gape, say *āge*, *bāiller*, except it be an Hebrew or Chaldaick word, as *Baal*, *Galaad*, *Naasson*, &c. as for *Isaac*, and *Aaron*, (which are commonly used among us) they are pronounced after our manner, *Isac*, *dron*.

When one of these syllables *il*, *ille*, *he*, *she*, or *on*, (which is a certaine particle in the French tongue joyned to Verbs Impersonals) follow encliticke-wise a Verbe ending in *a*, then in speaking and sometimes (though seldome) in writing, we interpose a *t*, to fill up the gappe (as it were) which would be betweene the two vowels; as, *Le Roy viendra-il*? will the King come? *La Royne viendra-elle avec luy*? will the Queene come with him? *Leur fera-on quelq; magnifique entrée*? Read it *viendra t'il*, *fera t'on*. Indeed for this syllable *on*, we often put *l*, before it to fill up the gap, as *Que fera l'on au bois sec, si l'on fait ces choses au bois verd*? If they doe these things to the greene wood, what will they doe to the dry?

B. The High-Dutch make no difference betwene *b*, and *p*. The French give * *b*, the gentler, and *p*, the smarter sound: Let them practise these words and the like. *Bas* low or downward, *pas* a particle of negation in the French, *bis* browne, as *pain bis* browne bread, *pis* worse, *Boire* to drinke, *poire* a peare, *Briser* to bruise, *priser* to prize or esteeme, *Boisson* a drinking, *poisson*, a fish. In the middle of a word before an other Consonant, especially before *n*, *s*, *t*, *u*, we pronounce *b*, but gently, as in *Object* an object,

B.
* So doe the
English.

ject, *abject* base or cast away, *abnegatiō* an earnest denyall, *absence* absence, *substance* substance, *non-obstant*, nevertheless, *obtenir* to obtaine, *subvenir* to helpe, *subvertir* to overthrow; and in those words which are derived from these. In this word *subject* and the derivatives of it, *b*, is not pronounced, and many doe not write it. So likewise in the preposition *sous*, as also in these words *Devoir* to owe, *debteur* a debter, *debt* a debt, *b*, is not pronounced: and a man may choose whether he will write it or no. Few words end in *b*, as *plomb* lead, *colomb* a Dove, *palomb* a ring-dove; in all which, *b*, is not pronounced.

* That is like *s*, in these English words, *scale*, and *save*.

C, before *e*, *i*, *y*, is sounded like *s*, * as *ceffer* to cease, *cecy* this heere, *citoyen* a citizen. Before any other Letter whatsoever, it is pronounced like *K*, *car*, for, *caver* to hollow or dig, *curieux*, curious, *corps*, the body, *clair*, cleere, *crainte*, feare. Yet when it hath a little *s*, under it, it is sounded like *s*, againe; as *Dessa*, on this side, *advança*. he went forward, *reçoit*, he receiveth, *deçoit*, he deceiveth, *leçon*, a lesson, *façon*, a fashion; some call it *ç*, with a taylor. Others instead of this *ç*, put *e*, betwene *c*, and the vowel that followeth it: which *e*, is not pronounced, but serveth to make the sound of the *c*, gentle like *s*, or *ç*, as in *advancea*, *deceoit*, pronounced.

The hard * *C* and *G*, are so neare in sound, * That is to that the High-Dutch pronounce them commonly *C*, & *G*, ly one for the other. To distinguish them, let before *a*, *o*, them use these words and the like. *Carder*, to card

card wooll, *garder*, to keepe, *Cris*, cries, *gris*, gray, *Coust*, cost, *goust*, tast. At the end of a word *c*, is pronounced, as *tric et trac*, perfectly and fully, *ric*, a *ric*, most exactly, *avec*, with, *sac*, a sacke, *bec*, the beake or bill of a Bird: and in the middle of a word, it is almost alwayes pronounced, unlesse it follow a Dipthong: as *accident*, a chance or accident, *accepter* to accept, *asse*, an act, *action*, an action, *fiction*, a fiction, *delist* an offence, *dister*, to dictate, *succes*, an event, end or successe of any thing, *effectuer*, to effect, *affection*, affection, desire or liking, *infester*, to infect.

But if it follow a Dipthong, it is not pronounced; as *Laiet*, milke, *une maict*, a Binne for bread, or a kneading-tub, *alaicter*, to give sucke to, *fruit*, fruit, *nuict*, the night, *s' annuicter*, to be benighted, *luicter*, to wrastle, *traict*, a line, a dart, a shaft, or shot, &c. And in the Derivatives of *traict*, as *traicter*, to treat or handle, *attraict*, an attraction or bayt, &c. *faict*, a fact, *point*, a point, *peinct*, painted, *joincture*, a joining together. So likewise in these words, *succer*, to sucke, *effect*, an effect, (notwithstanding in *effectuer* as was said before, *c*, is pronounced) *ject*, a cast, *liet*, a bed, *dict*, a saying, and their Derivatives, as *subject*, a subject or argument of any thing, *alister*, to lye sicke in Bed or to lye Bed-rid, *edict*, an edict, yet in *conjecture*, *c*, is pronounced. Heere you are to note, that where we pronounce not the *c*, the most curious late Writers write it no more; as *sucer*, *Sujet*, *sujetion*; the other is the old Orthography and way of

of writing. Note that *c*, in *second*, *seconde*, & *secret* is sounded *segond*, *segonde*, *segret*.

D. *The English pronounce d, like the French.* *D.* is often by the High-Dutch pronounced as *t*, because of the neerenesse of their sound; Let them practise in these and the like words to give *d*, a gentler sound, & *t*, a stronger. *Donner*, to give, *tonner*, to thunder, *darder*, to dart, *tarder*, to hinder, *dresser*, to dresse, or to ayme, *treffer*, to plate, weave, or make in tresses, *danſer*, to dance, *tanſer*, to chide.

In the end of a word, the next word following beginning with a vowell or *h*, mute, it is pronounced commonly like *t*, *vn gaiſſard homme*, a merry or jolly man, *vn lourd abus*, a grosse abuse, *vn grand honneur*, a great honour; except *pié* a foot, and *nud* naked, which in cōtinuation of our speech, never have the *d*, pronounced.

Otherwhile, at the end of a word, the next word beginning with a Consonant, it is seldome or never pronounced, save onely in these few words, *admettre*, to admit, *admirer*, to wonder at, *administrer*, to order or administer, *adverbe*, an adverb, *adversaire*, an adversary or opposer, and their derivatives. Indeed after *n*, it makes the syllable longer, but is not pronounced, though it be the last word spoken, as *grand*, great, *ſiand*, liquorish or sawcy, *galand*, gallant, words ending in *d*, and *s*, leave out the *d*, in pronouncing, which you may doe in writing if you please; as *accords*, agreements, *bords*, welts or hemnes,

e Masculine *E.* is pronounced with 3. severall sounds. The first *e*, marked at the top with an acute accent

accent (as it is in the end of a word) our forefathers called *é*, Masculine, because it is pronounced strongly, fully, and hath a manly sound. It is pronounced like the Latine * *e*, as *Bonté* good-^{* Or like c.} nesse, *beauté* beauty. It is seldome marked in the middle of a word, unlesse it be by some learned English word-writer, as *M. Philipps de Portes* in his last Edition of the Psalms, which he hath most elegantly put into French meeter, as *seant*. comely, *néant*, nothing, *céans*, heere within, *privément*, privily, *premièrement*, first or in the first place, &c.

The seconde *e*, is called Feminine, that is to say, weake and lame, for such is the sound of it, very weake, and but halfe a sound indeed. Vpon the weake pronounciation of this Letter, 3. notable things are inferred. First, that by the shortnesse of this syllable at the end of a word, the syllable immediately going before, is made longer in pronounciation. Secondly, that in the end of a verse it is accounted almost as nothing, as also in pauses or in Cesures in the middle of a word, this *e*, Feminine cannot be contracted, unlesse the next syllable begin with a vowell, or *h*, mute, with which it is to be joyn'd and made one, according to the third observation, which is, that in every word that ends in this *e*, if the next word in cōtinuation of speech begin with a vowell or *h*, mute, the *e*, is lost, and both the syllables are joyned in one, as if the first word had no *e*, in the end of it. You may see all these three observations in these two Verses.

*Puis quel' ame humaine est de une essence im-
mortelle*

*Que son heur elle cherche en la source eter-
nelle.*

Since that the Soule of man Immortall is,
In Immortality let her expect her blisse.

Reade it thus.

*Puis que l' am' humain' est d' un' essenc' im-
mortelle*

*Que son heur elle cherch' en la sourc' eter-
nelle.*

And hence is it, that in words of one syllable, ending in *e*, feminine, the next beginning with a vowell or *h*, mute: *e*, is not written; but instead of it an *Apostrophus*, as you may every where observe, and I shall shew heereafter more at large.

Yet in some certaine phrases where the Pronoun *je*, followes a Verbe of the first person ending in *e*, feminine, the *e*, must be pronounced more fully, like *e*, Masculine: to make those Phrases more Emphaticall, which are eyther Interrogative, Optative, or Adversative: As, Cherche je vostre domage? Doe I labour to dis-advantage you? Puisse je mourir s' il n' est vray, I would I might dye if it be not true. Vous dites que je n' entend rien en François, si parle je mieux que vous, you say I understand no French, yet I speake better then you. Hence is it that some put an acute accent upon the *e*, feminine; as Cherché je, puisé je, parlé je, others would have it written with the Diphthong *ay*, as Cherchay-je, puis-
say-je, &c.

If one of these particles, *il, elle, on*, follow a Verbe ending in *e*, feminine, we commonly in speaking put *t*, betwixt the particle and the *e*, feminine, and some write it so: as, *desire-il*, or *desire-ril* *que je l'enseigne*, doth he desire that I should teach him? *Aime-t'elle son mary*? Doth she love her husband? *Parle-on*, or *Parle-t'on* *bon François en cette ville*? Doe they speake good French in this Towne? Looke the same note upon the Letter *a*.

The third sort may be called the open *e*, because the mouth is more opened in the pronouncing of this, then of the other two; it is sounded like the Diphthong *ay*, in these words; * *mais* but, *jamais* never, *plaisir* pleasure, and such like. It is to be pronounced in this manner, when the syllable endeth in one of these Consonants: *c, d, l, s, r, x*, as *Tel* such, *eternel* eternall, *avec* with, *perpetuel* everlasting. So likewise in the preposition *es* in, and those words which have this syllable in the beginning; as *escrire*, to write, *estudier*, to study, and generally every *e*, that maketh a syllable of it selfe in the beginning of a word, as *éviter*, to avoyd, *éternel*, eternall, *église* a Church.

So likewise in all Articles, Pronounes, and Prepositions, that end in *es*, the syllable is * * *That is to say the e, is to be reckoned for an open e, and pronounced like ea,*

Open E.
* That is like ea, in the English words, beame, cream.

see

succes *successe*, *asperges* the hearbe *sparage*; or *Sparagus*. Yet all Verbes of the Infinitive Mood of the first Conjugation, have *e*, Masculine before the *r*, as *aimer* to love; *parler* to speake; *lier* to bind or tye, *fier* to trust to. Moreover all Nounes ending in *ier*; as *fier* fierce, *mestier* a trade, or employment, *Cordonnier* a Shoe-maker or Cordwayner. *Meneſtrier* a Minstrell or common Fidler. And in a word, all words which signifie any Trade, and many others which heretofore were wont to be written with *i*, but now having the *i*, left out, because it is not pronounced, are pronounced with the open *e*: as *danger* danger, heretofore it was written *dangier*; *Berger* heretofore *Bergier* a Shepheard; So likewise, *Messager* a Messenger, *leger* light or slight, *eſtranger* a stranger, *Archer* an Archer, *Vacher* a keeper of Kine: and all Nounes which have *g*, and *ch*, before *er*.

All theſe three ſorts of *e*, are found in theſe words, *bréveté* ſhortneſſe, *neteté* cleaneſſe, *dépeſé* diſmeſored: the firſt is open, the ſecond Feminine, and the third Masculine. And in theſe words; *rejetter* to caſt away, *rebeller* to rebell; the firſt is Feminine, the ſecond open, the third Masculine.

You ſhall finde *e*, doubled in many words, which are both diſtinctly founded: and if this happen at the end of a word, the firſt is Masculine, and the laſt Feminine; as *aimée* loved, *portée* carryed: if any other Letter follow the laſt *e*, they are eyther both Masculine, or elſe the firſt Masculine, the laſt open: as *Séel* a Scale,

Seale, *r  el* reall, *r    r* to bray, *agr   r* to afford,
gu   r to wade, *b   r* to gape.

E, before *m*, or *n*, in the same Syllable, is commonly sounded like *a*; as * *entendement*, *em-mener*, an understanding, to bring or lead unto; except the third person Plurall, of those Verbes which have *e*, Feminine before *nt*, and therefore make that Syllable short: as *aiment* they love, *parlent* they speake, *aimerent* they have loved, *parlerent* they have spoken, *entendent* they understood, *dient* or *disent* they say, *entenderent* they have understood.

* Pronounce
 them antan-
 dement, am-
 mener.

When *i*, commeth before *en*, *e*, is not pronounced like *a*, but almost like *e*, Feminine; as *mien* mine, *rien* thine, *sien* his, or belonging to him, *nien* nothing, *bien* well, *Chrestien* Christian, *Musicien* a Musitian, *Parisien* a man that dwells at, or taketh part with, *Paris*, &c. But these words must be excepted; *Science* Knowledge or Learning, *Patience* Patience, *escent*, as *a bon escent* in good earnest, *audience* audience, *ingredient* ingredient, *inconvenient* inconvenient, *expedient* expedient, *orient* orient, *fiend* dung, *experience* experience, *Clients* a Clyent, *patient* patient, and their Derivatives.

Many Strangers (the High-Dutch by name) confound *F*, with *v*, Consonant: We pronounce it strongly * betweene the upper Lip, and the under Teeth. It were good for those, which erre in the pronunciation of this Letter, to practise these, and the like words; *Falloir* to behove, *valoir* to prevaile, or to be of value, *Fifre* a Fife or Flute, *vivre* to live, *faisseau* a

F.
 * Viz. like a
 English *f*.

Small bundle or packet, *vaisseau* a vessell, *une fille de ceste ville* file, a Mayde of this Towne spinneeth. In the end of a word, *f*, is cleerely to be pronounced; as in *oeuf* an egge, *boeuf* beefe, or an Oxe, *soif* thirst, *veuf* widdowed, *uis* quicke, lively, alive: notwithstanding, the common people are very negligent in the pronouncing of this Letter. Wee pronounce the Greeke *ph*, like our *f*, *Philosophe* a Philosopher, *Prophete* a Prophet.

G, before *e*, *i*, *y*, is pronounced gently, like our * *j*, Consonant; as *Geant* a Gyant, *gisant* lying along; before any other Letter, it is to be pronounced hard, after the Dutch (and * *English*) manner; as *garder* to keepe, *gouverner* to governe, *guerre* warre, *guere* scarce, *gloire* glory, *grand* great. Oftentimes betweene *g*, and one of these two Vowels *a*, and *o*, you find *e*; which is put there, not to be pronounced, but onely to make the pronounciation of the *g*, * gentler: as *Bourgeois* a Citizen or Townesman, *songeard* a Dreamer, *Geole*, *Geolier* a Gaole, a Iaylor. So on the other side, we put *u*, Vowell betweene *g*, and these Vowels *e*, *i*, onely to make the pronounciation of the *g*, hard and * strong: as *guerre* warre, *guere* scarce or little, *guise* custome, *desguiser* to disguise. Yet in these words *u*, is pronounced; * *aiguiser* to whet or sharpen, *Guise* a Townes name and the Lord of it; *Arguer* to argue, and *aiguë* the feminine Termination of *aigu* sharpe, subtile and piercing, have three Syllables.

When *u*, followeth *g*, it giveth a sound which cannot well be expressed in Writing. It is to be learned

* See the Letter *j*.
 * Viz. as we English pronounce *g*, in game, goate gut.
 * Viz. like *g*, before *e*, *i*, & *y*.
 * That is like *g*, before *a*, *o*, & *u*.
 * Which words are pronounced as if they were writt in English *cagwiser*, *Gwifs*.

learned

learned rather by the care, then by Rule: This onely may be sayd; That it must bee expressed with a touch of the bottome of the tongue, on the top of the Palate of the mouth; as *Oignon* an Onion, *Mignon* a Minion, or dainty nice person, *Vigne* a Vine, *ignorant* ignorant, *Allemagne* Germany, *Compagnion* a Companion, *gagner* to gaine. The Dutch when they endeavour to pronounce this syllable, they say *Onnion*, *Vinie*: but this commeth farre short of the right *pronunciation.

Signe a signe, and the Derivatives of it, are pronounced indifferently with the *g*, or without it, as *signe* or *sine*, *signifier* or *finifier* to signifie, though the *g*, be alwayes written. *Cognoistre*, to know, & all those words which are derived of it, except *Cognition* (a word little used) are pronounced without the *g*, and if they be written without the *g*, it is well enough; as *connoistre* to know. In these words *doigt* a finger or toe, *vingt* twenty, *g*, is not pronounced: and it is written onely to shew the Originall [from *digitus viginti*] besides; at the end of a word it is not pronounced: but if *n*, goe next before it, and no Diphthong before *n*, then it serves to make the Syllable long: as *sang* blood, *rang* ranke or order, long long: if there be a Diphthong in the Syllable before *n*, notwithstanding the Diphthong, the Syllable is pronounced short: as *loing* farre off, *poing* the fist, *besoing* needfull, in which we often leave out the *g*, in the end, and write *loin*, *soin*.

* By vs English it may be sounded in this manner. First, *loundya*, *ye*, *yo*, like an English *mā*; then put *n*, before them, & pronounce them altogether in one syllable, thus: *nya*, *nyc*, *nyo*, and just so doe the French *sound*, *gne*, *gno*.

H, in many words is not pronounced, and then I call it Mute; In words comming from the Latine, it is for the most part not sounded; as in *heur* hap or fortune, *heure* an houre, *huit* eight, *huile* oyle, *helas* alas, *heritier* an heyre, *honeste* honest, *huître* an Oyster. In many other words; viz. in naturall *French* words, and words derived from the Dutch, we pronounee it strongly: as *hair* to hate, *hannir* to disgrace, *ahap*, a granting word which men use when they list, or otherwise worke hard, whence *ahanner*, to worke hard, is derived; *hardy* stout, *hazard* lot or danger, *Harangue* an Oration, *hanter* to frequent, *hannir* to neigh, *haste* hast.

When *c*, commeth before *b*, it is pronounced like *sch*, in the * Dutch, as *Cheval* a Horse, *choisi* chosen, *chargé* charged, except when, followeth *ch*, as *Christ* Christ, *Chrestien* a Christian, *anchre* an anchor. And in words taken from the *Greekes* having *a*, *o*, *u*, after *ch*, as * *Echo* the Echo, *chao* confusion, *charactere* a character, *Archange* and *Archangel*, *Eucharistie* the Eucharist, *Bacchus* the God of Wine. Except *Charité* charity.

ch.
* Or sh, in the English word sh.

* In all which words ch, is pronounced like our English k.

The most part of the High-Dutch are troubled to distinguish our pronounciation of *ch*, from the gentle *g*, and *j*, consonants. Let them practise these words, *Chesne* an Oake, *goine* a lying in Child-bed, *joye* joy, *choier* to save or spare, *chatte* a she or Doe Cat, *jatte* a Bowle or Mazer, *Chartier* a Carter, *jartier* a Garter, *Marge* a Margent of a Booke, *Marche* a March, *Page* a Page, *pache* a Contract or Bargaine. [All

which

which an English man may learne to pronounce, by the Direction given in the Letter j.

I, at the beginning of a Syllable before an other Vowell, becommeth a Consonant. *Jeune* young, *jolly* pretty or deſt, *joyeux* merry, *ja, de-ja* already. Thoſe which are curious in their writing, when they find it to be a Conſonant, in the middle of a word, they write it with a long taylor thus; *Ra-jeunir* to grow young againe, *Deſ-jeunir* to breake a mans Faſt, *re-jaiſſir* to leape backe. The Engliſh pronounce this Letter, as if it were a diphthong composed of *e*, and *i*: we pronounce it * ſingle. Beſides we write it before *N*, in the middle of a word, or before a ſingle *l*, in the end: which we doe onely when wee would ſhow that the *l*; is to be pronounced nicely, and fluently. For *i*, when it is not pronounced, ſerveth onely to make the *l*, fluid: as * *faiſſir* to ſayle, *cueſſir* to gather, *mouſſir* to wet, *oeil* an eye, *gentil* gentle and generous [which word I have obſerved to be generally pronounced *genti*, without the *l*] *travail* labour and paines, *Soleil* the Sunne, *ſommeil* ſleepe, *reſveil* awaking From this Rule except *Ville* a City or Towne Corporate, *mille* a mile, *il* he, *ſil* a thrid, *vil* baſe or meane, *util* profitable, *ſubtil* ſubtle, *viril* manly, *ſervil* ſervile, *eſtoille* a ſtarre, *caviller* to cavill, *pupille* a fatherleſſe child, or one under a guardian, *cil* when it is put for *celuy* he, or that man (as in Poetry it is;) for when it ſignifieth the hayre of the eye-browes; it liquefieth the *l*; to theſe adde *poil* a ſingle hayre, *mil* a thouſand, for when it ſignifieth the graine Millet or hyrfe the *l*; is fluid.

I.

* Like *ee*, in theſe Engliſh words *bee*, *ſee*.

* Pronounce theſe and the like words as if they were written *ſa-lyeer*, *cve-lyeer*, *moul-yeer*, *weil*, &c.

Note.

* If *l*, be single, then it is twice pronounced viz. before *ll*, and after it, as in piller to rob, which is pronounced pillier.

* Always remembered that we pronounce the *i*, in these words, after the French manner like our English *ee*, as meele geale,

[The fluid *l*, (as I conceive) may bee thus expressed to an Englishman] First, let him observe, the difference betweene a word that endeth in any other Consonant, single or double, and another word which hath the same Consonant single with *e*, after it; as for example, prat *prate*, dot *dote*, writ *write*: in which, you may observe that without *e*, in the end, the Vowell before the last Consonant, is pronounced smart and short, but when *e*, followeth, it maketh the Vowell going before pronounced longer; now let us apply this to the present letter *l*, as for example, will *wile*, tall *rile*, mill *mile*. This observed, my Rule is this: when *i*, in a Diphthong commeth before *ll*, in the middle of a word, the *i*, though it be not pronounced in the place where it stands, yet it is pronounced betweene the *ll*, and the Vowell following: as for example, the word *fai^{ll}ir*, hath before the *ll*, the Vowell *i*, in the Diphthong *ai*, yet *i*, the last letter of this Diphthong, is pronounced after the double *ll*, as if it were written * *fai^{ll}ijr*, and this the Author calleth liquefying of an *l*, in the middle of a word. When you find *l*, in the end of a word with *i*, before it, though *i*, bee not in a Diphthong, as in *gentil* generous, gentle, or neat, unlesse it be in the words excepted in the Authors Rule, that Syllable is to be pronounced as we English doe *il*, with an *e*, after it, in the word * *rile*, *mile*, which (as I sayd before) differeth much from the sound of *sill*, *mill*. So that by liquifying of *l*, with an *i*, Mr. Maupas meaneth the sounding of an *i*, which had it not in before

before *ll*, should eyther not have bin pronounced at all, or not so much.

For the pronuntiation of *j*, Consonant, as also of *g*, before *e, i, y*, let an Englishman pronounce it like *zy*, * as *zyamais* for *jamais* never, *zyeant* for *geant* a Gyant, *zyiste de boeuf* for *giste de boeuf* a rand of Beefe, *zyuzye* for *juge* a Iudge, *zyoly* for *joly* pretty.]

* Pronounce *y*, as when it is a Consonant; as in *yes*, &c. you.

L.

L, i, expressed plainly, with the end of the tongue [like an English *l*;] but when it is double after *i*, in the middle of a word, or single in the end of a word, it taketh a Liquid sound, which our Forefathers were wont to call dainty or delicate [as if a mans mouth watered in the pronuntiation of it] (as I sayd before in the Letter *i*) which is expressed with a touch of the flat or middle of the tongue, and the top of the Palate of the mouth; whereas *i*, when it is not pronounced, serveth onely for a marke that the *l*, is to be liquified. Observe the difference in these words and Syllables. * *Piler* which is to be pronounced liquid, as if it were written *pillier* to rob, and *piler* to pound or stampe, *bailier* to give; pronounce it *bailhier*, and *baler* to dance, *balier* to sweepe, *sailier* to leape, and *salir* to foule, *sueil* the threshold, and *seul* alone, *vieille* an old-woman, and *vielle* an ill sounding Fiddle.

* Pronounce these words according to the Rule before in the Letter *i*.

If *l*, be in the middle of a word, and a Diphthong next before it, then it is not pronounced; as in *Couldre* to sow, *mouldre* to grind, *poulser* to beate or thrust, *poul* he can, *bault* high. In my opinion, *poulpe* pulpe, or the hard brayny

flesh of any thing, *coupe* a fault, are to be excepted; If it follow a single Vowell, before another Consonant, then is it to be pronounced: as, *Almanach* an *Almanacke*, *altesse* highnesse, as *son-altesse* his Highnesse (speaking of a Prince) *multitude* a multitude, *revolte* a revolt, except *filz* a sonne, and *titre* a title. At the end, it is good to expresse it distinctly, as *Tel* such, *conseil* counsell, *liberal* liberal; *Sold* [which commonly is written *sol*] a French piece of money called a *sou*, is pronounced *sou*, *saoul* full, is sounded *sou*, and these words *pouil* a Lowse, *verrouil* a bolt for a doore, *genouil* a knee, are pronounced: *pou*, *verrou*, *genou*.

Col a necke, *fol* a Foole, *mol* soft, in my conceit were better pronounced as they are written, then *Cou*, *fou*, *mou*, as the ignorant sort of people use to speake them. *Cul* doth not sound *l*.

M.

* In these words m, is sounded like n.

This we have observed from the Latine, to put *m*, and not *n*, before *b*, *p*, or *m*; as in *Sembler* to seeme, *trembler* to tremble, *tromper* to deceive, *emmener* to lead away, *emmieller* to sweeten with honey. At the end of a word, it is sounded but weakely, without closing the lips together; as * *nom* a name, *Renom* Honor and Renowne, *faim* hunger: [So likewise in the middle of a word before *t*, and *pt*, as *Comte* an Earle, *compter* to account.]

N.

N, When it is at the end of Syllable though you scarce touch the palate of your mouth with your tongue, it is expression enough; as *ton bon conseil*, thy good counsell, *Henri* Henry.

In all third Persons plural of Verbes ending In

in *ent*, *n*, is not pronounced, as I sayd before in the Vowell *e*, as *Aiment*, *Donnent*, they love, they give.

When *o*, is double in any word, it is but to make the Syllable long, as *Roole* a rowle, otherwise the sound of this Vowell is well enough knowne. True it is that the common people, when it commeth before *s*, pronounce it like our Diphthong * *ou*, as *ouster* for *oster* to take away, *houste* for *hoste* an Host, *Rouse* for *Rose* a Rose. From hence is that vicious and foolish pronunciation of late yeares, in the word *chose* a thing, which some pronounce *chouse*, others *cheuse*, which for my part, I like not. I know that *Mons. Ronsart* in one place sayth *chouse*, and in another *compousa*, but this was by Poeticall Licence, where the necessity of the Rime forced it from him, as may plainly appeare by these Verses.

* Or our
English *oo*,
in *roome*,
broom.

*Mais la main de Dieux jalouse
N'endura que telle chouse, &c.*

But the jealous hand of God could not
Endure that such a thing, &c.

And else-where.

*Quand mon Prince espousa
Iane de divine race
Que le ciel compousa.*

When as my Prince was married unto *Iane*
That Heaven-borne Wight, &c.

But this is not to be imitated: one Swallow
makes no Spring. For in a thousand places hee
sayth, *chose*, *composer*.

Note

Note, that when in the middle of a word, the Syllable after *o*, beginneth with *m*, or *n*, these Letters are commonly double : and the first belonging to *o*, maketh *o*, to be pronounced like *ou*, as *homme* a man, *comme*, as *donner* to give, *honneur* honour. [And so likewise is it though the Consonant be not doubled, as in *composer* to compose, and *ronce* a bramble, *rondeur* roundness.] All which words are pronounced * *houme*, *coume*, *counestre*, *douner*, &c.

* Which according to the English pronunciation is to be sounded *oo-mae*, *coo-me*, *coo-nestre*, *deo-na*.

In the first place are excepted, words compounded with the preposition *pro*, as *promettre* to promise, *prononcer* to pronounce, *provenir* to proceed.

Next, except those words which are borrowed from the *Greeks* : as *Comete* a Comet, *Tome* a Tome, *Dome* a Towne-house, *aconome* a skillfull Governour of a House. [Which words I conceive not to be excepted, because they are derived from the *Greeke*, but because the *m*, or *n*, following, are not in the same Syllable with *o*, but begin the next following] so also *bonace* calme, quiet, *domaine* a demeane.

To conclude, many words which are taken from the *Latine*, and retayne the *Latine* formation pronounce not *o*, like *ou* ; as *Homicide* *Homicide*, *nomination* a naming, *Domicile* a house, *domeftique* belonging to a house, *dominer* to rule and sway, *vomir* to vomit, *honorer* to honour, *honorable* honourable, *donation* a donation, a giving, *donateur* a giver, *donatoire* a donee, *Novice* a Novice, *jovial* merry and blith, *ovale* ovall, *Povre* which also is written *pauvre* poore. This word

word *provin* a Stock, Stalke or plant, may bee pronounced eyther *provin* or *proüin* : as also, *provigner* or *proüigner* to plant.

P. See above the Letter *B*; in the middle and end of words, it is for the most part to bee pronounced, as *option* a wish, *precepte* a precept, *banap* a drinking Cup, *coup* a blow, *galop* a gallop, *Septentrion* the North. Yet, in these words following, it is not pronounced; as *sept* seven, and all his Derivatives, *temps* times, *champs* the fields, [in which two words, the *m*, is pronounced almost like an *n*] *compter* to account, *dompter* to tame, [in which words also, it is pronounced almost like an *n*] *Niepee* a Niece, *Baptiser* to wash, *Baptême* baptism, *Noçe* a Marriage, *recepte* a receipt, *corps* a body.

Q. If it be not in the end of a word, hath alwayes *u*, joyned with it, and both of them together are sounded like *k*, as *que* and, pronounce it *ke*, *qui* which, pronounce it *ki* : there bee but few words which have *q*, in the latter end, as *cinq* five, *Cock* a Cock [but where ever it is, pronounce it like *k*]

R. Though it be in the middle or the end of a word, it is, in my opinion, cleerely to bee pronounced : and not harshly, unlesse it be double in the middle of a word, where the sound is very hard, and maketh the Syllable long; as *guerre* warre, *terre* the Earth, *ferret* to shoe a horse, or to binde or cover with Iron, *arre* an earnest to bind a Bargaine, *Bourrée* a Bavin or any bundle of Sticks.

Some I find, out of a foolish conceit, do affect the

* Yet Cu-
stome pre-
vaileth in
this, and
persons of
very good
parts and
quality use
it very oft.

the lazie pronounciation of the common people, in leaving * out *r*, alwayes in the end of a word; as *Vous plaist il veni disne avec moy, vous me ferez plaist*: Will you please to dine with mee? you shall doe me a pleasure: instead of saying, *venir, dîner, plaist*, in which the *r*, is moderately to be pronounced.

S, betweene two Vowels, is pronounced like the French (and English) *z*, as *Désir* to desire, *choisir* to choose, *épouser* to marry, *disons* wee say, [read them *dézir, choizir, espouzer, dizons.*] So likewise in these words, *prise* a taking, *tinse*, and their Derivatives; as also words compounded with the Præposition *trans*, the Letter following being a Vowell, as *transacion* an agreement, *transiger* to accoord, except *transir* to fall into a trance, which may be written *trancir*: when *s*, is thus sounded (*viz.* like *z*,) it maketh long the Syllable foregoing; unlesse it be *e*, Feminine, which is alwayes short, as may appeare by these and the like words; as *peser* to weigh, *gesir* to throw, *gesier* the giserne of Birds, *mesure* measure.

If *s*, be not placed in the manner aforesayd, be it in the beginning, middle, or end, we pronounce it with a stronger and fuller kinde of hissing [as wee English doe] like *ss*, as in *souvent* often, *penser* to thinke, *pousser* to thrust, or put away from, *passer* to passe.

S, is found written in many words, where it is not to bee pronounced, and there it serveth onely to make the Syllable long: and instead of it, a man may put an acute accent

accent or a circumflexe, as many learned and curious Writers of our age use : as for *estre* to bee, *connoistre* to know, *escrire* to write, *laischer* to loosen, *plait* it please, *taist* he is silent : They write, *écrire*, *être*, *connoître*, *laischer*, *plait*, *taist*. And questionlesse, it would bee more expedient for strangers, if this custome were commonly received : for in many words it is pronounced. First, in all those words where you finde these inseparable Prepositions, *abs*, *dis*, *cons*, *ins*, *post*, *prof*, *obs*, *subs*, *sus*, *trans*, *res*, it is pronounced ; as *Absraindre* to tye, *absenir* to abstain, *disputer* to dispute, *constant* constant, *substance* substance, *suspect* suspected, *suspendre* to suspend, *transcrire* to transcribe, *respecter* to respect, *restaurer* to restore : Except, *respondre* to answer, *resandre* to spill, *retablir* to re-establish, *resuer* to doate, *resverie* dotage, *resveil* an awaking, *resveiller* to waken : but *ressit* delay or stay, *ressplendir* to shine, *restraindre* to restrain ; are indifferently pronounced, cyther with it or without it. Es, whether it bee a Preposition ; as in *esmonder* to cleanse, *esparpiller* to sprinckle or strew abroad, *espousseter* to beate the dust off, *esclorre* to shew out : or be it a Syllable : as in *estudier* to study, *escrire* to write, it never hath the *s*, sounded : and it is much practised among the Learned of this time, to write instead of *s* an acute accent thus ; *écrire*, *étudier*, *émouvoir*, to stirre up, &c. Notwithstanding this Rule, these words following pronounce *s*,
esperer

esperer to hope, *espoir* hope, *esperance* hope, *Espaigne* Spaine, *espace* a space, *espece* a kind or sort, *estame* *estamine* stammell cloth [but not for tammie stuffe] *estropier* to curtall or maim, *estimer* to esteeme, *esprit* spirit, *espion* a spy, *estoc* the body of a tree or a stubb, *estocade* a stab, *estafier* a Page or an attendant on foote. Add hereto *destin* destiny, *destituer* to forsake, *piste* the footing, *pistole* a pistoll or a piece of money called a pistole, *pistolet* a little pistoll, *moustache* the moustache of a mans beard, *description* a description, *destruction* a destroying, contrary to the rule of their primitiues, *descrire* *destruire* which leaue out s. [To these some add *estrapade* the strapado, *estradeir* a light horseman that carrieth a carbine, *estrade* a streete] S, before the hard C, and Q, is for the most part pronounced; as in *escorne* shame and dishonor, *escandre* slander, *esquiver* *escamper* to escape or shift, *masque* a maske or disguise *frasque* *casque* a head-piece, *brasque* fierce and heady, *risque* danger, *frisque* merry, *embuscade* ambush, *busquer* fortune to try ones fortune. Except *evesque* a Bishop, *pastique* Easter, *escot* the shot or ones share at a reckoning, *escouter* to listen, *esquiere* a square-rule, *esquarrir* to square, *esclairer* to cleere, *escorner* to vnhorne any thing, and other words in whom you find the syllable *es*, [as was observed before in the rule of *es*.] Add hereto *escarlata* scarlet, *esclat* shining or lustre, *escart* aside, (as *mettre a l'escart* to put aside.) *Baster* to suffice, sounderh the s, *baster* to put on a pack saddle leaueth out the s. In like manner, words derived of the Latine

so, stis, stus stis, pronounce *s*, as *persister* to persist, *contester* to strive with, *triste* sad, *illustre* illustrious &c. Except *prest* to lend & all those words which are derived from it but *prestation*; as *prestation de Serment* a swearing which soundeth the *s*. The rest may be learned by practice.

[But I find in Mr. *Bellor* a Gentleman of Normandy good observations concerning *s*.]

Note.

First, in all proper names, *s*, is pronounced; as in *Auguste*, *Augustin*, *Gusman*, except those which in Latine begin with *st*, as *Eztienne* from *Stephanus* Steuen, likewise *Benoigt* Bennet, *Cresspin* Crispin, *Bayle* Basil, *Hierosme* Hierome, *Escoffe* Scotland.

I find likewise, that in many words which are derived from the Latin, and others also, where *s* cometh before *t*, the *s*, is sounded as *ascoster* to approach, but not when it signifieth to prop vp, *Apost* to apostate or fall away from, *Apostolique* Apostolicall, but not in *Apostre* an Apostle, likewise in *Apostume* an impostume, *artiste* an artist, *asperges* spargus an hearbe, *asperger* to sprinkle, *Astres* the starres; *attester* to beare witness to, *Bastille* a Tower or fortress, *bastion* the fortification called the cullions head, *bastonade* a beating, but not in *baston* a staffe. So also in *bestialité* bestlines, and *bestiole* a little beast, but not in *bestail* beasts or cattle of any sort, as Oxen and sheep, nor in *bestellere* a little beast. So likewise in *blasphemer* to blaspheme, *festin* a feast, but not in *feste* a feast day; in *Monstre* a Monster, *s* is pronounced, but in *monstre* a must-er or a watch, *s*, is not sounded; in *pastorelle* a pastorall,

pastorall, *s*, is pronounced, but not in *pastou-veau* a Pastor, nor *paistre* to feed. So likewise in *Pastenades* Garden Carrors or Parlenips, *Poste* a Post, *pisbeau* a Pestle, *Postillon* a Postillion, *Postille* a Postill, *Reste* a rest or remainder, *Russe* a Russian, *Rustaud* an unmannerly testy unruly companion, *Tempestif* tempestuous; but not in *Tempeste* a Tempest: in *Vestiaire* the Vestry of a Church, *s*, is sounded; but not in *Vestir* to put on apparell. Sometimes also *s*, before *p*, is pronounced; as *Inspirer* to inspire: Many more upon search may be found, but these for the present may suffice. But to my Author againe.]

If you pronounce *s*, at the end of a word, it is not to be disliked, so it be done weakly [somewhat like *z*, as *les hommes* men, which must be pronounced *lez hommes* or very neere that sound.] And though you doe not sound it, yet the Syllable must be pronounced somewhat longer.

T.

* Viz. like
our English
s, in sec, so;

Looke above in the Letter *D*, and there see the difference betweene it and *t*. In words ending in *ion*, and Adjectives derived from them, *s*, is sounded like * *ç*, as *distion* a word, *Distionnaire* a Dictionary, *Devotion* Devotion, *Devotieux* Devout, *Contention* Contention or strife, *contentieux* contentious, and some few others [which have *ti*, before a Vowell] as *partial* partiall, *nuptial* belonging to marriage, &c. [except from hencee *Amitié* amity, *inimitié* enmity, *pitié* pity, *moitié* the halfe of a thing, and some others which after *ti*, have *é* Masculine.]

Wo

Wee write *th*, in words derived from the Greeke, as *These* a *Thesis* position or *Tenet*, *Theme* the subject whercon a man writes, *Anathematise* to curse by Ecclesiasticall power, *sympathie* sympathy, but we pronounce onely the *t*.

At the end of a word, *t*, is pronounced little or nothing: but if it come in the end of a word after *n*, it makes the syllable longer, as you may see in these words; *pain* bread, *paint* painted, *sain* sound, *saint* holy, *estrain* straw, *estrait* constrained, *main* a hand, and *maint* many or much, *van* a fanne to winnow Corne, *vent* the Wind [which words differ little or nothing in the pronouncing.] Except the third Person plurall, of Verbes ending in *ent*, which have *e*, Feminine, and consequently the Syllable short; as *aiment* they love, *parlent* they speake, *aimerent* they have loved, *parlerent* they have spoken. In words that end in *ts*, bee they of the singular or plurall number, the *t*, is not pronounced: as *un rets* a net; *un mets* a messe of meate, *des mots* words, *flots* waves, *traicts* lines, darts or draughts [in the Coniunction *et*, *t* is never pronounced, though a Vowell follow it.

V, Consonant is pronounced like the Dutch *Vv*, but a little stronger: * as *voix* a voyce, *voir* to see, *vivre* to live. Looke above in the Letter *f*.

U, Vowell, is called the French *u*, because we give it a sound peculiar only to our language. The Dutch, Italians and very many others, pronounce it as we do our Diphthong *ou*, which is like to the Greeke Diphthong *υ*, & when they would avoyd this fault, they fall into another, and pronounce it like *i*.

D

We

V.

* Viz. Like
our English
v, Consonant
in these
words, vow,
vary, very.

we give it a middle sound betweene both, a little opening the middle of the lips, as *ruer* to rush, *ſuer* to ſweat, *ſus*, as or *ſus* well, on, *murmurer* to murmure, *tumultuer* to rayſe a tumult. [Our Engliſh *w*, in the word *Ewe-tree*, *u*, in *buſie*, or *u*, in the *ſcottish* word *gud*, be the neareſt ſounds we have to it.] In theſe words and the like, you may obſerve the difference betweene *ou*, and the French *u*. But an ayme, *bout* the top or brim of any thing, *ruë* a ſtreet, *rouë* a wheele, *eſcruë* a ſcrew, *eſcrouelle* a ſhrimp, *une muë* a change, *une mouë* a gaping, a mop and now, *une nuë* a Cloud, *une nouë* a Gutter betweene two tyled Roofes.

X.

X, is a double Letter, and as much in ſound as *cs*, or *gs*; as *example* an example, *exercer* to exerciſe, *exceſ* excellẽ, *extreme* extreame. Except *Xaintes* an Episcopall City in France, *Xantoigne* the whole Province in which the City *Xaintes* lyes, *Saint Maixent* another Towne in France, *Auxerre* an Episcopall City, *ſoixante* ſixty, [in all which words it is pronounced like *f*, and *ſ*.] *Saintes*, *Saintoigne*, *ſt. Maiſſent*, *Aufferre*, *ſoiſſante*. Except alſo *douxiesme* the twelfth, *deuxiesme* the ſecond, *fixiesme* the ſixt, *ſeixiesme* the ſixteenth, *dixieme* the tenth, *dixaine* a tenth part, or things reckoned by tenns, *Dixainnier* a Tything-man, [in which words it is pronounced like *s*, betweene two Vowels; that is like *z*, *deuſiezme*, *douſiesme*, *ſiſiezme*, *ſeiſiesme*, *diſaine*. *diſainnier*. *Excuser* may indifferently be ſounded, *excuser* or *eſcuſer* to excuſe.

In

In the end of a word *x*, is pronounced like *s*, [that is like *ç*, as I sayd before in *s*,] as *aux faux jaloux*, *deux yeux creuez*: They which are unjustly jealous have both their eyes out. From this Rule except the word *perplex* doubtfull, which is pronounced *perplecs*.

T, is never a Consonant [as it is in English, when it commeth in the beginning of a Syllable] and is of the same nature with *i*, Vowell, but that we never use it to liquefie *l*.

When *i*, might bee taken for a Consonant, [that is in the beginning of a Syllable before a Vowell, or when it should be a syllable of it selfe] we use *y*, and that aptly: as *yver* the Winter, *yvroje* poppy, *yeux* eyes, *yéble* Wallwort, *yvoire* Ivory, [where you see it maketh a syllable of it selfe, which no Consonant ever doth.] We place it likewise betweene two Vowels, as in **Playe* a wound or blow, *joye*, *joy*, *playe* Raine,

Moreover, in the end of all words that end in a Diphthong [which in the middle of a word are written with *i*,] wee place *y*, as being more gracefull to end a word with: as *Roya* King, *foy* faith, *ray* a beame of the Sunne, *essay* an attempt, *luy* he, *ennuy* tediousnesse or trouble, *appuy* a prop; when a word doth not end in a Diphthong, we content our selves with a single *i*; as *ainsi* so, *aussi* also, *nourri* nourished, *gueri* healed, *flori* that which hath flourished. Sometimes we write *y*, to keepe the Etymology: as, *Syllabe* a Syllable, *tyran* a tyrant, *Assyrie* Assyria, *mystere* a mystery, *Symbole* a token or badge;

* In which word *y*, is pronounced like an English *y*, in you, yes.

[all which words come from the Greeke, and are written with the greeke *υ*, which must be expressed by this letter *y* though *ι* be of the same sound, for were they written with *ι*, they might be thought to be written with *ι*, in greeke which is not so;]

To conclude; wee write it alone for the relative particle *y*: as *y est il* ? is he there? *il y est* he is there.

Z, as well in the beginning, as in the end of a word, is sounded like *s*, betweene two vowels, and not like the Dutch, who make it a double consonant, in sound like *rs*, [whereas indeed it is more like *ds*] as *zele* zeale, *chanz* to be mouldy or musty, *quinze* fiftene.

* *Viz*; like
s, in the
English
word *his*.

In the end also it is pronounced like *s* [where you are to note that *z*, doth not change his sound to be like *s*, but *s*, doth change the sound to be like *z*, in the end of a word] and maketh the syllable very long, which strangers must carefully observe, least they faile in those places where *e*, is long in the last syllable; as in *le nez* the nose, *iouez* play ye, *déz* dice, *beautéz* beauties, *bontéz* goodnes, for where *e*, is long, *z*, must be put to it, not *s*: and where the *e*, is short [as it is in the plurall number, of the nouns, whose singular number doth not end in *e* Masculine, as the aforesaid nouns *beauté bonté doc*] there wee write *s*.

of

Of Diphthongs and Triphthongs.

When two or three vowels meete together, and make but one sound or syllable, it is called a Diphthong or a Triphthong: If they make two sounds, I would not call them by that name, as some ill distinguishing Grammarians doe.

Wee haue many sorts of them; the most necessary and commonly vsed Diphthongs are these nine: *ai, ay, au, eu, io, ie, oi, oy, ou, ui, uy*. As for the Triphthongs, these are most commonly met with, *eau, ieu, ouë, oie, or oye, iei ai, oui, uei, au, ueu.*

Of Diphthongs.

Ai, or *ay*, is properly a Diphthong, if another vowel follow it: as *ayons* wee haue, *playe* a stroake or wound, *rayon* a sunne beame; here you see two vowels, pronounced both together with out dividing them as *ay-ons, play-e, ray-ons*: for these words haue but two syllables a piece.

a in which words the French y, differeth not from our English y.

If a consonant follow it, it is not properly a Diphthong, and wee pronounce it after severall manners. Before the syllable *ne*, wee pronounce it like *é* Masculine as *laine* woll, *haine* hatred, *saine* sound, *plaine* plaine, *graine* graine: [pronounce them *lène, bène, sène* &c.] giving to each word two syllables.

Againe, in the first Persons singular, of the first Præterperfect & Future Tenses [of the Indicative Mood of Verbs of the first Conjugation] as *Donnay* I have given, *garday* I have kept, *donneray* I shall give, *garderay* I shall keepe. As also in the first Syllables of these words, *aimer* to love, *aider* to helpe, and *j'ay* I have, *leſſay* I know, and such like; we pronounce it like *e*, Masculine. Yet the word *aider* is uncertaine, for divers of the common people pronounce it like a Diphthongue, [that is like our English *ai*, or *ay*,] but still they make but two Syllables of it.

In other words, we pronounce it like our open *e*; [that is like *ea*, in our English words *beam*, *creame*,] as *mais* but, *aigre* sharpe or tart, *aligre* merry, *faire* to doe, *aixelle* the Arme-hole: [pronounce them, *Meas*, *eagre*, *aleagre*, *ſearuh*, *eaſſelle*;] these words *aigu* sharpe, *aiguſer* to sharpen, are indifferently pronounced: as *agu*, *aguifer*; *esguille*, or *eagu*, *eaguifer*, *esguille*, like an open *e*.

Pais a Country, *bayr* to hate, and *naif* naturall, are not Diphthongues, but words of two Syllables, (and to be pronounced *pa-iu*, *ba-yr*, *na-if*.)

If *l*, follow *ai*, in the middle of a word, or a single *l*, in the end of a word, the *a*, onely is pronounced, and the *i*, serveth onely to liqueſie the *l*, as was ſhewne before (in the Letter *l*,) as *Bail* a giving, *travail* labour, *baillier* to give, *travailler* to labor, pronounce them, *baillier*, *traveller*, &c.

It is pronounced after the same manner, when it is before *gn*, as some use to write it, as *Allemaigne* Germany, *Campaigne* a Field, *Compaigne* a the Companion; the *i*, may be left out, without the alteration of the sound: [for the *a*, onely is pronounced, and the *i*, commeth after *gn*, to liquefie the *g*, and they are to be sounded; *allema-nie*, *campa-nie*, *compa-nie*, making *nie*, but one Syllable.]

Ei, scarce differeth in sound from *ai*, and it is sounded in a manner like *é*, Masculine, as you may perceive by these words: *pleine* full, *plaine* plaine, *l'eine* the groin, *laine* wooll, *setne* a bosome, *saine* sound, *veine* a veyne, *vaine* vaine, [pronounce them, *ple-ne*, *ve-ne*, *le-ne*, dividing each word into two Syllables.]

E, In this Diphthong *ei*, serveth onely to liquefie *i*, like as *i*, in *ai*, doth. As *meilleur* better, *conseil* counsell, *merveille* a wonder, *nompaeille* unparelled, or none-such; pronounce them *mellieur*, *mervellie*, *nomparellie*. *Treize* Thirteen, is pronounced like the open *e*, *trease*.

Au, is every where pronounced like *o*, long, as *baut* high, *chaud* hot, *chevaux* horses, (pronounce them *bote*, *chode*, *chevoise*) if a Vowell follow *au*, then *u*, turneth Consonant, and belongeth to the next Syllable; as *a-voir* to have, *sca-vant* knowing, *a-vare* Covetous. So likewise when *r*, followeth *au*, as in *Havre* a Haven, *Auril* Aprill, it is to be pronounced, *havre*, *A-vril*.

Ei.

Au.

Eu, *Eu*, hath a mixt sound of *e*, and *u*, as *heur* hap or fortune, *heureux* happy, *peur* feare, *peu-reux* fearfull: it was written heretofore *paour*.

Yet in the Preterperfect tenses of Verbes, and in words and tenses derived from the Preterperfect tense, it is sounded like single *u*, as in *veu* scene, *pourveu* foreseene, *scu* knowine, *receu* received, *peu* I was able, for *peu* a little, hath the sound of both the vowels.

When a vowell followeth *eu*, it is no diphthong: [unless the following vowell be *e* Feminine at the end of a word] but is changed into a Consonant, and belongeth to the following syllable; as *e-vader* to escape, *e-vident* apparant, *e-ve-sque* a Bishop. So likewise when *r*, followeth

u, in Verbes, as *sevrer* to weane, & also in the future tenses, as *deuray* I shall owe, *recevray* I shall receive, and such like &c. In these nounes *fièvre* an ague or seaver, *lièvre* a hare, *leuvre* a lipp, *bievre* a beaver, a beast so called, the *v*, is a Consonant: in other Nounes which have *r*, after *eu*, it is a Diphthong; as *meilleur* better of the Masculine, *meilleure* of the Feminine gender, *seur* *seure*, *sûre*; It is an easie matter to see, that the Feminine Particles of the passive voice ending in *eue*, as *eue* had, *veue* scene, make *eu*, a Diphthong. As also that Verbes derived of Nounes, which have Diphthongs, retain the sound of the Diphthong; as *asseurer* to assure, *bienheureux* to blesse and such like.

Io, is a Diphthong, onely in the first persons plussall of Verbes; as *ai-mions* we did love, *aimass-ions*

* In the beginning of of a syllable.

aimaiff-ions wee might love, *oyons* wee heare, *ouiffions* wee would he.re. Otherwise, these two vowels make noe Diphthong, but one of them belongs to one syllable, and the other to another, as *violent* violent, *fi-ole* a viall glasse, *intenti-on* intention, *religi-on* Religion.

Ie, is properly a Diphthong: because it soundeth both the Vowels at once [in one syllable;] as *pie-tre* beggarly and meane, *pié-ton* a footeman or a pawne at Chesse, *le sou-lier* *fiéd bien au pied* the shooe fits the foote well, In many Nounes this Diphthong is devided.

First in words that end in *i*, and *e*, Feminine; as *ami-e* a she friend, *joli-e* pretty, *parti-e* parted and those words which are derived from it: for if the *e*, in the end be Masculine then *i*, & *e*, are Diphthongs; *ami-tié* friendship, *moi-tié* the halfe of any thing, *pi-tié* pity.

Againe, in Verbes whose Infinitive mood endeth in *ier* as *pri-er* to pray, *ni-er* to deny, *fi-er*, to trust, *li-er* to tye; all which haue two syllables.

Besides, in words in *ien* that signifie of what Country, or profession a man is of, *i*, and *e*, are devided; as *Itali-en* an Italian, *Parisi-en* one of *Paris*, *Musici-en* a Musitian, *Theologi-en* a Divine. For in words which end in *ier*, *ie* is a Diphthong as *mestier* a trade or profession, *charpen-tier* a Carpenter, *me-nui. fier* [a word of three syllables] a joyner.

Adde

Adde hereto some few others ; as *Hi-er* Yesterday, *e*, being the open *è*, *an-ci-en* antient ; *Gar-di-en* a Gardian, *Pi-é-té* Godlinesse, *so-ci-e-té* Societie, *sôbri-eté* sobernessë, *anxi-eté* doubtfulnessë, *propri-eté*, *sati-eté*, property, fulnessë, *contra-ri-eté* contrancty, *vari-eté* variety, *jol-e-té* prettinessë, *Ebri-eté* Drunkennessë ; and those words also which pronounce *e*, like *a*, as *sci-ence* knowledge, *expe-rience* experience, *audi-ence* audience. See the Rule of the Vowell *e*, before *n* ; *Empi-eter* to seize upon, *Pierre* Peter, *chien* a Dog, doe indifferently divide *ie*, or pronounce it like a Diphthong.

Oi, or *oy*.

* As an Englishman would sound *fwc*, *rwe*.

Oi, or *oy*, should bee pronounced like *oe* (I meane the open *e* ;) as *foy* faith, *Roy* a King, *voir* to see, *trois* three, *mois* a Moneth ; are pronounced * *foë*, *roë*, *voer*, *troes* ; but the errour of late times, hath made the pronounciation of it very doubtfull and uncertaine. For now it is a custome to sound *oi*, like the open *e*, or rather like *ai*, in these words ; *mais*, *jamaïs*, *faire*, *plaisir*, (whch are pronounced, *meas*, *jameas*, *pleasir*, &c.) This Errour in my opinion, is crept into the Court, by a foolish imitation of strangers errours, which know not the pronounciation of our tongue. And our Courtiers, apishly seeking after all novelties, have left the true and ancient pronounciation, to counterfeit the fustian language of strangers. But Learned and best Speakers in the Courts of Parliament, and otherwhere, keepe themselves to the old naturall pronounciations.

Indeed

Indeed the error is not growne generall; but chiefly it is used in the Præter imperfect Tense of Verbs: as for *j'amoy*, *tu aimois*, *il aimoit*; they would say, *j'aimay*, *tu aimais*, *il aimait*: for *j'aimeroy*, *tu aimeroy*, *il aimeroyt*, they would say, *j'aimerais*, *tu aimerais*, *il aimerait*: [pronouncing (as I sayd before) *ai*, like *ea*, in the English word *beat*.] Other words, when they list, they pronounce in the same manner; as for *droit* right, *froid* cold, *estroit* streight, *croistre* to encrease, *connoistre* to know, *paroistre* to appeare, they would say; *draït*, *fraït*, *estraït*, &c. But they would not say *chaisir*, *lay*, *say*, *ray*, *trais*, *mais*, for *choisir* to choose, *loy* the Law, *foy* faith, *Roy* a King, *trois* three, *mois* a Month; It may be they would say, *craire* for *croire* to beleieve, but not *la craïs* for *la croix*, nor *baire*, *naire*, for *boire* to drinke, *noire* blacke, nor *une fais*, for *une fois* once, *quelq; fais*, for *quelq; fois* sometimes, whereby you may see, that this pronunciation is floting and uncertaine. And if any man will use it, I will not stand against it, but I have heere thought good to give a touch of it.

Ou, is sounded like the Greeke *u*, the Italian and Dutch single *u*, (and like the English *oo*) *pour vous nous monrons tous*, for you, we all dye; Read it, *poor voo noo mooroon toos*. Looke the Letter *u*, and the Letter *o*; in these words following, *o*, and *u*, are no Diphthongue; *po-vre* poore, *no-vice* a novice, *jo-vial* merry, *o-vale* ovall, or of such a roundness as an Egge hath; for

Ou.

For heere it is a Consonant; so also [as was noted in the letter o,] when the preposition *pro*, commeth before *u*, *provenir* to proceede *pro-verbe* a Proverbe, *provin* and *pro-vigner* [as also, in the letter o,] may be sounded *proüin*, *proüigner*, or *pro-vin* *pro-vigner*, at pleasure.

These Diphthongs *eu*, and *ou*, are put one for another in some words; as *demourer*, *demeurer* to stay, *trouuer* *treuver* to find, *mouldre* *meuldre* to grind, *prouer* *preuver*, to try, *esprouer* *espreuver* to attempt or assay: yet the Substantives be onely written *preuve* *espreuve* a prooffe. So likewise *couvrir* for *couvir* to cover, (but this is very seldome) Likewise *ouurer* and *œurer* to worke, yet the Substantives of the same signification, are written still after the same manner; *œuvre* worke not *ouvre*, *ouvrier* a workeman, not *œvrier*, so likewise *ouvrage* not *œuvrage* workmanship.

* o, in oi
is more pro-
nounced then
a in ai, or e in
ei, which are
scarce pro-
nounced at
all but the
i, retaineth
perfectly the
French sound
in all three;
as in *weend-
re* prevent
but *fin*, *cin-
dre* sound the
i much like
our English i.

Vi, or *uy*, is properly a Diphthong, and soundeth both the vowels in one syllable, as *luy* *nuist* *trop parler*, too much speaking hurts him; *trop grater* *cuit* too much scratching causeth smart. *vieux pechez* *nuisent* old sinnes hurt; *vieux debtes* *actives* *duisent* old debts that are owing to vs doe well.

Note that * *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, before *m*, or *n*, in the same syllable, will haue their *i* more distinctly heard and vnderstood then before others letters: practise these words *main* a hand, *pain* bread, *faim* hunger, *ceindre* to girt, *seindre* to faine, *joindre* to ioyne, *moindre* lesse, *point* a note of negation.

Of

Of Triphthongues.

The sound of the Triphthongs depends upon the Diphthongs, and is knowne by them; as *eau*, is as much as *eo*, [because *au*, is as much as *o*,] So likewise *peau* the skinne, *ber-seau* a Cradle, *vaisseau* a vessell. In the word *Heaume* a Head-piece, the *e*, is parted from *au*, and so the word hath three Syllables, *He-au-me*.

Eau.

Ieu, or *yeu*, maketh but one sound of all the three Vowels; *yeux* eyes, *mieux* better, *cieux* Heavens, *lieu* a place, *milieu* the middle, *lieuë* a Mile. In Adjectives ending in *ieux*, cyther derived from the Latine words in *ofus*, or made so in imitation of the Latine, *i*, is parted from *eux*, *curi-eux* curious, *furi-eux* furious, *devoti-eux*, devout. As also in words derived from Verbes, whose Infinitive Mood endeth in *ier*, as *prieur* a man that prayeth, *crieur* a Cryer, *Lieur* a Binder, *scieur* a Cutter, &c.

Ieu.

Pronounce *oue*, with the proper sound of a Triphthong, leaving no Vowell unsounded, like *ou*, and the open *e*.

Oue.

This Triphthong is in very few words: *soüé* *soüé-ve* sweet, *ouëille* a sheepe, it is written also *ouaille*; as for the old Orthography, according to which this Triphthong is used in many words, as in *soüétter* to whip, *mouschoüier* a handkerchief, *ouvroüer* a shop, *miroüier* a looking-glasse

con-

Contouer a Counting-house, it is now out of use, and now wee write them *foitter, mouchoir, miroir, &c.*

There are divers words in which the *e*, is divided from *ou*, as *moüe* a mop or mow, *roüe* a Wheele, *roüelle* a little wheele, *doüe* a strike to measure Corne with, *les escrouëllas* the Kings Evill, *prouësse* prowess or valour; *moüelle* marrow, may be written as well with two Syllables, *moel-le*.

Oie, or oye.

Oie or *oye*, hath not properly the sound of a Triphthong, save onely in the third Persons plural of the Præterimperfect Tenses of Verbes; as in *aimoyent* they did love, *parloyent* they did speake, *aimeroient* they would love, *parleroyent* they would speake; *soient* let them bee, or they may bee, is pronounced in the same manner, not leaving out any of the Vowels; and it is pronounced just like the Diphthong *oi*, onely it is sounded with a dragging of the voyce to make the Syllable longer. In other words, it is no Triphthong, but divided in the pronunciation, as in * *o-ye* a Goose, *pray-e* a prey, *joy-e* joy, *voy-ent* they see, *croy-ent* they beleeve, *turnoy-ent* they goe or turne about.

* Where it is pronounced as we English sound y, in the word boy.

The rest deserve not the name of Triphthongs, because they are made of Vowels, which doe not increase the sound, but onely serve other Letters: as *iei*, hath no more sounded but *ie*, for *i*, serveth onely to liquefie the *l*, [which alwayes followeth it eyther double or single] as it appeareth in these words, *vieil, vieille* old.

The

The like is to be sayd of *oui*, which hath no more of it but *ou*, pronounced; as in *mouiller* to wet, *fouiller* to foule, *fouiler* to search: except onely *ouy*, an Adverbe of affirming, yes, *Bouis* a Boxe-tree, which some write *Bau*. In other words *i*, is separated from *ou*, as in *fou-ir* to dig, *jou-ir* to enjoy.

Oui.

Oei, uei, are pronounced like *eu*, as *œil* an eye, *sarcueil* or *sarcoeil* a Beere to carry the dead upon, *deuil* or *doeil* sorrow, *sueil* the Threthold of a House.

Oei, uei.

Oeu, and ueu, likewise are pronounced like *eu*, as in *boeuf* an Oxe, *Soeur* a Sister: and indeed the first *o*, and *u*, serve onely (for the most part) to make the Letter going before harder sounded; which Letter is commonly *c*, or *g*, as * *Cœur* a heart, *gueule* ryot in eating and diinking, *rancœur* malice, *gueux* a begger: For in words where neyther *c*, *g*, nor *q*, goe before *ueu*, it is for the most part, divided into two Syllables: as *su-eur* sweat, *lu-eur* shining, *remu-eur* a remoover, *impetuex* impetuous. There be some others, which are of lesse use, and old Orthography.

Oeu, ueu.

First, *ao*, as in *Faon* a Fawne, *Paon* a Peacocke, *Taon* a Brize, or *Gadbee*, which now are written *fan*, *pan*, *than* or *thon*. Yet we say, *pa-onner* to play the Peacocke, *fa-onner* to bring forth.

* *Were it not for the o in cœur, the c, would bee pronounced like s. so likewise were it not for the first u, in gueule and gueux, g, were to be sounded like*

Oa, as in *foarre* which now is written *foirre* or *feurre* straw or litter.

J, Cōsonant. See the Letter i.

ae, Paelle a Fire-shovell or *Pale*, (for the *e*, serverth but to make the Syllable longer.

Ea,

Ea. *Ea, dea, as ouy dea, which is founded ouy da, eage or age age. (In which word you may perceive, that ea, is no more but a long a.)*

Aou. *Aou, in Aoust the Moneth August ; pronounced properly , hath but one Syllable ; for saoul full, and saouler to fill ; Read, soul, souler: in ancient times, that which we now write, peur feare, they wrote paour.*

Oua. *Ouä is another of them, as in Touaille a Towell, which hath but two Syllables (and is pronounced toua-lle,) fous-ce a hearth-cake (which likewise hath but two Syllables) but Pou-a-cie a Scabbiness about the Nose hath three ; (it is written sometimes Poacre.*

Heretofore in the *French Orthography*, there were more Letters written and not pronounced then now there are : for our Fore-fathers put in many Letters, which served onely to shew the Etymology and the Originall of words, many of which are now cut off, and those which doe remaine, are sufficiently noted in the Rules going before.

Neverthelesse, adde this one Note more for Reading and Pronunciation : that where these Consonants, *b, the hard c, d, f, g,* the full * *l, p, t,* be written double, we pronounce them but single : as *Abbë* an Abbot, *Abboyer* to barke at, *accourir* to run to, *addonner* to apply ones selfe to, *effort* an endeavour, *aggraver* to aggravate, *embellir* to beautific, *opposer* to oppose, *attendre* to expect or stay for, pronounce them *Abë, aboyer, &c.*

* Viz. when
it is not Li-
quid.

Note

Note that the gentle *e*, (that is *e*, before *e*, and *i*, which is sounded like an *s*) is not conteyned under this Rule; as you may see in these words. *Accident* accident, *acces* an accesse, *Occident* the West (where the first *e*, hath a sound like *h*, and the second like *s*.) Neyther doth the liquid *l*, belong to this Rule; for where it is in the middle of a word, it must of necessity be doubled, as *veiller* to watch, *cueiller* to gather together. Likewise *t*, when it is doubled after *e*, makes the *e*, open: and in this case, it must necessarily be doubled; for if the *t*, be not doubled, the *e*, going before is Feminine, as you may see by these words, *nettes* cleanliness, *pauvreté* poverty, *pauvrette* a little poore thing, *fermeté* firmness, *fermette* a diminutive of firme (in all which words you are to note, that where double *t*, followeth *e*; there *e*, before *tt*, is open: but where single *t*, doth follow, there it is *e*, Feminine: Except *bebeté* dulness, and those words, which have *ie*, before *t*, (which are mentioned above in the Diphthong *ie*) as *Piété* Piety, *Société* Society, &c. And without exception, *t*, after *e*, in the end of a word or Syllable, makes the *e*, open.

No considerations but these here mentioned, oblige us to double the aforesayd Consonants.

Some have endeavoured to gather Rules and Directions for the quantity of Syllables: But in my opinion, there is little certainty in them. I have given a touch of what I thought necessary, in every Letter: make onely what there is set downe.

downe. That which I must especially call to mind, as being a thing of greatest importance, is that the last Syllable is most considerable in our language: therefore mind it carefully: for if it be short, it makes the Syllable next before, long; if it be long, the Syllable next before must eyther be short, or at least common [that is, indifferently long or short.] Now every Syllable ending in *e*, Feminine is short: and every other Termination is eyther long or common.

Of an Apostrophus.

A Postrophus is a marke, whereby wee know that there is a Vowell wanting: It is written thus (') after the manner of the *Grecians*. But amongst them, almost every Vowell may be cut off by Apostrophus: we cut off onely *e*, Feminine from words of one Syllable: and *a*, in the Article and Pronoun Relative *la*, and *i*, in the Conjunction *si*, before *il* he, *ils* they, as *s' il*, for *si il* if he or it, *s' ils*, for *si ils* if they. And sometimes in Verse we write *s' elle* if she, *s' elles* if they, *s' on*, *s' ainsi* if so, for *si elle*, *si elles*, *si on*, *si ainsi*. Likewise, we cut off *e*, in the Preposition *entre* betwene, *contre* against: especially in * composition, as in *contr' opposer* to set a mans selfe against, *contr' amour* an honest Love, *contr' escarp* a counter-scarpe, *contr' imiter* to imitate one that imitates him, *s' entr' acceller* to embrace, collor or clip one another, *s' entr' entendre*

* Before a,
Co is O.

to hold intelligence one with another, *entr' ouir* to heare by halves, *entr' ouvrir* to lay halfe open.

Words of more than one Syllable, wee commonly write whole, because in those, *e*, Feminine is not subject to an Apostrophus, unlesse it be in speaking and Reading: For then wee cut it off when a word beginning with a Vowell, or *h*, Mute followeth it, as we sayd before.

But in words of one Syllable, as *je, me, te, se, de, ne, que, le, la*, whether they bee Articles or Relatives, wee doe not write one Vowell before another, or *h*, Mute: but instead of it, we put an Apostrophus.

In like manner in the Demonstrative *ce* that, before the Verbe Substantive, as *c' estoit* it was, *c' est* it is, *c' a esté* it hath beene, *c' ont esté* they have beene such or so, *c' eut esté* it had beene. Likewise before the auxiliary Verbe *avoir* to have, in a granting answer [as if one should aske me a question in this manner: *Monsieur vostre pere, a-t'il receu l'argent, que je vous ay donné pour luy rendre.* Hath your Father received the money, which I gave you to deliver to him? If you grant that he hath it, the answer may be] *c' a-mon* he hath it indeed; [or if the question were asked whether he had it, you may answer] *c' avoit mon* hee had it indeed, &c. You may see examples of this very frequently.

La there, an Adverbe of Place, will not bee Apostrophated, [though *la* the Article, and *la* the Relative be] I will give an example of both:

E 2

L' ame

L'ame del' avaricieux est l' ou est son tresor.
Where the Covetous mans Treasure is, there is his Soule.

No other Vowels nor words are Apostrophated: but some are * Syncopated and marked with the marke of an Apostrophus; as *a' vous*, for *avez vous*? have you? *sfa' vous*, for *savez vous*? Doe you know? *Grand'* for *grande*, as *Grand' vertu* for *grande vertu* great vertue, *grand' puissance*, for *grande puissance* great power, &c. So likewise, *ell'* for *elle* shee, as *qu' ell' sceust tout cela qu' a chanté Petrarque en amours tant vanté*, That she knew what Petrarch wrote, who was so much famed for his Love Verses. To these you may adde, *Pri'*, *suppli'*, *gard'*, for *Prie* I pray, *supplie* I beseech, *garde* take heed, [as *je vous pri'*, *je vous suppli'*. I pray you, I beseech you.] *M' amie*, for *mon amie* my the friend, *m' amour*, for *mon amour* my Love, *t' amie*, *t' amour*, for *ton amie*, *ton amour*, thy thee Friend, thy Love. *g' amie*, *s' amour*, his the friend, his Love.

* For where a Vowell followeth u, by the Rule, it should bee a Consonant.

You shall finde two little points over *ü*, to let you know, it is not to bee mistaken for a Consonant; as *foüace* a Cake baked upon the hearth, *moüelle* marrow, both which words have but two Syllables, *foüa-ce*, *moüel-le*. If you finde these poynts over any other vowell, it sheweth that that Vowell must not be in the same Syllable with the Vowell before it; as *re-iteré* reiterated or done over againe, *re-ünir* to joyne together againe, *veu-ë* the sight,

fight, *prou-esse* provelse, *lou-ër* to praise, *jou-ër* to play.

Wee use to put a certaine tye in words that are to be pronounced as one word, as *porte-en-segne* an Ensigne-bearer, *Porte-faix* a Porter, *choyez-vous*, looke to your selfe, *que dit-on* what say they? *Que fait-il?* What doth he?

As for Markes and Points, of Interrogation (?) Parenthesis () Admiration and Interjection (!) Periods (.) and the parts of them; we follow altogether the Latine.

And now I thinke I have sufficiently set downe, whatsoever belongs to the pronunciation, and Orthography of our Tongue; which I desire, in regard of the difficulty in it, that strangers should carefully observe. *He that maketh a good beginning, bath halfe done his businesse.*

Wee may reckon nine parts of Speech, *viz.* The *Article*, the *Noune*, the *Pronome*, the *Verbe*, the *Participle*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, the *Interjection*, which some put amongst the *Adverbes*, after the Greeke manner.

L'ame del' avaricieux est l' ou est son tresor.
Where the Covetous mans Treasure is, there is his Soule.

No other Vowels nor words are Apostrophated: but some are * Synecopated and marked with the marke of an Apostrophus; as *a' vous*, for *avez vous*? have you? *sca' vous*, for *sçavez vous*? Doe you know? *Grand'* for *grande*, as *Grand' vertu* for *grande vertu* great vertue, *grand' puissance*, for *grande puissance* great power, &c. So likewise, *ell'* for *elle* shee, as *qu' ell' sçeuft tout cela qu' a chanté Petrarque en amours tant vanté*, That she knew what Petrarch wrote, who was so much famed for his Love Verses. To these you may adde, *Pri'*, *suppli'*, *gard'*, for *Prie* I pray, *supplie* I beseech, *garde* take heed, [as *je vous pri'*, *je vous suppli'*. I pray you, I beseech you.] *M' amie*, for *mon amie* my the friend, *m' amour*, for *mon amour* my Love, *t' amie*, *t' amour*, for *ton amie*, *ton amour*, thy thee Friend, thy Love. *S' amie*, *s' amour*, his the friend, his Love.

* For where a Vowell followeth u, by the Rule, it should bee a Consonant.

You shall finde two little points over *ü*, to let you know, it is not to bee mistaken for a Consonant; as *foüace* a Cake baked upon the hearth, *moüelle* marrow, both which words have but two Syllables, *foüa-çe*, *moüel-le*. If you finde these poynts over any other vowell, it sheweth that that Vowell must not be in the same Syllable with the Vowell before it; as *re-iteré* reiterated or done over againe, *re-ünir* to joyne together againe, *veu-ë* the sight,

fight, *prou-esse* provesse, *lou-er* to praise, *jou-er* to play.

Wee use to put a certaine tye in words that are to be pronounced as one word, as *porte-en-segne* an Ensigne-bearer, *Porte-faix* a Porter, *choyez-vous*, looke to your selfe, *que dit-on* what say they? *Que fait-il?* What doth he?

As for Markes and Points, of Interrogation (?) Parenthesis () Admiration and Interjection (!) Periods (.) and the parts of them; we follow altogether the Latine.

And now I thinke I have sufficiently set downe, whatsoever belongs to the pronunciation, and Orthography of our Tongue; which I desire, in regard of the difficulty in it, that strangers should carefully observe. *He that maketh a good beginning, hath halfe done his businesse.*

Wee may reckon nine parts of Speech, viz. The *Article*, the *Noune*, the *Pronoun*, the *Verbe*, the *Participle*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, the *Interjection*, which some put amongst the *Adverbes*, after the Greeke manner.

Of the Articles.

VVE call by the name of Articles, certaine Syllables by which we make a difference betweene one Noun and another, and qualifie them in some sort. They are distinguished commonly into *Finite* Articles and *Infinite*, or rather *Definite* and *Indefinite*. Besides, some are of the Masculine Gender, and some of the Feminine, and some common; viz. Such as indifferently serve to both Genders. Again, for the number: some are of the *Singular*, and some of the *Plurall*; others serve as well for one number, as the other. Some, to imitate the *Greekes* and the *Latines* in some measure, endeavour to divide the Articles by the cases, giving each case his Article: But this kind of Division, though it may serve to teach better by, yet really and indeed, there is no such matter. For to say the truth, onely *le, la, les*, seeme to deserve the name of Articles; the rest are *Præpositions*, which our Language maketh use of to set words in array (as a man may say) and fit them one to another. I divide them in this manner,

Defi-

Definite Articles of the Singular Number.

THose Articles which serve for the Nominative and the Accusative cases, are *le* Mascul. *la* Fem. These are put before words beginning with a Consonant : as *le Roy* the King, *la Royne* the Queene, *le Soleil* the Sunne, *la Lune* the Moone.

The Article of the Common gender, which is put before words beginning with a Vowell or *h*, Mute, is *l'*, as *l'homme* the man, *l'oeil* the eye, *l'oreille* the eare, *l'hôte* the Host, *l'hôtesse* the Hostesse.

The Articles of the Genitive and Ablative Cases, are *du* of the, for the Masculine, *de la* of the, for the Feminine Gender : and these are put before words beginning with Consonants : as *du Roy* of the King, *de la Royne* of the Queene, *du Soleil* of the Sunne, *de la Lune* of the Moone.

The Article Common to both Genders, is *de l'*, and it is put before words eyther of the Masculine or Feminine Gender, beginning with a Vowell or *h*, Mute : as *de l'homme* of the man, *de l'oeil* of the eye, *de l'hôte* of the Host : [all Masculines] *de l'oreille* of the Eare, *de l'hôtesse* of the Hostesse, both Feminines.

The Articles of the Dative case, which are to be put before words beginning with Consonants,

nants, are *au* to the, for the Masculine Gender, and *a la* to the, *en la* in the, for the Feminine: as *au Roy* to the King, *a la Roynne* to the Queen, *au Soleil* to the Sun, *a la Lune* to the Moone. *En la Main* in the Maine, *en la Ville* in the Towne.

The common Article which serveth for both Genders, and is to be put before Vowels and *h*, mute, is *a l'* to the, *en l'* in the, as *a l' homme* to the man, *en l' oeil* in the eye, *en l' oreille*, in the ear.

The Articles of the plurall number, are common to both Genders, for the Nominative and the Accusative *les*; as *les hommes* the men, *les femmes* the women, *les Roys* Kings, *les Roynes* Queenes.

The Article of the Gen. & Ablat. is *des* as *des hommes* of the men, *des femmes* of the Women.

The Articles of the Dative, *aux* to, *es* in: as *aux hommes* to men, *aux femmes* to women, *es Livres* in Bookes.

Note.

Note, that when wee in English use the word *the*, before a Noun, it is commonly to bee expressed in French, by the Definite Article, as may be observed by the examples aforesayd.

Indefinite Articles common to both Genders and Numbers.

They have no Nominative nor Accusative.

In the Genitive and Ablative, *de* of, for a word beginning with a Consonant, as *de Roy*.

de

de Royne, de soleil, de Lune : [which cannot be properly expressed in English.

For words beginning with a Voyvell, or *b*, Mute, *d'* ; as *d'homme, d'oeil, d'oreille*.

In the Dative we use *a* to, *en* in, *a Roy, a Royne, en Roy, en Royne*.

*Individuall Articles and such as
signifie one peculiar thing
onely.*

WHere an Englishman would use this particle *a*, with a Noun, the French use *un*, as for example in the Masculine Gender, *un a, d'un of a, a un to a, en un in a*.

In the Feminine, *une a, d'une of a, a une to a, en une in a*.

By this a man may see, that our Language hath but three distinct Cases, because the Nominative and the Accusative are all one : and so likewise are the Genitive and the Ablative. Wee may see also, that the indefinite Articles have onely two Cases, viz. the Genitive and the Dative. For the Vocative, we use cyther the Nominative, or sometimes the Adverbe *ô*.

If you will reduce our manner of speaking and Syntaxe, to the Greeke and Latine, this distribution of Articles will somewhat vary, for you will finde that all these Articles, in divers respects, may be in all Cases, as I will shew hereafter.

Note.

We

We call those Definite Articles, which have a power to limit those words, which in their signification are generall and unlimited. The same doe the Definite Articles, both in the *Greeke, Dutch, English and Italian*, and all other Languages.

Therefore if every severall Nation compare the use, and signification of our Articles, with those of his owne Language, he will understand sooner and better.

The Indefinite Articles doe not limit the signification of a word, but leave it in its naturall and large extent. For the better understanding of this, imagine that some words have naturally a generall signification, which belongeth indifferently to all and every particular of that kind. So the word *Royaume* a Kingdome, *ville* a City, *Rivière* a River, *animal* a living Creature, *Cheval* a Horse, *Arbre* a Tree, *Chesne* an Oake, and innumerable others; which sort of Nounes, the Grammarians call Appellatives, that is to say, such Names by which every particular of any kind or sort is called, as for example; the word *Roy* King, as also, the word word *Royaume* Kingdome, doe belong to every King or Kingdome: So may wee say of others.

Other words signifie onely one particular thing, as *Loüis* Lewis, *France* France, *Seine* the name of a River in *France*, and these they call proper Names.

This considered, you may easily understand the

the use of our Articles, both Definite and Indefinite, and why they are so called.

The Definite Articles, doe reſtraine the generall uncertaine ſignification of Appellatives, and apply it to one particular: as if I ſay, *J'ay veu le Roy*, I have ſcene the King, *Je ſuis ſerviteur du Roy*, I am the Kings Servant, *j'ay parlé au Roy*, I have ſpoken to the King: The force of theſe Definite Articles, confineth and limiteth the underſtanding, to one particular King: viz. the King of the Country where I am, or elſe ſome King that was ſpoken of before: at leaſt, the Article will tye mee to name what King I meane: as *Le Roy d'Angle-terre*, *de France*, the King of England, or ſome other particular King.

The Indefinite Articles, on the contrary, doe not tye a man to name any particular: as *Il promet en foy de Roy, de garder equité*: Hee promiſeth in the faith of a King to obſerve Equitie. *Car il aſſiert a Roy, de Regir ſes ſujets comme pere*: For it belongeth to a King to governe his ſubjects like a Father, &c. Theſe Articles leave their Nounes which they belong to, in their generall unlimited ſignification. [For when I ſay a King ought to doe ſo or ſo, no man knoweth what King I meane: and though by the word King, every particular is meant, yet theſe phraſes or formes of ſpeaking, tye me to name no particular.]

Now it falleth out very often, that we ſpeake of things in groſſe, as of one whole intire body:

and

and this wee doe two manner of wayes.

Of the first sort are Substances, which have their life, their being, and their name, by being whole and intire; as *Un Roy* a King, *un Royaume* a Kingdome, *une espée* a Sword, *un livre* a Booke, *une rivière* a River; cut these in pieces, and they loose their name, being and use; [as if a Kings body and soule be parted, hee is no longer a King; if a Kingdome be divided into severall mens jurisdictions, it ceaseth to be a Kingdome; breake a Sword, reare all the leaves of a Booke, or some of them out, cut a River into small brookes and gutters, and the Sword will no more be a sword, the Booke no booke, nor the River a river: but a piece of a sword, a piece of a booke, and a piece or portion of a river.]

The second manner, is in speaking of Qualities, or things adhering and belonging to Substances; as *une chaleur* a heate, *une froideur* a coldnes, *une dureté* a hardnes, and such like; or else have their being in the understanding, as *une peine*, a labour, paine, or trouble; *un souci* a care, *une joye* a joy, *un repos* a rest, or quiet, and such like. Wee speake of these things in this manner, when wee meane some such thing [as wee mention, though we doe not expresse particularly which it is] as *un Roy* a King, *quelque Roy* some King, *un soin* a care, *quelq; soin* some care, *un remede* a remedy, *quelque remede* some remedy: and in stead of an Article, wee put to them a note of unity: in the Masculine

euline gender, *Un a, d'un* of a, or an, from a, or an, *en un*, in a : In the Feminine gender, *Une, d'une, a une, en une*, english it like *un, d'un, &c.*

It wee would speake of the same things, in the same indefinite sense, in the Plurall number, wee should use the Article *des*, before the Substantives, to shew the Nominative and the Accusative case, or after one of these Prepositions *a to, en in, par by, avec with* : as *c'ont fait des Rois*, Kings have done this : *c'est la maniere des Rois*, this is the manner of Kings. *il s'a oppose a des Rois*, hee hath opposed Kings ; so likewise, *En des Roys*, in Kings ; *Par des Roys*, by Kings ; *Avec des Roys*, with Kings, and other Prepositions serving to the Nominative case. So likewise, in the Accusative, *Des soucis cares* ; as *Il a mis des soucis arriere de soy*, hee hath cast care behind his backe.

Wee put *De* before Adjectives, when they come before Substantives in the cases aforesaid ; as *De bons Roys*, good Kings ; *de poignants soucis*, pricking cares ; *des grande recompenses*, great rewards.

That you be not mistaken in *Des*, you must note, that when *des* noteth the Cases aforesaid, [*viz.* The Nominative and Accusative,] it is indefinite. But when it is of the Genitive, or the Ablative, or signifieth these Prepositions *de, ex out* [as *Il est sorti des ces champs*, he is gone out of these fields] and the like, it is alwaies definite. As

As for the Article *de*, it is every where indefinite.

It happeneth as often, that wee have occasion to speake of things by piECEmeale, meaning some part or parcell of them, (which manner of speaking is quite opposite to the other :) and this wee doe two wayes.

The first is, when wee speake of substances which for the use of man are cut in pieces, and yet every piece keepeth still the name of the whole, * as *Du pain* bread, [as *voilà du pain*, looke you there is bread,] *du vin* wine, [as *Donne moy du vin*, give me some wine,] *de la toile* linnen cloath, [as *i'achepteray de la toile*, *de la soye*, *du papier*, *de l'encre*; I will buy some linnen cloath, some silke, some Inke.] Which things are not usefull, unlesse they be parted and divided: and when they are so, every part and piece is called by the name of the whole; [as every piece of bread is called Bread, every piece of silke is called Silke, &c.]

* When we
speake of
these things
in English,
we use the
word Some,
as give me
some Bread,
some Wine,
some cloath
&c.

The second way is, when wee speake of the same qualities above mentioned, or other things which doe adhere to substances, or things whose being is in the understanding; as *De la chaleur*, some heate, *de la blancheur* some whitenesse, *du froid* some cold, *de la peine* some paine, *du souci* some care, *du plaisir* some pleasure, *de l'esprit* some spirit, wit or courage. And wee speake in this manner, when we meane indefinitely some part or portion of these things: and therefore to these words, in both numbers, wee use

use certaine Particles which signifie Division and distribution, viz. in the Singular number and Masculine gender, *De, du,* [before words which begin with a Consonant,] and *De l'* [before words beginning with a Vowell : where you must suppose the Letter *a*, to be cut off by Apostrophus.] In the Plurall number, wee use *De,* and *des,* which are signes of the Nominative case : and heere you must note two things.

First, that these Articles, in this sense and these phrases, are not onely to be used in the Genitive, and Ablative case, but in the Nominative, Accusative, and Dative : so they be joyned with one of these Articles *a, to, en in, avec with, &c.* As *Qu' est-cela,* what is that ? *Ce est de l'argent,* it is money ; *Versez du vin en mon verre,* poutre some wine into my glasse : *Cette liqueur ressemble a du vin,* this liquor is like wine. *J ay employé mes deniers a du blé,* a de la *Marchandise,* I have layd out my money in Wheate in *Marchandise,* &c. *J ay veu des Gentils-hommes ;* I ay *communiqué mon affaire a des Docteurs,* I have seene some Gentlemen ; I have imparted my businessse to some Doctors.

Some, in these Phrases, would take these Articles for Prepositions, (as I sayd before) others, doe understand some words, which may signifie an indefinite quality ; as *Aucun, aucuns, quelques,* which signifie *some,* and Others, by these phrases intend to expresse that, which the Latins meane by these words, *Aliquid and aliquot ;*
[which

[which two latter opinions, agree with our English expression; when wee use the word *some*; *some wine*; *some Doctors*; as I sayd before,] and for my part, I intend to moove no Controversie about it, if the right use and meaning of the phrase be understood.

The second thing to be considered, is, that if in these phrases, the Adjectives be put and construed before theyr Substantives, then in stead of the Articles *Du, de l', de la, des*, it were better to put *de*, according to the Rule afore-going. As *Dt bon vin*, good Wine, *de fine soye*, fine Silke, *de belle estouffe*, faire stufte, *de Magnifiques roys*, magnificent Kings, *de braves Gentils-hommes* brave Gentlemen, *de sçavants Docteurs*, learned Doctors, [still meaning some quantity or number of the whole kind of them.]

By this, a man may easily gather, that there are many substances, which in divers respects may be taken, for a whole intire body, or for parts and portions of a whole intire body; as *un blé*, a whole Wheate field, or *un bois*, a whole wood or Forest, is a whole intire thing. *Du blé*, *du bois*, meaning thereby some quantity of wheat or wood, is a part of the whole. So wee say, *une paille*, when wee meane one straw: when wee meane some quantity of it, wee say, *De la paille*. So likewise in Cattle which serve for food, when wee meane some piece or part of them, we say; *Du boeuf* some Beefe, *du mouton* some Mutton, *du veau* some Veale: but if wee say, *Vn bœuf*, *un mouton*, wee meane
a whole

a whole Beefe or Mutton.

When we speake of the Members of the body, wee follow the Latine Syntaxe, and use our definite Articles: as, *La teste me fait mal*, my head is ill, *un tel est blessé a la teste*, such a one is hurt in the head. *Gardez de vous rompre la jambe*, take heed of breaking your leg. And not as many Strangers say, *Ma teste me fait mal*, my head is ill; *un tel est blessé a la jambe*.

In like manner, Actions and Exercises set downe by name, will have Definite Articles joyned with them, as *un tel est trop addonné au jeu*, such a one is too much given to play; *il aime le jeu de paume*, he loves the Tennis-Court, *nous nous exerçons au jeu de la paume*, wee exercise Tennis. Where note that *le jeu de la paume*, signifyeth the act of playing, and *un jeu de paume*, the Tennis-Court. The same Rule holdeth in other Playes and sports: *jouer aux dez*, a la boule, aux eschechs, to play at Dice, at Bowles, at Chess: So also doth it hold in other actions and Exercises, as *Courir la bague*, to run at the Ring. *Aller le trot*, or *au trot*, to trot, *aller le galop*, or *au galop*, to gallop: naming the action done, and not the manner how it is done: for if the manner were set downe, it would require the indefinite Article *a*, (which we will afterwards speake off in his place) as if a man should say, *Sauter a joints piés*, to leape with both the feet together, *Courir a bride avalée*, to run full sling (as we say) [as if a Horse had eaten up his bridle, that should keepe him in.]

In like manner if wee use the Nounne derived from such Verbes, we must use with it the Indefinite Articles; as *Coureur de poste*, hee that rideth or runneth Post, *courir la poste* to runne post. *Tireur d'armes*, a Fencer, *tirer des armes* to fence, *jouëur de Lut*, a Lutinist; *Jouër du Lut*, to play upon the Lute. So also in Arts and Trades. *Enseigneur de Musique*, a Teacher of Musicke; *Enseigner la Musique*, to teach Musique; *Tailleur de pierre* a Stone-cutter; *tailer la pierre* to cut a stone, *Faire des habits*, to make cloathes, *un faiseur d'habits*, a Taylour. The reason of this difference, in my opinion, is because the Nounne Verball doth imply a disposition or faculty to worke, which is indifferent to every instrument and matter: and the Verbe implyeth the action, which applyeth it selfe but to one instrument and matter at once.

In every partitive phrase and manner of speaking, the Definite Articles are applyed to the thing divided or parted. For partition [or separation] is when one party, [or some few parties] are taken out of a multitude, [and in any thing compared with the rest;] as *Cette Dameselle est la fleur des belles*, this Gentlewoman is the flower of beaurty, or fairenesse; [here you see, out of the whole body or company of faire ones, one particular is singled out, and compared with the rest; and therefore this manner of speaking, is called partitive, and the Definite or Finite Article *des* is put to *belles*] So likewise, when the comparative is used partitively, instead

of

of the superlative; as *j' estude les leçons de plus sçavant homme de l' Université*, I study the Dictates of the most learned man in the Vniversity; *J' ay baillé mon ouvrage a faire au plus excellent ouvrier de la Ville, &c.* I have put out my worke to the best workman in the Towne. Where strangers would have sayd, *le plus docte en la ville, le plus excellent en la Ville.*

When wee name any whole sort or kinde, this manner of speaking is Definite: and we use in it the Definite Articles. The reason is plain; for under one generall terme or name, we comprehend every particular of that kinde: or else we may say that the term of Vniversality [all, every and such like] is understood: which commeth all to one end. So we say, *L' homme a esté créé a l' image de dieu*, Man [meaning all men] was made after the Image of God. *La femme a esté baillée a l' homme pour aide*, woman [meaning every woman] was given to man [meaning all men] for a helper. *Les bouillons de la colere en l' homme produisent de perilleux effects*, the heate of anger in man, produceth dangerous effects. *Le cheval est propre a la guerre comme le boeuf au labourage*, as the Oxe is fit for labor, so is the horse for warre. *La propriété de laurier est contre le tonnerre*, the Bay-tree hath an antipathy against Thunder. *On attribüe une merveilleuse propriété a la paulme, de se roidir contre le faix*. The palme Tree they say, hath a marvelous property to rise up more stiffely, if you lay any weight upon it.

On doute lequel est plus damageable ou profitable, l'or ou le fer, It is a doubt whether is more profitable or hurtfull; gold, or yron. La gueule en perd plus que le glaive. Intemperance destroyeth more then the Sword. And so much for Definite Articles, joyned with Nounes Appellatives.

Of Indefinite Articles ioyned with proper Names.

*En in, may perhaps more generally bee taken for a Preposition, but I follow my Author.

DE of, a to, * en in, (as I sayd before) are our Indefinite Articles; which we use immediately before proper Names, which of themselves have a signification sufficiently limited, as *La statue de Cæsar qui fit la guerre a Pompée*, the Statue of Cæsar, which made warre against Pompey. *L'homme est l'Image de Dieu*, man is the Image of God. *Adresse a Dieu vos prieres*; direct your prayers to God. *Mettez en Dieu vostre esperance*, put your hope in God. For taking the name of God for the true God, it is a proper Name.

I sayd immediately; for if you place any Epithet, or Adjective, before the proper Name, then you must put a Definite Article before the Epithet or Adjective; as *La statue du Dictateur Cæsar, qui fit la guerre au grand Pompée*, the Statue of Cæsar the Dictatour, that made warre against Pompey the Great.

But if you put an Epithet or Adjective, signifying some speciall prærogative, and eminence after the proper name, then we would put the Indefinite Article *before* the proper Name, then after it, and before the Epithet, we would put the Definite Articles *le, la, les*, as *La statue de Cesar le Dictateur, qui fit la guerre a Pompée le grand*, the Statue of *Cesar* the Dictator, &c.

So also, *la belle Helene faire Hellen*, and *Helene la belle Hellen* the faire. *Medée la sorciere*, Medea the Sorceresse, &c. These are Emphaticall phrases, and carry some speciall Note with them; for *Cesar le Dictateur*, is as much as to say, *Cesar qui a este Dictateur*, that was Dictatour. And *Pompée le grand*, that is *Celuy qui a porté le titre de grand*, He that had the Name of great for his Title. So *Charles le simple*, *le sage*, Charles the simple, the Wise. *Louys le Debonnaire*, *Lewis* the Gentle. Which Titles make the men more noted; for if the Adjective were not set out with such an Emphasis, but signified some common quality or ordinary attribute, you needed not to use the Definite Article to it. As if we should say, *Alexander jeune et valiant desconfit en bataille Darius treispuissant Roy de Perse*. Alexander young and valiant [which were no peculiar Attributes to Alexander] overthrew in Battaille potent Darius King of Persia. *Cræsus Roy de Lydie fut assez sagement admonesté par Solon Philosophe Grec*. Cræsus King of Lydia, was admonished wisely enough by Solon the Greeke Philosopher. Charles

Empereur d' *Allemagne* prit prisonnier *Jean Frederic duc de Saxe*, Charles Emperor of Germany tooke *John Frederic* Duke of Saxony Prisoner.

Monsieur Sir, *Madame* Madam, *Mademoiselle*, Madam Mistresse, follow the Rule of this Emphaticall Construction; as *Monsieur le Duc*, the Duke, *Madame la Comtesse*, the Countesse, *Monsieur le Capitaine* the Captaine. So likewise when we would speake with scorn or neglect, we say *Monsieur le sot*, that Foole or Sor, *Madame la putaine*, Mistris Punke, & in the Plur. number also.

Yet it is our custome, when ever we joyne any Epithet to the name God, whether the Epithet be before, or after, to use the Definite Article [but if the Epithet be an Adjective before *Dieu*, we put *le* Article before the Epithet, if after *Dieu*, we put the Article before *Dieu*] as *J'adore le vray Dieu*, I worship the true God. *Le monde est l'ouvrage de Dieu* sort, the world is the work of *le* mighty God. *J'adresse mes prieres au Dieu vivant*. I addresse my Prayers to the living God.

In like manner, when God is sayd to be God to any in particular: as *le Dieu de Jacob*, the God of *Jacob*, *le Dieu de nos peres*, the God of our Fathers. Or when we mention the name of any false God with the word *Dieu*, as *l'idole du Dieu Jupiter*, the Idoll of the God *Jupiter*: *S'attaquer du Dieu Mars*, to incounter the God *Mars*. Against this most received custome, it hath beene observed, that a famous Doctour of Divinity, joyning the Epithet *vivant* living, to God, hath used the Indefinite Article *De*, in many

many places of his writings : as *Les Prophetes de Dieu vivant*, *La doctrine de Dieu vivant*, the Prophets, the doctrine of the living God. Which seemeth to me the peculiar priviledge of this person and word. There remaineth yet the word *seul* alone, which if it come before *Dieu* requireth a definit Article; *Le seul Dieu*, the only God. *Du seul Dieu au seul Dieu*. If it come after *dieu*, it requireth an Indefinite Article, before *Dieu* [in the; Gen. & Dat. case] as *Dieu seul* God alone, *de dieu seul* of God alone, *a Dieu seul* to God alone.

Vpon these grounds and examples, wee may make this generall Rule : That all proper names of Men, Months, Cities, Castles, Towns, Villages, Kingdomes, Countries, Isles, Rivers, Lakes, and Mountaines, or if there be any living Creature, that hath a proper name, as for horses *Buccephalus*, *Rabican*, *Bayard*; for Dogs, *Cerberus*, *Melampus*, or what particular and individuall thing soever there be, that hath a name peculiar to it, do require Indefinite Articles to be joyned with thē.

Except many names of Kingdomes, Provinces, & Countries, which sometimes, & in some certain wayes of speaking, have definite Articles joyned to them: as we say, *Par* or *parmi* l' *Europe*, through or throughout *Europe*, rather and more usually then *Parmi Europe*, &c. In like manner, *a la France*, *a l' Europe*, *a l' Italie*, to *France*, *Europe*, *Italy*: rather then, *a Europe*, *France*, *Italie*; [But when we adde the word *King* to it, we use onely *de*] as *Le Roy d' Angle-terre*, *de France*, *d' Espagne*, the King of *England*, the King of

France, the King of Spaine. Likewise wee say, *Je suis de France, le vien d' Italie, de France, d' Espagne*, I am of France, or I am a Frenchman. I come from Italy, France, Spaine; *Je demeure en France*, I live in France: We say indifferently, *Les villes de France, d' Italie, de Poictou*, or *de la France, del' Italie, du Poictou*, the Cities of France, of Italy, the City of Poictou. And likewise of others, which must be learned by observation.

From this generall Rule are excepted, some proper Names of Citties and Castles; as *Le Mans, le Plessis, la Charité, la Rochelle*. And some names of Seignories or Lordships, by which wee call the possessors of them, [as wee in England call Barles, by the names of the places whereof they are Earles; as *Arundell, Northumberland, Darby, &c.*] or Military words, when they are attributed to men, as * *La Fleur, le Pont, la Renaudie, la Palisse*: [as if we in English should call men of worth and valour, the Rampart, the Bulwarke, the Wall of England.] Except also many names of Rivers, to which custome hath joyned definite Articles, as if they were Appellatives; or as if the appellative *Fleuve* or *Rivière* the river, were understood; as *Le Tibre, le Rhin, le Pau, le Danube, le Nil*; the river Tyber, Rhine, Po, Donaw, or Nile. Oftentimes wee say indifferently *Tamise*, or *la Tamise* the Thames, *Charante*, or *la Charante*, *Saone, seine, Garonne, Dordonne Meuse*, (Rivers in France) with divers others, which use will teach us.

Wee

Wee say also, *L' Appennin, les Alpes, les Pyrénées*, the hill *Appennine*, the *Alpes*, the *Pyreanean* mountaines : which it may be wee doe, because by every one of these names wee meane a certaine number of Hills.

*Of indefinite Articles applied to
nouns Appellatives.*

THESE same Articles serve also Nouns appellatives, when they are meant in their general signification without any restriction, which happeneth divers wayes.

First, in phrases generally negative, which have in them ordinarily these words *Aucun, quelconque, du monde*, or phrases which are equivalent to these : As for example. *Je n' ay secours d' homme quelconque, d' homme vivant, d' homme qui soit.* I have helpe from no man whatsoever, from no man living. *Je ne voy raison du monde, en vostre dire,* I see no reason in the world in what you say.

Likewise, in questioning Phrases ; as *Trouvez vous apparence quelconque en ce propos.* Doe you find any likelihood of truth in this discourse ? *Avez vous rencontre homme du monde a qui parler ?* Have you met with any man to speake to.

Likewise in doubting, or conditionall phrases, as *Si vous avez besoin de chose que je puisse, ne m' espargnez pas.* If you want any thing that I

can

can doe, spare mee not. *Je ne sçay si je trouveray d'ami quelconq;* & know not whether I shal find any friend in the world. *Avissez s' il vous manque d'aucune chose,* Consider whether you want any thing.

Besides, in many other phrases which I haue already set downe, in the beginning of this my treatise of the articles [where you may put in stead of articles, the note of particularity *un*, in a indefinite sense and say,] *De long travail* (or *d'un long travail*) *heureuse recompense*, of a long labour commeth a happy reward *de jeune* or *d'un jeune*) *logicien argument cornu*, a young Logicians dilemma. *De jeune* (or *d'un jeune*) *medecin cemitiere bossu* a young phisitian makes a swelling churchyard. — *A cheual* or a *uncheval*. *donné on ne doit regarder la bouche* looke not a given horse in the mouth.

Indefinite articles are applyed to any pronounes whatsoever except these possessives *Mien* mine *tien* thine, *sien* his, *nostre* ours *vostre* yours *leur* theirs, when they are absolute relatives, that is to say, not ioyned to their substantives, as I wil shew, when I come to the pronounes. Except the relative *lequel* the which, which hath its indefinite article inseparably ioyned with it.

LE, LA, LES.

Now after wee haue spoken of the articles in general, letvs say something of them in particular.
When

When one of these 3 fillables *le, la, les*, is found before a verbe; or is, put at the end of a verbe by way of an Encliticke, it is not reputed an Article but a pronoun, or a relative particle, which calleth to mind some word or sentence afore going. Then are they articles, when they are ioyned to a noun, or some other word put like a noun: observe these examples and you shall see them taken both these wayes: * *L'esprit s'engourdit aussi bien que le corps, si on ne le faconne d'exercice des bonnes lettres*, The soule groweth dull as well as the body, if it be not exercised in learning. *Les vices s'y rampent aisement a qui ne les farsle & arrache par la Meditation & action de vertu*. Vices creepe easily upon him that doth not cut them and roote them up, by meditations and virtuous actions. And when wee speake by way of commanding wee say thus * *La vertu est la uraye source de noblesse, suuons la, acquerons la*, vertue is the spring whence true nobility flowes; let us follow it; let us get it. *Les reigles de grammaire sont utiles apprenez-les: observez-les* the rules of grammer are usefull, learne them, observe them.

When they are Articles, they haue power to limite and restraints, the word to which they are ioyned, to a certaine thing: as I said before; as when wee say *le livre* the booke *l'harangue* the oration, *les œuvres* the workes, we must meane some certaine booke oration or workes: or else we are bound to expresse what booke, oration or workes we meane, by one of these relatives *Qui,*

* Here l' is
an article

* Here le is
a relative.

* Here les is
an Article
* les here is
a relative.

* Here la is
an Article

* Here la is
a relative.

qui

que, lequel, dont, which, the which, whereof : as *Le livre que vous m'avez presté*, the Booke which you lent me. Or else by the Article of the Genitive case ; as *L' harangue de l' Embassadeur du Roy*, the Oration of the Kings Embassadour, *Les œuvres de Cicéron*, the workes of Cicero. Or else we must specifie what we meane some other way, as *L' harangue prononcée aux estats*, the Oration pronounced to the States,

They are supposed ordinarily, to be of the Nominative or the Accusative Case, because wee meet with them most ordinarily in those Cases. But if we reduce our phrases to the Latine, wee shall finde them in other Cases : which happeneth, when by these Articles wee joine an Epithet or Adjective to some Noun going before, as we have seene in the proper Names ; as *La statue de Cesar le Dictateur qui fit la guerre a*

* Here le is
the Dative
Case.

* Here le is
the Genit.
Case.

* Here le is
the Dative
Case.

* Here la is
the Genit.
Case.

* Here la is
of the Genit.
Case.

Pompée * *le grand*, *le palais de Monsieur* * *le Duc*, the Dukes Pallace. *J'ay communiqué mon affaire a Monsieur* * *le Docteur*, I have imparted my businesse to Master Doctour. So likewise, when any eminent attribute, good or bad, is given to any thing spoken of before, such attributes, are expressed by the comparative degree standing for the superlative, [and in these phrases, these Articles are found in the other Cases, as well as the Nominative and the Accusative,] as *j'escris a une Dame* * *la plus belle de la Cour*, I wrote to the fairest Lady in the Court. *J'ay appris cette leçon d'un Docteur* * *le plus savant de la Ville* : I learned this Lesson from one

one of the most skillfull Doctors in the towne. *Vous parlez d'un Roy* * *le parangon des Roys*, * Here *le* is the Genitive case. *a un fille* * *la fleur de pudicité*, *a un Capitaine* * Here *lo* is the Dative case. *le rampart & le mur de la patrie*. You speake of a King that is the paragon of Kings; of a Mayd that is the flower of chastity, to a Captaine that is the wall and rampier of his Country. I know these Phrases may bee supposed to have these words, *Qui est*, or *qui a esté*, which is, or which hath bin, wanting, and understood; as *La plus belle*, may be resolved into *Qui est la plus belle*; *Cesar le dictateur*, into *Cesar qui a esté le dictateur*, which was Dictator. But this resolution would be hard in some phrases, which a man may meet with: as *Chasteau de Monsieur le Duc*, the Dukes Castle, [where it would be ill French to say, *Monsieur qui est le Duc*, which is the Duke.] *La chambre de Madamo la Contesse*, the Countesses chamber: *La table de Monsieur le maître d'hôtel*, the Stewards table.

Le and *La* are lyable to an Apostrophus, so oft as they meet with a word beginning with a Vowell, or *h*, mute: as for the Masculine gender, *l'oeil* the eye, *de l'oeil* of the eye, *l'homme* the man, *a l'homme* to the man. For the Feminine, *l'ame* the soule, *de l'ame* of the oule, *a l'ame* to the soule, *l'humilité* the humility, *de l'humilité* of the humility, *a l'humilité* to the humility. This I say, to shew the error of those, that set it downe for a Rule, that words of the Masculine gender, when they begin with a Vowell, borrow the Article of the Fem-

feminine gender, for with their favour, it is the article of the masculine gender apostrophated.

De, du, of. de la, del' of the.
Des of the.

THese are rather prepositions than Articles; and indeed they signify iust the same with the Latine prepositions *de, e, ex; ab, a, abs,* which imply a coming out, seperation or parting, as *Cesar se disoit issu de la Déesse Venus* Cesar said that he had his descent from the goddess Venus. *La Loire sort d'une montaigne d'Auvergne.* The river Loire riseth out of a mountaine of Avergne. *vous avez la trié de ma marchandise* you have the the choice of my ware. *Il vien d'avec Monsieur* I come from my Master. *J'ay rencontré un tel sortant de chez luy.* I met such a one coming out of his house. And for this cause also, they serve to be construed with the verbe passive: as *Les enfans sont plus aimez du Pere, que le Pere des enfans.* The children are more beloved by the Father, then the Father by the children. *Les bons Roys cherchent plus d'estre aimez, que crains de leur sujets.* Good kings seeke more to be loved then feared of their, subjects. And the very cause why they are put for Articles of the Genie. & Ablat. case, is because they serve instead of those cases.

De, which is common to both genders and numbers

numbers, is used in indefinite phrases, as *Autorité de Roy*, the authority of a King, meaning any King whatsoever. *ouvrage de main d'homme* mans handy worke &c. It may be rendred by Adjectives thus; *Ouvrage manuel, ouvrage humain*. And this is the reason, why we make a supply of the want of adjectives, with the indefinite article *de*; as *poissons de riviere ou d'estang* river or pond fish. *verdure d'herbe* the greenenes of grasse: *vitesse de pieds* Swiftnes of foote.

Thus likewise wee expresse the efficient cause of any thing: as *brûler d'amour* to burne with loue: *soupirer de tristesse* to sigh for sorrow. *Pallir de peur*, to looke pale for feare *Rougir d'honte* to blush for shame.

Wee expresse likewise the matter, of which a thing is made, in this manner: as if a man should aske the question *dequoy est vostre pourpoint?* What is your doubler made of? *De satin*, of satin. *Dequoy est bastie cette maison?* What is this house built of? *De pierre* or *de bois*, of stone, of wood. Soe *Armeures de fer, ou d'acier*, armour of iron or Steele, *un bag de soye* a silke stocking. &c.

Hence is it, that every word signifying a quantity, portion or number of any thing, requires the Article *de*, to point out the matter or whole, of which this is a quantity: As for exâple *combien, tant, autant, plus, beaucoup, assez, peu, moins, d'avantage, point, gueres, trop*. How much, so much as much, more, much, enough, much, little, lesse, more still, scarce, too much

much, &c. and all Nounes and Verbes which signifie a quantitie of any matter ; as *Chartée* a Cart-load, *Chambrée* a Chamber full, *Potée* a Potfull, *Panérée* a Panier full. So likewise, *remplir* to fill, *garnir* to garnish, *pourvoir* to furnish, and their contraries, as *desemplir* to empty, *degarnir* to ungarnish, *manquer* to want or fayle of, *chommer* to cease from worke, and others : with which many strangers erroneously use the Preposition *avec* : as *un estuy garny avec de l'argent* a Case is silvered. *un gentil homme orné avec toutes vertus*, a Gentleman endow'd with all Vertue. *Une Chambre parée avec de la Tapisserie*, a Chamber hang'd with Tapestry. Whereas they should say, *garni d'argent*, *orné de vertus*, *parée de tapisserie*, and such like.

If any one of these Adverbes of quantity, above mentioned, were put after the Substantive, signifying the matter of which a thing is made, the Rule would not hold, but instead of the Indefinit Article *de*, we should use the Definit Article thus; *vous aurez de l'argent assez*. You shall have money enough. *Il a du courage trop*, he hath courage too much. *De la faveur beaucoup*, much favour. *J'ai du credit autant que vous*, I have credit as much as you. Instead of, *assez d'argent trop de courage*; *beaucoup de faveur*, *autant que vous de credit*.

Likewise this word *force*, taken for quantity or abundance, hath no Articles eyther before it or after it; as *vous avez force biens*, *force escus*, you have store of goods, store of crownes.

J'ai

*J', I have store of troubles and cares. But when it is taken for power, force, or constraint, which are the proper significations of it, it hath the Article *a*, before it, and *de* after it : as *on gagne plus de forteresses a force d' or et d' argent, qu' a force d' hommes, de canons, et d' artillerie* : More Castles are got by the power of gold and silver ; then by the strength of men, Ordinance and Artillerie.*

Likewise this Adverbe *bien*, when it is taken for *beaucoup* much, hath a definite Article after it : as *Il a bien du pouvoir, du sçavoir, de l'entendement, de la vertu*. He hath much power, knowledge, understanding, and Vertue. *Vous prenez bien de la peine pour moy*, you take much paines for me : and in the plurall number : as, *Il a esté bien fait des magnificences, du couronnement du Roy*. There were many stately shoves at the Kings Coronation. *Les guerres civiles ont bien apporté des calamitez en France*. Civill warres have much afflicted France.

Sometimes after such words of quantity, you may find definite Articles : where you may use eyther definite or indefinite Articles at your pleasure : and this is, when some word of restriction, is joyned to the substantive, as if I should say ; *Combien avez vous acheté des livres, de ce libraire* ? or *du livres de ce libraire* ? How many bookes have you bought of this Bookseller ? *Avez vous beaucoup de marchandises du levant* ? or *de marchandises de levant* ? have you many wares frō the East cōuntry ? *Le vous présente un bouquet de fleurs*

de mon jardin, I present you with a posie of flowers of mine owne Garden, or *des fleurs de mon jardin*. *La France a esté remplie des malheurs de la guerre civile*. France hath beene full of the misfortunes of Civill-warre.

Relatives seeme to make a stronger restriction [then other words] *as avez vous encore beaucoup des livres, que vous avez fait imprimer?* Have you still many of those bookes which you caused to be printed? *Vendez moy un muy de blé que vous avez cueilli*, sell me a bushell of the wheate which you have gathered.

This Article *de*, is put in Phrases wherein the Latines use the Genit. or Ablat. case: as *homme de grande doctrine*, a man of great Learning. *jeune homme de grande esperance*, a hopefull young man. *Un joyau de prix*, a precious jewell. *Un cheval de cent escus*, a horse worth a hundred crowns. *Un cheval de bataille*, a warre-horse, and other words which stand instead of Adjectives: as *homme de bien*, an honest man; *homme d'honneur*, an honourable man, *homme de valeur*, of credit, of *savoir*, of *lettres*. A man of worth, credit, knowledge, learning. *homme d'esprit*, a witty man, *femme de bien et de vertu*, a good virtuous woman, *un homme de bras*, a tall man of his hands [as we say in English] *homme de journée*, a day labourer.

A proper name is joyned to his Appellative, by the Article *de*, as *la Ville de Paris*. The City of Paris. *La riviere de seine*, the River Seine. Where the Latines put both the Appellative and proper name

name in the same case by Apposition : which we often imitate in the word *mont*, as *Le mont Pernasse*, *Helicon*, *Taurus*, the hill *Pernassus*, *Helicon*. *Taurus*, or when the Appellative and proper name belongs to persons [that is to say to God, Angels or men] as *l' Ange Gabriel*, the Angel *Gabriel*. *Le Prince Frederic*, the Prince *Frederic*. *Le Nautonnier Charon*, *Charon* the Ferriman; as also when the Appellative and proper name belong to beasts : as *le chien Cerberus*, the Dog *Cerberus*. *Le cheval Bayard*, the horse *Bayard*.

We have a phrase common among us, which for the most part is spoken in scorn and disrespect. It beginneth with the demonstrative pronoun *ce* this, *un* a or an, *quelq*; some or such like ; after that commeth the Epithet of disgrace, and after that commeth the substantive with the Article *de*, as *ce gloton de Thomas*, this glutton *Thomas*. *Un vaurien de laquais*, a lackey good for nothing. *Mon veillard de Mari*, my old Husband. Sometimes this phrase is used in good part : as *Mon bon homme de Pere*, the good man my Father, *ma bonne femme de Mere*, the good woman my Mother.

Sometimes we leave out the Article *de*, by the Figure *Ecclypsis* : particularly before proper names : as *Les quatre fils Aimon*, the four sons of *Aymon*. *Le mont hebert*, the hill of *Herbert*, *La place Maubert*, the Palace of *Maubert* : We doe this ordinarily when we speake of any thing which beareth the name of Saint, as *L'eglise*, *la rue*, *l'enseigne*, *le pont*, *notre Dame*,

the Church, the Street, the Signe, the ~~Bridge~~, of our Lady. *La porte Sainct Marceau*, the Gate of Saint *Marcellus*, *l'apocalypse Sainct Iean*, the Revelation of Saint *Iohn*. Wee say by way of Proverbes, *c'est le ventre ma mera, je n'y retourne plus*. This is my Mothers belly, I never goe thither againe.

These two words, *Sainct* and *Maistre*, if they be joyned to any proper name, will have Indefinite Articles like proper names; as *les œuvres de Sainct Augustin*, Saint *Augustines* workes. *Dieu a dit a Sainct Pierre, pais mes brebis*, God sayd to *Peter*, feed my sheepe. *Je veux parler a maistre Iean*, I would speake to master *Iohn*.

I have sayd, ~~the~~ *Monseigneur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, admit none but Indefinite Articles: which is to be imputed to their Pronounes *mon*, *ma*, which are in them. Yet these phrases are to be excepted: *vous faites du Monsieur*, you play the Monsieur or the Gentleman: *voilà une guesse qui tranche de la Dame*. Looke how that Begger pranks it like a Lady. *Voicy un sot, qui taille du brave*, see how this foole struts it. We say also, *faire le Monsieur*, *faire la Damoselle*, which phrases, imply a foolish and presumptuous imitation, when they be joyned with these Verbes: *faire*, *trancher*, *tailler*, *coucher*: as *faire le suffisant*, or *du suffisant*, to make a show of sufficiency, *Tailler, trancher, coucher du gentil homme*, to cut it, flaunt it, and laze it like a Gentleman,

A, au, a la, á l', aux, es, en.

THESE also are indeed true *Præpositions*, answerable to the Latine *ad, in*, which contrary to the *Præpositions* afore-mentioned, signifie *connexion, application, and entering into*. And this is the reason why they serve us instead of a Dative case.

The Article *a*, is of both Genders and Numbers, and the signification of it, is altogether Indefinite, and so is *en*. *Il appartient a Roy de gouverner ses sujets comme pere*, It belongeth to a King to governe his Subjects like a Father. Meaning any King whatsoever: a man may say also, *a un Roy: comme un pere: A chien qui d'abbayer s'egueule, jette luy un os en la gueule, incontinent il se taira*, It a Dog be ready to burst with barking, thrust a bone in his throat, and he will hold his peace presently: *a chiens bargueux oreilles déchirées*, snarling Curres are never without lugg'd eares. In the plurall number we we say *des*, as *a des chiens*, to Dogs. Likewise, *parler en Roy*, to speake like a King.

By this Article, we expresse the finall cause, or the use, for which a thing was made: as *un rect á bœuf*, a sheepe-coat, *une étable a juments*, a Stable for Mares. *Un estuy a peignes*, a Combe-case. *Pot a vin*, a wine-pot. *Terre a Froment*, Land for Bread-corne.

the Church, the Street, the Signe, the ~~Bridge~~, of our Lady. *La porte Sainct Marceau*, the Gate of Saint *Marcellus*, *l'apocalypse Sainct Iean*, the Revelation of Saint *John*. Wee say by way of Proverbe, *c'est le ventre ma mera, je n'y retourne plus*. This is my Mothers belly, I never goe thither againe.

These two words, *Sainct* and *Maistre*, if they be joyned to any proper name, will have Indefinite Articles like proper names; as *les œuvres de Sainct Augustin*, Saint *Augustines* works. *Dieu a dit a Sainct Pierre, pais mes brebis*. God sayd to *Peter*, feed my sheepe. *Je veux parler a maistre Iean*, I would speake to master *John*.

I have sayd, ~~then~~ *Monseigneur*, *Madame*, *Madamoiselle*, admit none but Indefinite Articles: which is to be imputed to their Pronounes *mon*, *ma*, which are in them. Yet these phrases are to be excepted: *vous faites du Monsieur*, you play the Monsieur or the Gentleman: *voila une gueuse qui tranche de la Dame*. Looke how that Begger pranks it like a Lady. *Voicy un sot, qui taille du brave*, see how this foole struts it. We say also, *faire le Monsieur*, *faire la Damoiselle*, which phrases, imply a foolish and presumptuous imitation, when they be joyned with these Verbes: *faire*, *trancher*, *tailler*, *coucher*: as *faire le suffisant*, or *du suffisant*, to make a show of sufficiency, *Tailler, trancher, coucher du gentil homme*, to cut it, flaunt it, and laze it like a Gentleman,

A, au, a la, á l', aux, es, en.

THESE also are indeed true *Præpositions*, answerable to the Latine *ad, in*, which contrary to the *Præpositions* afore-mentioned, signify *connexion, application*, and entring into. And this is the reason why they serve us instead of a Dative case.

The Article *a*, is of both Genders and Numbers, and the signification of it, is altogether Indefinite, and so is *en*. *Il appartient a Roy de gouverner ses sujets comme pere*, It belongeth to a King to governe his Subjects like a Father. Meaning any King whatsoever: a man may say also, *a un Roy: comme un pere: A chien qui d'abbayer s'egueule, jette luy un os en la gueule, incontinent il se taira*, If a Dog be ready to burst with barking, thrust a bone in his throat, and he will hold his peace presently: *a chiens bagueux oreilles déchirées*, snarling Curres are never without lugg'd eares. In the plurall number we we say *des*, as a *des chiens*, to Dogs. Likewise, *parler en Roy*, to speake like a King.

By this Article, we expresse the finall cause, or the use, for which a thing was made: as *un rect á brebis*, a sheepe-coat, *une estable a juments*, a Stable for Mares. *Un estuy a peignes*, a Combe-case. *Pot a vin*, a wine-pot. *Terre a Froment*, Land for Bread-corne.

Likewise imputation or attribution ; as *imputer a negligence*, to impute it to ones negligence, *tourner a blame*, a *reproche*, as *ce vous tournera a blasme*, a *reproche*, the blame and dishonour of it will light upon you, or you will gaine blame and disgrace by this. Likewise the issue or *successe* of a businesse; as *reüssir a heureux effect*, to come to a happy conclusion ; *succeder a gloire*, to succeed gloriously ; *tomber a honte* to fall into disgrace ; *tourner a perte*, a *dommage*, a *proft*, &c. to turne to a mans losse, disadvantage, or profit, &c. Likewise the manner how a thing is done : as *Marcher a pay comptez*, to walke as if a man counted his steps ; *Chercher a tastons*, to seeke for a thing in a groping manner ; *aller a reculons*, to goe backward ; *aller en coche*, *en basteau*, *en poste* : to goe by Coach, by Boat, by Post ; *aller a cheval*, *a pied* ; to goe by horse, on foot. So also we may expresse the fashion, or any notable addition to the fashion of a thing, where a *seemeth* to signifie *avec* with : as *du saffetas a gros graine*, a great waied saffata ; *du passement a dentelles*, a lace with a tooth'd edge, [or edging lace, as wee call it in English] *une montre a veillee matin*, a Clocke with a Larum, &c.

Sometimes *a*, signifieth *for*, that is to say, instead of, as *un tel est tenu a homme de bien*, such a one is held for an honest man ; a *savant personnage*, for a knowing man, a *preud homme*, for a wise man, *Si je ne vous suis a Senateur*, *vous ne me serez pas a Consul*. If you take mee for

no Senarour, I will not take you for my Con-
full.

To conclude, *a*, is used in many Adverbiall
phrases: as *a tant*, *a tard*, *a tort*, *a droit*, *a tort*,
& *a travers*, *a peine*, hereupon, late, wrongfully,
rightly, crossely and thwartly, scarcely: a
great part whereof, standeth for the Latine Ad-
verbes; as *optato a souhait*. as one would wish;
opportuno, a propos, a point, aptly, or in pudding
time [as we say in English] *sero a tard*, *serio a e-*
scient, in good earnest.

The rest are definite Articles: as *presente*
un placet au Roy, to present a petition to the
King; *aller au champs*, to goe into the Country,
aller a l' école, to goe to Schoole; *s' exercer aux*
arts liberaux, or *es arts*, to study, or apply a mans
selfe to the liberall Sciences. *Employer son temps*
aux estudes, or *es estudes*, to spend a mans time in
study. For *es*, and *aux*, are taken indifferently
one for another very often: namely, in such a
case, when it is no matter whether a man meane,
an adressing or an applying of ones selfe to any
thing, or *a thing contayned* within another: so
we say, *La Royne se pourmene aux jardins*, or
es jardins. The Queene walketh in the Gar-
dens.

The true difference betweene *aux* and *es*,
is this: *es* signifyeth *in the*, viz. any thing
contayned within another: and *aux*, signifi-
eth any externall application, when the selfe
will beare it: And therefore *aux* is more uni-
versall, because it will serve in both phrases:

es, implyeth onely something within another : and yet if it be aptly applyed, it is an elegant phrase. *Verture reside, es cœurs nobles*, vertue lodgeth in noble hearts. *Dieu a parlé aux Prophetes et es Prophetes*, God hath spoken by the Prophets, and in the Prophets.

If there be nothing within another, *es*, cannot properly expresse it : as when by these Articles, we declare the tooles or Instrument, wherewith any thing hath been made, where they seeme to signifie *with*, as for exâple, *un ouvrage duit au marteau; a la lime*; hammer-worke, or worke done with the hammer; File-worke, or worke done with the File; *Tourné au tour*, turned with the turning-yrone. *Esquarri a l'esquierre*, squared with the square, *compassé aux compas*, rounded with the compasse, *Dressé au niveau*, levelled with the levell, and so when we speake of other tooles.

When wee signifie anything, by any speciall marke or signe to know it by, and distinguish it from another thing, we use the same phrase in a manner : as, *Lune au teniz d'argent*, the Moone with her silver coulour. *Berthe au grand pied*, *Bertha* with the great foot. *François au grand nez*, *Francis* with the great nose. *La belle fille aux jaunes cheveux*, the faire Mayde with the yellow hayre.

It is an usuall thing to use these Articles of the Dative case (in a manner not much differing from this) to signifie the possession of a thing to belong to the owner : as *le logis de Jacques*,

lacques, or a *lacques*, Iames his Lodging. *Le laquais de Monsieur*, or a *Monsieur*, the Gentlemans Lackey. *Les gands de la Dame*, or a *Dame de ceans*, the Ladyes gloves which is the Mistresse of the house. *Le cheval au sieur de tel lieu*, A Lords horse of such a place: and so alwayes instead of Articles of the Genitive Case.

We use also oftentimes these Datives, after the Verbe *faire* to doe, or after any Verbe which belongeth to the sences; as *voir* to see, *ouyr* to heare, *sentir* to feele: also after Verbes signifying permission, suffering, or giving leave: as, *Laisser* to suffer, *permettre* to permit, *endurer* to endure, *souffrir* to suffer, and after the Infinitive Mood of a Verbe, to shew the person by whom the action is to be done, and [when they are thus used,] these Datives seeme to signifie *par* by; as for example, *le vous feray tancer a Madame*, [word for word it is, I will make you to chide to my Lady: but the sence is] I will cause you to be chidden by my Lady [or I will make my Lady chide you: the drift of these Phrases will better be understood, if you place the words thus: *le feray a Madame vous tancer*, I will cause to my Lady, or I wil make my Lady to chide you; but the phrase must have the words placed, when you write or speake, as it was before; *le vous feray tancer a Madame*] *le promets vous faire payer a mon Maistre*, I give you my word, I will make my Master pay you. *J'ay veu bastir aux maisons ce logis*, I have seene this house

house built by the masons. *Je vous ay oui appeler a vostre maistre* I have heard you called by your master. *Je feray nettoyer vos bootes, au valet de ceans*, I will cause your bootes to be made cleane by the servant of the house. For the full understanding of this Phrase see the use of the infinitive moode.

Sire, Sir, when wee speake to the King is the vocative Case: in other cases wee doe not leaue it alone, but use with it this Phrase. *Le roy nostre Sire*, our Lord and Sovereigne the King. *Du roy nostre Sire*, of our Sovereigne Lord the King. *Au Roy nostre Sire*, to our Soueraine Lord the King. This word *Sire*, is attributed to famous merchants, putting their names next after it: and it may be ioyned either with definite or indefinite articles indifferently; but better (in my opinion) with the definite. *Le Sire Iosse envoie de la marchandise a Sire Martin, qu'il avoit achetée du Sire Leonard*, [where you see that both *a*, the indefinite Article, and *le* and *du*, both definite Articles, are ioyned with *Sire*.] The use of the adiective *Tout* all, is worth the marking: It is joyned with indefinite Articles; it goeth before the substantive, and is joined thereto by the helpe of the Articles, *Le, la, les*, in this manner: *Tout le monde*, all the world. *De tout le monde*, of all the world. *a tout le monde*, to all the world; when we speake of whole things, *sout l'homme* signifieth the whole man, *sout homme* without an Article every man, *route la riviere*, all the river, *soute riviere*

riviere every river &c. yet in the plurall number, it seemeth to be indifferent, [whither the Articles be used or noe in speaking of a whole multitude] as *tous hommes sont sujets a tous accidens de fortune*, all men are subje& to all chances of fortune: or *tous les hommes sont sujets a tous les accidens de fortune*. *Maint, mainte, maintz, maintes & plusieurs*, which signify many, admit none but indefinite Articles; *A la françoise* after the french fashion. *Vestu a la matelotte* clothed like a mariner, are Ecclesiasticke phrases wherein the word *mode* is understood.

Often times it may be doubted, whether our speech be definite or noe: and indeed sometimes it is no matter, whether we take it indefinitely or noe: and then a man may without scruple, use either definite or indefinite Articles. This indifferency is most commonly found, when the essence [of the things mentioned] is not materiall, but intellectuall. as *Noblesse* or *la noblesse provient de vertu*, nobility proceedeth from vertue. *Nourriture* or *la nourriture passe la nature*, breeding goeth beyond nature. *Tout les* or *tout le los de vertu*, or *de la vertu gist en l'action*, all the commendation of vertue consisteth in action. *a cœur valliant*, *au cœur* or *a un cœur vaillant rien impossible* To a stout heart nothing is impossible.

For conclusion of this treatise of the Articles, I shall give you notice of some, oftentimes misapplied by strangers.

The false and mis-
applied articles are | The true articles.

De le of the, instead
of.

D^v before consonants, as *du pain* of the bread, *de drap* of the cloath, *videliz.* spoken of before, or knowne to both parties.

De l' before vowels, as *de l'œil* of the eye, of the gold.

a le to the, instead
of.

Au before consonants as *au Roy* to the King; *au chasteau* to the castle.

a l' before vowels, as *a l'œil* to the eye, *a l'homme* to the man.

En le in the, instead
of.

Au, dans le dedans le before Consonants, as *au feu* in the fire, or *dans le feu, dedans le feu.*

En l'dans l'dedans l' before vowels as *en l'hostel dans l'hostel dedans l'hostel* in the Inne

In the plurall.

De les of the, instead
of

Des, as *la pudicité des femmes* the modesty of women.

Ales to the, in-
stead of — } *Aux, es, as Aller aux*
 } *jardins, to goe into the*
 } *Gardens; se pourmener*
 } *es jardins, to walke in*
 } *the Gardens.*

En les in the, in-
stead of — } *Aux, es, dans, de-*
 } *dans les; as aux, es,*
 } *dans les, dedans les livres,*
 } *in Bookes.*

Avoid the False, and use the True.

Hitherto I have endeavoured and taken paines
(as farre as my memory would give me leave)
that nothing might be left out, which belongeth
to the Syntaxe of our Language: under which
Syntaxe; I conceive the Syntaxe of Nounes, and
the use of their Declensions to be containd.
For in our Language, the declining of Nounes, is
nothing else but a proper and due application of
the Articles to them.

Of a Noun.

A Noun is eyther *Substantive*, as *homme*
man, *femme* woman. *Roy* King, *Royne*
Queene. Or *Adjective*, as *prudent*, *pru-*
dent, *wise*, *vertueux*, *vertueuse* virtuous.

In

Note.

In English we may know a Substantive from an Adjective, in this manner : A Noun Substantive may have *a, an* or *the*, put before it : as *a man, an houre, the man* : an Adjective may have the word *thing* commonly joyned with it] as *blacke thing, white thing, &c.*

Of the Genders of Nounes.

EVERY Noun is eyther of the Masculine Gender, the Feminine, or the common : as for the Neuter Gender we have none : but use instead of it the Masculine.

For the better discerning of the Genders of Nounes, wee must distinguish the Adjective from the Substantive. For there are two sorts of Adjectives : the one ending in *e*, Feminine : and they are all of the common Gender, keeping the same ending both in the Masculine and Feminine Gender. And because we borrow many Adjectives from the Latine, of divers endings, I suppose it would bee usefull to the learners, to make a Collection of what terminations they finde, and so preserve themselves from error, and mistake.

To begin the businesse, and that others may finde some ease in it, I will heere set downe some of them, that some of their Terminations and Derivations may be knowne.

We

Wee will then draw some, from Latine adjectives ending in *ilis*, as *facile* easy, *utile* profitable *docile* easy to be taught, *fertile* fruitfull, *stérile* barré, *aimable* lovely, *humble* humble, *lisible* legible or easy to be read, *possible* possible, *délectable* full of pleasure *affable* affable, *redevable* indebted, *recevable* fit to be received [as *Monnoye recevable* current mony. and all the rest of this kind ending in *ile*, & *ble*.

From the Latines in *bris* *stris*, *strus*, *stris*, wee draw *funebre* mournfull, *celebre* famous, *illustre* eminent, *triste* sad, *modeste* modest, *celeste* heavenly *chaste* chaste, *iuste* iust, in all which the *s*, is pronounced excepting *honneste* honest.

So likewise from adjectives in *duis*, *dis*, and others : wee take *humide* moist, *solide* solid, *rode* rude, *roide* stiffe, *vuide* voyd, *palle* pale, [from *vacuus* and *pallidus*] and *superbe* proud.

From Latine Adjectives in *plex* : *simple* single, *double* double, *triple* three-fold, *quadruple* fourefold, and so to a hundred fold : so likewise *souple* from *supplex*, which signifyeth a complying yeilding man, cyther in body or mind.

From Latine Adjectives in *dis* and *dis*, wee take *fidèle* faithfull, *rebelle* rebellious, *imbecille* weak : From Adjectives in *aris* and *arins*, we take *militaire* warlike, *temeraire* rash, *ordinaire* ordinary, *vulgaire* common, *contraire* contrary, and such like.

From

From *icus*, we have *publique* publicke, *antique* ancient, *pudique* shamefast, whose Masculine Gender may as well end in *ic*, as *politic* politicke, *historic* historicall, *pudic* shamefast, &c.

From Adjectives likewise in *er* and *ius*, wee draw *acre*, *aigre*, sharpe and quicke, *maigre* leane, *alaigre* jocund, *salubre* wholesome, *mortifere* deadly, *pestifere* plaguy, *alexitere* preservative from poyson, *deletere* destructive, *propre* proper, *libre* free, *yvre* drunke, *pauvre* poore, *aspre* rough, *prossere* prosperous, *adultere* adulterous, *syncere* sincere, *severe* severe, *avare* covetous, *rare* rare, *ignare* ignorant.

From Adjectives in *us*, *mis*, we take *extreme* extream, *intime* inward, *ferme* firme, *infirm* weak, *sublime* lofty. [Likewise, French Adjectives in *me*, which are derived from Latine Adjectives, of other terminations:] as *quantiesme* of what number and ranke? *deuxiesme* the second, *troisiesme* the third, *quatriesme* the fourth, and so in *infinitem*.

We borrow likewise from the Latine, those French words in *iste*, in which *s*, is pronounced: as *mis*te near spruce, *artiste* an Artist, *sophiste* a Sophister, *Atheiste* an Atheist, *Donatiste* a Donatist, and *Legiste* a Lawyer: and words which imply what Sect a man is of, which for the most part end in *iste*: divers others also, of divers endings in our Language, are of the common Gender: as *Lazic* lazie, *morne* sluggish, *sombre* cloudy, *terne* pale and wanne, *Borgne* one-eyed,

eyed, *bicle* or *bicle* squinting, *aveugle* blind, *jeune* young, *sage* wise, *foible* weake, *trouble* thicke and muddy, *comble* full filled, *blesme* pale, *riche* rich, *chiche* niggardly, *proche* neare, *croche* hooked, *courbe* crooked, *sale* soule, *lousche* bleare-eyed, *wiste* quicke, *leste* sprightfull, *yvrongne* drunke, *fantasque* fantastickall, *moite* wet, *mince* slender, thin, *colere* cholericke, *maussade* uncomely, *fade* foppish, *malade* sicke, *grave* sober and grave, *braue* brave, &c.

All *Cardinall* numbers likewise, from two *in infinitum*, are of the common Gender: and so are all the Adjectives of all the severall endings above, and all others which end in *e*, Feminine.

Of Adjectives which have two Terminations or endings, one for the Masculine, and another for the Feminine.

Other Adjectives there bee, which have two Terminations, one belonging to the Masculine, and the other to the Feminine.

The Terminations of the Masculine Gender are: *eau, c, d, e, f, g, i, l, n, r, s, t, u, x, y.* The Feminines are joyned with them,

Eau, elle,

Those which end in *eau*, haue their Feminine in *elle*, *beau belle faire*, *gemenau gemelle*. if you shall find it written *jumeau jumelle* a twinne they come from the Latine Adiectives in *ellus*. If the Substantive begin with a *v* or *u* well, or *b* mute, it is an elegancy to put *bel* for *beau*: as *bel œil* a faire eye, *nouvel orage* a new worke.

C, che, and que.

Of the Masculine in *c*, these 3. make the Feminine in *che*, *sec dry*, *seche*, *franc*, *free*, *franche*, *blanc* white, *blanche*; others end in *que*:

It, ique,

flac flaggie, *flaque*; *grec* greeke *grecque*, *porc* hoggish *porque*; add herevnto those Adiectives mentioned in the Chapter aforegoing in *ic*: which make their Feminine in *ique*: as *heroic* heroicall or noble *heroique*, *rustic* clownish *rustique*.

D, de.

D, takethe, in the Feminine Gender: as *grand* great *grande*, *round* round *ronde*, *froid* cold *froide*, *galliard* nimble *galliarde*, &c. Except *nud* naked *nue*. They come from the Latines in *du* and *di*.

E, de.

E Masc: taketh e Feminine *bebeté* *bebetée*, *dulled*, *aimé* loved *aimée*, *donné* given *donnée*, which are participles of the first conjugation.

F, ve.

F is changed into *ve*, as *vif* alive *vive*, *neuf* new *neuue*, some spell it *vis*, *visve*, *veuf* widowed *vesue* keeping still *f* in the Feminine Gender, which is needles. Many of them are derived from the Latines in *um* and *ui*, as *grief* grievous *grieue*, *bref* short *brève*, *souef* sweet *soëue*. Heere some haue asked mee the difference betweene *neuf* and *nouveau*. I answer: *neuf*

is sayd, of things made by the Art of man, for mans use: which are sayd to be new, before they be taken from the workman and used: so wee say *souliers neufs*, new shooes, *une Maison neuve*, a new house. *Nouveau* is sayd of things which newly begin and appeare, whether they be naturall, as *des fruits nouveaux*, new fruit, *du vin nouveau*, new wine; or artificiall, *une nouvelle façon d' habits*, a new fashion for cloathes; *une liure nouveau*, a new booke, that is to say, newly composed or set out.

G, maketh *gue*, as *long long longue*.

G, *gue*:

I, and y, take in the Feminine Gender e: as *Ie*; *ye*, *joli* pretty *jolië*, *ami* friendly *amië*, and the participles of the second Conjugation, *nourri* nourished *nourrië*, *flori* that which hath flourished *florië*, *adverti* admonished *advertië*.

L, ordinarily taketh *le*, as *gentil* generous *gentile*, *vermeil* of vermillion coulour *vermeille*; Where *l*, is not liquid [that is to say hath not the liquifying *i*, before it] it is not necessary to double the *l*, as *general* generall *generale*, *subtil* subtile *al*, *ale*; *subtile*, *mol* soft *mole*, yet after *e*, it is best to double *l*, as *tel* such *telle*, *eternel* everlasting *eternelle*. *ol*, *ole*; *el*, *elle*.

N, if o, commeth before it, taketh *ne*, as *bon* good *bonne*, *selon* theevish *selonne*, *mignon* spruce *On*, *onne*. *mignonne*, in others a single *n*, will serve the turne: as *Chrestien* a Christian *Chrestienne*, *cer- Ain*, *aïne*. *sain* certain *certaine*, *benin* courteous *benigne*, *In*, *ine*. *soin* the Feminine Gender, wee say *sine* *Ein*, *eïne*. *pleine* full, *sienne* thine, &c. *len*, *iène*.

R. re. R taketh e, as *seur* sure *seure*, *fier* fierce *fiere*,
dur hard *dure*.

s se S taketh e Feminine, as *gris* gray *grise*, *bi*
as, asse: *es*, browne *bise*, *niais* sottish, *nisi se*, *biau* a skew *biai-*
esse; *os, osse*, *se*, *mauvais* naughty *mauvai se*; except *frais* fresh
us, use. *fraiche*, *espai* thicke *espai se*, *lis* read *li se* and
li se. If another Vowell come before s, it is to
be doubled: as *bas* low *basse*, *gras* fat *grasse*,
gros thicke or gowty *grosse*, *expres* expresse *ex-*
presse: except *ras* shaved *rassé*, and all participles,
as *clos* shut *close*, *inclus* shut in *includé*,
&c.

Et, ette, Those which end in et, double the t; as *net*
ent, ente, cleane *nette*, *complet* compleat *complete*; in o-
oit, oite: it, ther Terminations single t, will serve the turne:
ite: at, ate: as *prudent* wise *prudente*, *estroit* straight *estroite*,
ot, ose. *subit* suddaine *subite*, *sot* foolish *sote*, *plat* broad
plate, &c.

u, uë. U taketh e Feminine, as *pointu* pointed
pointuë, *velu* hairy *veluë*, *aigu* sharpe pointed or
edged *aguë*, *menu* small *menuë*, *sueü* leavie
sueüë.

z, ze. X is changed into se: as *heureux* happy *heu-*
reuse, *jaloux* jealous *jalouse*; except *doux* sweet
douce, *faux* false *fauce*, or *fausse*, *roux* red-hea-
red *roussé*, or *rouce*, *perplex* perplexed *per-*
plexé.

*The forming of some Substantives
of the Feminine Gender,
from their Mascul-
lines.*

MAny Substantives of the Masculine Gender, forme their Femimnes, after the manner of the Adjectives afore-sayd, as *Cousin* a Cousen *cousine*, *voisin* a Neighbour *voisine*, *conseiller* a Counsellor *conseillere*, *marchand* a buyer and Seller *marchande*, *mercier* a Marchant of small wares *merciere*, which words also, serve for Adjectives, when they fall aptly.

Observe these wayes of forming the Feminine Gender, which follow :

Nounes Verbals in *eur*, which signifie action, *eur*, *euse*, & forme their Feminines in *euse* and *resse*, as *menteur* a Lye *menteuse*, and *menteresse*; *demandeur* an asker or demander *demandeuse*, and *demanderesse*, *sauveur* a Saviour *sauveuse*, and *sauveresse*. Use and custome must teach us which Termination is most received, for sometimes one is, and sometimes the other.

Some keepe still the Latine formation, whence they are taken: as *Tuteur* a Tutor *Tutrice*, *procureur* a procurer *procuresse*, and *procuratrice*, *inventeur* an inventor or finder out, *inventrice*;

as *Necessité* & *esté inventrice des arts*, *Necessity* was the Inventer of the Arts, *Inventeuse* and *inventeresse* are out of use. *Curateur* a Guardian *Curatrice*, *Dominateur* a Mastering Ruler *Dominatrice*, *Empereur* an Emperour, and *Empérière* and *Imperatrice* an Empreſſe.

Or, once.

Nourisson, *nourissonne* serveth to signifie that which nourisheth, and that which is nourished. *Nourice* signifyeth onely actively, viz. that which nourisheth, We say also *nourricier* a nurser, *nourricière* a Nurse.

So likewise these, *larron* a Theefe, *larronne* & *laronnesse*, *yvrogne* a Drunkard, *borgne* one-ey'd, *belistre* a roguish Beggar, are common: and yet we say, *yvrongnesse*, *borgnesse*, *belistresse*, for the Females: *Maistre* a Master, *Maistresse* a Mistres, *Clerc* a Clerke or Clergy-man, *Clergesse* a learned woman, *Prestre* a Priest, *prestresse*, a she-Priest, *Moine* a Monke, *Moinesse* a Nunne, *Abbé* an Abbot, *Abbesse* an Abbess, *Roy* a King, *Royne* and *Reyne* a Queene, *Prince* a Prince, *Princesse* a Princess, *Duc* a Duke, *Duchesse*, a Duchesse, *Comte* an Earle, *Comtesse* a Countesse, *Dieu* a God, *Deesse* a Goddess, *Prieur* a Pryor, *Prieurs* a Priory, *Serviteur* a Servant, *Servante* a Mayd-Servant, *Lieutenant* a Lieutenant, *Lieutenante*, *Gouverneur* a Governour, *Gouvernante* a Governesse.

As for the Names of Beasts and such like Creatures, some doe forme their Feminines, after the manner aforesayd; as *Lion* a Lyon, *Lionne* a Lyoness, *Chien* a Dog, *Chiene* a Bitch,

Loup a Wolfe, *Louve* a shee-Wolfe, *Reynard* a Dog foxe, *Renarde* a Bitch Foxe. Some doe not; as *Cheval* a horse, *jument* a Mare, we say likewise, *Cavale*; *hongre* a gelt horse, and *guldin* if he come from England; *Poulin* or *poulain* a Colt, *Cerf* a Hart or Stagge, *Biche* a Hinde; *sanglier* a wild Bore, *Laye* a wild Sow, *Marcassin* a young Bore or Grice, *Verrat* a tame Bore, *Truye* a Sow, *porc* a Hog, and *porceau*, which may be sayd of a gelt Hog, *Cochon* a Pig, *Coche* a Sow-Pig, and sometimes a Sow that suckleth her Pigs, *Bouc* a he Goat, *Chevre* a she Goat, *Chevreau* a Kid, *Belier* a Ramme, *quaille* or *brebis* an Ewe, *agneau* a Lambe, *Mouton* a Weather, *Taureau* a Bull, *Vache* a Cow, *Veau* a Calfe, *Boeuf* an Oxe, *Bonveau* a yong Bullocke, *Génisse* a Heyfer: *Jars* a Gander, *oye* a Goose, *Oyson* a Gollin or greene Goose, *Cog* a Cocke, *Poule* a Hen, *Poulet* a Cockrell or Pullet, *Chapon* a Capon; *butaudeau* a Caponnet, *Poussin*, signifieth in generall all the yong of any Fowle, or Bird whatsoever.

Of the Genders of Substantives.

I Come to the Genders of Substantives, a thing which much troubleth impatient Learners, the most part desire a perfect direction, & yet are unwillling to bestow above an houres paines, about

as *Neceſſité* a *ſtē inventrice des arts*, *Necceſſity* was the Inventer of the Arts, *Inventeuſe* and *inventereſſe* are out of uſe. *Curateur* a Guardian *Curatrice*, *Dominateur* a Maſtering Ruler *Dominaatrice*, *Empereur* an Emperour, and *Empérière* and *Imperatrice* an Empreſſe.

Nourrice, *nourrice*.

Nourriſſon, *nourriſſonne* ſerveth to ſignifie that which nourifheth, and that which is nourifhed. *Nourrice* ſignifyeth onely aſtively, viz. that which nourifheth, We ſay alſo *nourricier* a nurſer, *nourricière* a Nurſe.

So likewiſe theſe, *larron* a Theefe, *laronne* & *laronneſſe*, *yvrogne* a Drunkard, *borgne* one-ey'd, *beliſtre* a roguiſh Beggar, are common: and yet we ſay, *yvrongneſſe*, *borgneſſe*, *beliſtreſſe*, for the Females: *Maître* a Maſter, *Maîtreſſe* a Miſtreſs, *Clerc* a Clerke or Clergy-man, *Clergeſſe* a learned woman, *Preſtre* a Priſt, *preſtreſſe*, a ſhe-Priſt, *Moine* a Monke, *Moineſſe* a Nunne, *Abbé* an Abbot, *Abbeſſe* an Abbeſſe, *Roy* a King, *Royne* and *Reyne* a Queene, *Prince* a Prince, *Princeſſe* a Princeſſe, *Duc* a Duke, *Duchefſe*, a Dutcheſſe, *Comte* an Earle, *Comteſſe* a Counteſſe, *Dieu* a God, *Deeſſe* a Goddeſſe, *Prieur* a Pryor, *Prieure* a Priory, *Serviteur* a Servant, *Servante* a Mayd-Servant, *Lieutenant* a Lieutenant, *Lieutenante*, *Gouverneur* a Governour, *Gouvernante* a Governefſe.

As for the Names of Beaſts and ſuch like Creatures, ſome doe forme their Feminines, after the manner aforeſayd; as *Lion* a Lyon, *Lionne* a Lyonefſe, *Chien* a Dog, *Chiene* a Bitch,

LONG

Loup a Wolfe, Louve a shee-Wolfe, Reynard a Dog foxe, Renarde a Bitch Foxe. Some doe not ; as Cheval a horse, jument a Mare , we say likewise, Cavale ; hongre a gelt horse, and guildin if he come from England ; Poulin or poulain a Colt, Cerf a Hart or Stagge, Biche a Hinde ; sanglier a wild Bore, Laye a wild Sow, Marcassin a young Bore or Grice, Verrat a tame Bore, Truye a Sow, porc a Hog, and porceau , which may be sayd of a gelt Hog, Cochon a Pig, Coche a Sow-Pig, and sometimes a Sow that suckleth her Pigs, Bouc a he Goat, Chevre a she Goat, Chevreau a Kid, Belier a Ramme, agnelle or brebis an Ewe, agneau a Lambe, Mouton a Weather, Taureau a Bull, Vache a Cow, Veau a Calfe, Boeuf an Oxe, Bonveau a yong Bullocke, Genisse a Heyfer: Jars a Gander, oye a Goose, Oyson a Goslin or greene Goose, Coq a Cocke, Poule a Hen, Poulet a Cockrell or Pullet, Capon a Capon ; butaudeau a Caponnet, Poussin, signifieth in generall all the yong of any Fowle, or Bird whatsoever.

Of the Genders of Substantives.

I Come to the Genders of Substantives, a thing which much troubleth impatient Learners, the most part desire a perfect direction, & yet are unwillling to bestow above an houres paines, about

about the whole businesse. These men I advise, to learne and practise well this following Chapter, and it will bring them very neere that which they ayme at.

To those which well understand the Latine, and would have short worke made with them, and can rest content with few Rules, referring themselves to observation to make themselves perfect; this one Rule may be presented. That, for the most part, we follow the Latines in the Genders of our Substantives: especially in those which are derived from the Latine. So that the Masculines and Neuters in the Latine, are of the Masculine Gender in our Language. The Feminines of the Latine, doe scarce ever change their Gender in French.

This Rule hath many exceptions: yet it may serve those which desire a quicke dispatch: and it will carry them a good way without mistaking. But let him which hath patience enough to learn more exactly, examine and practise these Rules that follow.

Names of men are of the Masculine Gender, as *Pierre* Peter, *Jaques* James, *Aristote* Aristotle, *Platon* Plato, &c.

Of Angels: *Gabriel*, *Raphael*: and the names of Divels, as *Astarot*, *Beelzebub*.

The names of Fabulous Gods, which the Poets write of: *Jupiter*, *Neptune*, *Satyrs*, *Pan*, &c.

The names of Offices, Charges, Functions, Dignities, Arts and Trades, belonging

to men: as *Pape* a Pope, *Evesque* a Bishop, *Diacre* a Deane, *Roy* a King, *Comte* an Earle, *Pedagogue* a Teacher of Children, *Scribe* a Writer, *Nonce* the Popes Nuntio, *Eunuq;* an Eunuch, *Orfevre* a Gold-Smith, *Manœuvre* a Handy-crafts man, *Chantre* a Singer, or a chanter in a Quire.

The names of the Moneths, as *Janvier* January, *Febvrier* February, &c.

The names of Dayes, as *Dimanche* Sunday, *Lundy* Munday, *Mardy* Tuesday, *Mecredy* Wednesday, *Iedy* Thursday, *Vendredy* Friday, *samedy* Saturday.

Arbre a Tree, and all names of Trees: as *Chêne* an Oake, *fresne* an Ash, *bestre* a Beech tree, *Coudre* a Hasill-nut Tree, &c. Except *Palme* a Palme-tree, *épine* a Thorne, *vigne* a Vine, *ronce* a Bramble, *bourdaine* a low French Hedge-tree, *yeuse* a Holme oake,

The Names of Moneyes, *escu* a Crowne, *Franc* a Franc, &c. Except *Pistole* a Pistoll, *Portugaise* *locundale* a Doller, *Reale* a Ryall, *Maille* halfe a Denier. To conclude, all Adjectives put Substantively, as *le long* the long, *le large* the large or broad, *le double* the double, *le triple* the treble, *le haut* the high, *le bas* the low: so likewise any other parts of speech, which are used for substantives, as sometimes the Infinitive Mood of Verbs are, *le boir* the drinking, *le manger* the eating, *le dormir* the sleeping: and sometimes Adverbs: as *Le trop d'aise mondaine* too much worldly ease, *Le peu de soin de*
Scr.

servir Dieu en mene plusieurs a perdition, little care to serve God, bringeth many to destruction. So also wee say *le pis* the worse, *le mieux* the better, *le plus* the more, *le moins* & lesse.

On the other side, all Names of women are of the Feminine Gender, as *Alison*, *Nannichon*, *leanne*, *Anne*, *Nan*, *Ioane*.

So likewise the Names of the fabulous Goddesses, which the Poets write of, as *Iunon* *Iuno*, *Calliope*, *Calisto*, &c.

So likewise the concret names of *Officers*, *Charges*, *Dignities*, *Functions*, *Arts*, and *Trades*, proper to women: as *Royne* a Queene, *Nymphé*, a Nimphe, *Duchesse* a Duchesse, *Imprimereſſe* a woman Printer.

Likewise this word *vertu* vertue, and all the abstract names of vertues as *Force* fortitude, *Prudence* Wisdome. &c. As also the abstract names of any quality: in particular, those Nounes of this kinde which end in *eur*, though the most of them are derived from Nounes of the Masculine Gender ending in *or*, as *douleur* sorrow, *chaleur* heate *hauteur* height, *pesanteur* heaviness: Except *heur* luck or fortune, as *bon heur* good fortune, *mal heur* misfortune, *pleur* lamentation, *honneur* honor, *labeur* labour, all which are of the Masculine Gender, and *erreur* error, *humeur* humour, which may be common: You conceive I suppose, that Verball Nounes, ending in *eur*, which signifie the action and function of a man, as *Authéur* an Author, *Docteur* a Doctor, *serviteur* a servant: (of which I spoke in the last Chap-

Chapter) are not contained vnder this Rule.

[Here wee must pardon the Authors want of Logick : for neither *Auteur*, *Docteur*, nor *serveur* are abstract names of any quality, but concrete; which are contra distinct to abstracts : and therefore needed not heere to be excepted.]

The names, of Fruits, of Trees, or of the Earth, the most part of which in Latine are Neuters, are of the Feminine Gender : As *Cerise* a cherry, *Groisele* a gosberry, *noix* a Nut, *prune* a plumbe. *Abricot* an abricote, *marron* a chestnut, *Citron* a pome-citron, *Limon* a limon, *Raisin* a rasin, *Citrangule*. Coing a quince, *Pepou melon* a Melooone, *Concombre* a Cowcomber, *pivre* pepper, *gingembre* ginger, *Genievre* Iuniper, *Naveau* the long rape, a French savoury roote *raisfort* a radish, *Porreau* garlick, *oignon* an onion, *gland* a wallnut.

As for the proper names of Countries, provinces, and Citties, if they be considered in themselves, with out doubt they are to be accounted Masculine: or Feminine, according to their termination : Yet of Cities wee may speake in the Feminine Gender if wee vnderstand the words *ville* or *cité* which are of the Feminine gender : as for example *Orleans est belle grande et peuleuse*, *Mals Lions*, *Rouen*, *Bourdeaux*, *sont plus marchandes* (subaud. *villes*) *et bantes des trafiqueurs estrangers*: *Orleans* is a faire large and populous City, but *Lions Rouen* and *Bourdeaux* have better trading, and are more frequented with strangers that come to traffick. Without doubt these

these haue a Masculine termination, as many others haue, whither they be Countreies, as *Danemarck* Denmark, *Perigord*, *Poitou*, *Languedoc*, Provinces or shires in France: or Citties, as *Orleans*, *Rouën*, which I named before &c. Others are of the Feminine gender, as *Italie* Italy, *France* France, *Bretagne* Brittany, *Rhodesse*, *Narbonne*, *Marseille*, Counties in France. Therefore if you will haue a more exact rule to know by, haue recourse to the terminations.

All French Substantives end in *ay*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*, *oy*, *uy*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *é*, *e*, fem. *f*, *g*, *i*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *u*, *x*, *y*, *z*.

Nounes ending in *ay*, *au*, *eu*, *ou*, *oy*, *uy*, *b*, *c*, *d*, are of the Masculine Gender, as *ray* a sunbeame, *ieu* play, *feu* fire, *voeu* a vow, *ioyeau* a Jewell, *couteau* a knife, *trou* a hole, *caillou* a flint, *ottroy* a grant, *envoy* a sending, *appuy* a prop, *ennuy* trouble, *plomb* lead, *sac* a sack, *bec* a beake of a bird, *nid* a nest, *bord* the hemme of a garment, the brinke or brimme of any thing. Except *eau* the water, *peau* the skinne, *trameu* a tom-boy *bridou* *goislon*, *foy* faith, *loy* law, *pavoy* the wall.

Nounes ending in *é* are Mascul: as *congeleanc*, *pre* a meddow, *fossé* a Ditch, *coffé* a side, *lé* as *le lé dun drap* the breadth of a cloath, *l'esté* the Summer, *clergé* the Clergy, *pasté* a py, *pavé* the pavement, *marché* a market, *amandé* mended or corrected, *peché* sinne, *ré* shaven, *dé* a thimble, or a dy, *gré* will or willingnes, as a *mon gré* with my consent *degré* degree, *sivé* a kind of blacke

blacke sauce for a hare, *raisiné* made of rasms or with rasins, *salé* salted, *filé* a drag-net for birds, *caillé* curdled, *baraté* cheated, and all others except these Substantives, which end in *é, ie*, as *planté* plenty, *provoaté* provostship, *beauté* beauty, *pitié* pity, *moitié* the halfe of any thing &c. which are derived of Latine words ending in *as* and *tia*, or those which imitate the Latine termination, all which are Feminines. Except also *Duché* a Duchy, *comté* an Earledome or county, *evêché* a Bishopprick, *archevêché* an Arch-bishopprick which are both Mascul. and Feminine.

There is great variety in words ending in e Feminine.

You may make it a Generall rule, that they are all of the Feminine Gender; as *Eglise* a Church, *grace* grace, *force* strength, *liesse* mirth, &c.

From this Rule are many exceptions; as first.

All words ending in *age* as *gage* a pledge, *héritage* an inheritance &c. Except *cage* a cage, *rage* fury, *plage* a region, *page d'un livre* a page of a Booke, which are Feminines; *Age* age, and *image* an image, may be accounted common.

Words in *isme*, which sound the *s*, are Masculine, as *sophisme* a Sophisme or sophisters trick, *catechisme* a Chatechisme. Those which have not *s*, vary; as *Rime* rime or meeter, *estime* esteeme, are Feminines: *crime* a fault, *regime* government are Masculines.

Words in *eme*, *umme*, *ome*, *eme*, *e/me*, com-
going

ming from the Greekes, are Masculines; as *blasme* blame, *cataplasme* a poultis, *annagramme* an anagram, *Poeme* a Poem, *baptisme* baptisme; for if they be not derived from the Greeke; they must be advised of; as *Rame* an oare, *trame* the thrid on a weauers shuttle.

Words in *aume*, *ege*, *iege*, *eige*, whence soever they are derived, are Masculines: as *Royaume* a Kingdome, *chaume* straw or the stemme of corne, *privilege* a priuiledge, *manage* the managing of a Horle, *plège* a snare, *pleige* a pledge, or surety. Except *niege* snow which is of the Feminine Gender.

These Rules being premised and well observed, you may seeke the rest in the Alphabet which followeth, for otherwise they cannot be reduced to Rules.

All these which follow are Masculines.

A.

Article an article, *antimoine* an amony, *ambre* amber, *auditorie* an auditory, *axiome* an axiome, *astre*, a planet, *atre* a hearth, *albastre* alabaster, *artifice* workmanship, *artabale*, *acrostique*, a kind of verse, *apothegme* an apothegme or wise saying.

B.

Baptistère a Font, *benefice* a benefit, *beurre* butter, *bievre* a beaver, *buffe* a wild Oxe, *bransle* a shaking, *bisume* brimstone, *balustre* the blossome of a Pome-granat.

C.

Cable a cable, *capricorne* capricorne, *catalogue* a catalogue, *caprice* a humour, *caractère* a character, *carme* a verse, *charme* a charme, *Chancre* a gan Greene, *cancre* a crabfish, *camphre* camphire,

phire, *convive* a guest, *change* change, *chanvre* hempe, *chapitre* a chapter, *catherre* or *catharre* a defluxion of reume, *cimetiere* a Church-yard, *cimeterre*, a short crooked sword, *conclau* a conclave, *conventicle* a petty meeting, *cirle* a circle, *calme* a calme, *crime* a fault, *cierge* a waxe taper, *centre* a center, *coutre* a bavin or fagor, *crane* the braine pan, *casque* a helmet, *calibre* a quality or degree, *cantique* a song, *cuivre* copper, *crocodile* a crocodile, *congre* a conger. *cibbire* a pix for the Sacrament, *consistory* a consistory, *chevestre* a halter for the head, *commerce* conversation, *coude*, an elbow, *cidre* cyder a kind of drinke, *compte* an account, *comble* a heape, *cloistre* a cloyster, *cygne* a swanne, *crible* a sieve or sifter, *couvercle* a cover, *clystere* a cloyster, *cerne* a circle, *coiffre* a chest or cofer, *chifrea* cypher, *colloque* a discourse betweene two or more.

Deluge a floud, *desastre* a mischance, *desordre* a disorder, *diffame* infamy, *dialogue* a dialogue, *diademe* a Crowne for a King, *diametre* a diameter, *dilemme* an argument that convinceth every way, *doubte* a doubt.

Empire an Empire, *empeigne* the barre pinnes of a piece of caske, *empireume* the farewell heate after a fit of an ague, *esclandre* a slander, *edifice* a building, *exercice* en exercise, *exorde* a beginning, *encombre* an impediment.

Fantome or *fantazme* a fancy, *flasque* a bottle, *foirre* *seurre* or *foarre* fodder, *foye* the liver, *fleuve* a river, *fifre* a flute or he that playeth on it, *seutre* a felt or thick wollen cloath, *flegme*, *Regne*,

D.

E.

F.

flegme; you may write *phantosme* and *flegme* with *ph*.

Garbe or *galbe* the forepart or belly of a doublet; *globe* a globe, *goufre* a gulphic, *germe* a bud or sprout, *greffe* or *grefbe* the office where Records are kept, *glaiue* a sword, *genre* a kind of any thing, *gendre* a father in law, *geſte* gesture, *giste* a lodging, *golfe* a creeke of the Sea, *gingembre* ginger, *gvesde* wood which dyers vse, *goistre* a swelling in the throate, *genie* ones good or bad Angell, *genieure* jnniper.

Hauvre a haven, *baſte* sunburning or the scorching heate of the Sunne, *baſte* a spit, *hoſte* an holt, *hongre* a gelding.

Impropere an vpbraiding, *jeuſne* fasting.

Lange a wollen ſwath-band for a child, *linge* a ſheete, *linbe* the ſkirt, *hemme*, or outmoſt part of a thing, *luſtre* a terme of foure yeares, *legume* pulſe, *lierre* ivy, *leurre* a falconers lure, *lièvre* a hare, *litige* a debate, *luminaire* a light or candle, *liure* a booke, *libelle* a writ or proceſſe.

Maſque a maſke, *maſſacre* a great ſlaughter, *marbre* a marble, *maſle* a male creature, *maſſice* wickedneſſe, *meſgue* whay, *merle* a black-bird, *miracle* a miracle, *monde* the world, *muſcle* a muſcle, *muſe* the ſnout or muzzle, *mouſle* the fiſh called a muſcle, *moule* a mould, *moule de bois* a wood-ftalke, *modelle* a modell, *meuble* moveables, or houſholdſtuffe, *murmure* a murmur, *myrbe* mirth, *monopole* a monopoly, *miſtere* a miſtery, *manche* a handle of a knife, hammer or any thing, *martyre* a martyr.

Nombre

Nombre a number, *nain* a Dwarf, *nain* N.
is the better word.

Ongle a nayle or honse, *Oracle* an Oracle, O.
obstacle a hindrance, *oratoire* a place to pray in,
opprobre disgrace.

Panache a Plume of Feathers, *Paradoxe* a P.
Paradoxe, *pampre* a Vine-branch, *phantosme* a
fancy, *Paraphe* or *parasse* a Paragraph, *pore* a
pore of the body, *poivre* pepper, *pulpitre* a Deske,
a Pulpit, a *Presse* for Bookes, *pouce* the thumbe,
proverbe a Proverbe, *presche* a Sermon, *prepuce*
the prepuce, *prestige* a cheating trick, *periode* an
end or declination of a thing, *peigne* a Combe,
principe a beginning, *populaire* the vulgar people,
pole the Pole, *Protocolle* the first draught or Co-
py of a Deed, *Preamble* a Preface, *Portique* a
Gallery, *Porche* a Porch, *Prodige* a Prodigy or
strange wonder, *phlegme* flegme, mentioned be-
fore in f, *Prose* a publication made by the Priest
as the banes of Matrimony, &c. *Poile* for a
Stove or a Canopy, *plastre* a plastering, *parterre*
a floore, *pinacle* a Pinacle; *pretexte* a pretext,
precipice a precipice, *psalme* a Psalme, *porphyre*
a red marble spotted with white.

Rable the chine of a Deere, *reste* a remnant, R.
regne a raine, *repaire* a place of repayre, *ruble* a
weight in Italy of 600 l. 12. ounces to the pound,
Registre a Register, *Roole* a Rowle or Catalogue,
reistre a Dutch Horse-man, *regime* government,
refuge a refuge, *rheume* a rhume, *Rustre* a Roy-
ster or Russian.

S. *sable* sand, *Sacrifice* a Sacrifice, *salair* a reward, *saye* a cassocke, *sexe* a sexe, *service* service, *scrupule* a scrupule, *suaire* a handkercher, *supplice* a punishment, *sepulcre* a grave, *souste* a blast, *soufre* or *soulphre* brimstone, *songe* a dreame, *spectacle* a sight or spectacle, *signe* a signe, *silence* silence, *sceptre* a Scepter, *style* a style, *sucre* sugar, *sommaire* a summe, *synonime* a word which hath the same signification that another hath, *singe* an Ape, *somme* or *somme* sleepe, *sistre* a brazen Tambrell, *subsidi* helpe, *segle* Rye.

T. *Tabernacle* a Tent, *tertre* a Hillocke, *Timbre* a Colledge Bell, a Tub, trough, or vessell at a fountaine, &c. *titre* a title, *terme* a terme or limit, *texte* a text, *territoire* a territory, *trophée* a trophy, *triomphe* a triumph, *tonner* thunder, *trouble* trouble, *tumulte* a tumult, * *tintamarre*

* *Tintamarre* a clashing noyse, *trenche-plume* a pen-knife, *throne* a throne, *theatre* a theater, *tigre* a Tiger, *Tome* a Tome or Section.

V. *Vacarme* a Battaille, *vase* for *vaisseau* a vessell, *Verbe* a Verbe, *ventre* a belly, *vestige* a foot-step, *vespre* the Evening, *verre* glasse, *vice* a vice or fault, *vinaigre* vinegar, *vitupere* discommendation, *ulcere* a sore, *vouge* a hunters Boort-speare, *volume* a volume.

Z. *Ze* zeale, *Zodiaque* the Zodiacke.

These which follow may be used indifferently cyther with a Masc. or Fem. Article or Adjective, though some have the one, oftner than the other; which I leave to be learned by observation.

A. *Abyme* a bottomlesse pit, *aide* helpe, *aposteme*

an

an impostume, *aïse* pleasure, *affaire* an affaire, *alarme* an alarm, *approche* a coming to, *acrocche* a difficulty, *ancestre* an ancestour, *arbitre* an arbitratour.

Bonace a still or calme at Sea.

Carre or *quarre* a square thing or quadrangle, *concierge* a house-keeper, *camerade* a camerade, *crepsse* cypres, or cobweb-lawne, *contraste* a contestation, *contrecarre* opposition, *coche* a Coach, *carosse* a caroch.

Diocesse a Diocesse or Bishops jurisdiction, *Divorce* a Divorce, *debauche* disorder.

Emplastre a plaster, *exemple* an example, *Epigramme* an Epigram, *Epitaphe* an Epitaph, *Escarre* a skarre.

Foudre Lightning, *friche* wild untild, as *terre delaissee en friche* untilled land.

Garde a guard, *guimpe* the crepine of a French hood, *guide* a guide.

homicide man-slaughter, *horologe* a Clocke,

Idole an Idoll, *laque* a coat of Mayle,

Mensonge a lye, *marge* a margent or brinke of a thing, *meslange* and *meslinge* mixture.

Navire a Ship, *negote* a bulinesse,

Offre an offering, *office* an office, *œuvre* a work, *ombre* a shadow, *ordre* order, *obole* a halfe-penny.

Populace the common people.

Rencontre a meeting together, *Revanche* Revenge, *Reproche* reproach.

Note that those names which end in *iste*, as *sophiste* a Sophist, *Artiste* an Artist, seeme rather Adject. Also those which end in *ide*, as *homicide*, *particide*,

B.
C.

D.
E.

F.

G.

H.
I.
K.

N.
O.

P.
R.

paricide, when they are used in the common Genders as concrete Adjectives, with reference to persons which have committed man-slaughter, or *paricide*: For when they are put as Substantives abstractly, signifying the action, they are Masculines: and so I say of some others. This may suffice for *e*, Feminine.

F, g, i, y, l, m.

Nounes in *f, g, i, y, l, m*, are of the Masculine Gender, as *Cerf* a Stag, *tréf* the beame of a house, *oeuf* an egge, *joug* a yoake, *sang* blood, *abri* a covert, *souci* care, *parti* a match, *orgueil* pride, *Val* a Valley, *fil* a thrid, *renom* fame. Except *clef* a Key, *nef* a Ship, *soif* thirst, *brebi* a Sheepe, *souri* a Mouse or Rat, we write it *brebiu*, *souris*. *Fourmi* a Pismire, is of both Genders, and yet I had rather say, *fourmie* for the female.

en, son, ion

Nounes Verbals ending in *son, ion*, derived from the Latines in *io*, and those also whose Terminations are like to these, are of the Feminine Gender: *leçon* a lesson, *façon* a fashion, *rançon* a Ransome, *maison* a house, *raison* reason, *moisson* Harvest, *cloison* an Inclosure: *portion* a portion, *action* an action, &c. *Poison* poyson, may be of both genders, though it seeme to be derived of the Latine word *porio*, as *Suetonius* thinks, who useth the word *Potionarius* for poysoned.

Otherwise, those which end in *n*, and are not derived of the Latine, but have an other forme, are of the Masculine Gender: as *poisson* a fish, *poinçon* a Bodkin, *pinçon* a Chasse-finch, a

Bird

Bird so called, *garçon* a boy, *horion* a dust or knocke on the pate, *morion* a head-piece, *bastion* a fortification called a Cullions head, *rien* nothing, *maintien* carriage or demeanour, *pain* bread, *vin* wine, *brin* a small deale of any thing, *train* the company that followeth any man, and belongeth to him, &c.

Except *Nonnain* a Nunne, *main* a hand, *fin* an end, *putain* a whore, which are of the Feminine Gender.

Nounes which end in *p, q, r, s, t, u, z*, are Masculines: as *banap* a drinking cup, *galop* a gallop, *coq* a Cocke, *fer* iron, *acier* Steele, *danger* danger, *amas* a heape, *excez* ryot, *choix* choyce, *ris* laughier, *los* prayse, *abus* abuse, *salut* salvation, *bonnet* a cap, *tourment* a torment, *fescu* a fescue, *residu* a remainder, *babu* a trunk, *nez* a nose. Except *dent* a tooth, *jument* a Mare, *forest* a Forrest, *gent* a Nation, *part* a part, *nuict* the night, *mort* death, *maict* a kneeding trough, *rancœur* hatred, *mer* the Sea, *cuiller* a spoone, *chair* flesh, *cour* a court, *tour* a tower, *vertu* vertue, *glu* Bird-lime, *tribu* a tribe, *brebis* a sheepe, *souris* a Rat or Mousc, *vis* the spindle of a Presse, or a winding staire, *fois* as *une fois* one time, *la premiere fois*, the first time. Remember besides the Rule above mentioned, in the beginning of this Chapter, for words in *eur*, that signifie an abstract quality, which are Feminines, as *valeur* worth, *couleur* colour, &c. *Amour* love, may be of both the Genders.

Words in x, are *Feminines*, as *paix* peace, *poix* pitch, *noix* a nut, *voix* a voyce, *croix* a crosse, *queux* a whetstone, *toux* a cough, *faux* a Syth, *chaux* lime, *faix* a burthen, *courroux* anger, *prix* the price or value of a thing.

It is evident that some words when they change their signification, change their Gender also: as,

<i>Tour</i>	{ a turne, Masculine; a Tower, Feminine.
<i>Coche</i>	{ a Coach, Masculine. a Sow, Feminine.
<i>Haste</i>	{ a Spit, Masculine. Haste, Feminine.
<i>Page</i>	{ a Page or youth, Masculine; the fide or Page of a Booke, Fem.
<i>Poisle</i>	{ a Canopy or Stove, Masc. a Frying-pan, Feminine.
<i>Voile</i>	{ a Veyle, Masculine. a Sayle, Feminine.
<i>Manche</i>	{ a handle, Masculine. a sleeve, Feminine.
<i>Satyre</i>	{ a fabulous Wood-god, Mascul. a biting Poeme, Feminine.
<i>Periode</i>	{ the end or Declining of a thing, is commonly Masc. the end or close of a sentence, Fem.
<i>Part</i>	{ a bringing forth, Mascul. a part or share, Femin.
<i>Gresse</i>	{ the place where records are kept, M. a Science or Craft, Fem.

<i>Livre</i>	{ a Booke, Masculine.
	{ a pound, Feminine.
<i>Temple</i>	{ a Temple, or Church, Masc.
	{ the temples of the Head, Feminine.
<i>faiste</i>	{ the top of any thing, Masc.
<i>feste</i>	{ a Feast or Holy-day, Fem.
[Which differ also in the Orthography.]	
<i>trompette</i>	{ a Trompeter, Masculine.
	{ a Tromper, Fem.
<i>Enseigne</i>	{ an Ensigne-bearer, Masc.
	{ an Ensigne, Fem.

You shall often finde other words, which signifie both the person, and the thing or instrument, which the person useth, or hath his name from: as *Cornette* a Corner of horse, and the colors which he carryeth, *Sentinelle* a Sentinel, *fem.* or a person which stands Sentinel, *masc.* *guette* the whole cōpany of the Watch, *fem.* a Watchman, *Masc.* *guide* a guide, *fem.* the man which guideth *Masc.* and such like.

Of the Comparative and Superlative degree.

VE expresse the Comparative degree, by the Adverbe *plus* more, which we place before the positive: and the Superlative by this Syllable *tres*, putting it also before the positive, and making the Superlative a word compounded of *tres*, and the positive: as *chaste* chaste, *plus chaste* more chaste, *tres chaste* most chaste. *Prudent* wise, *plus prudent* wiser, *tres prudent* most wise.

The Comparative of these which follow, is extraordinary, but the Superlative is not.

<i>Bon</i>	{	Good, Masculine.
<i>Bonne</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>Meilleur</i>	{	Better, Masculine.
<i>Meilleure</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>Tresbon</i>	{	most good, or excellent, Mascul.
<i>Tresbonne</i>	}	Femin,
<i>Mauvais</i>	{	Bad, Masculine.
<i>mauvaise</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>Pire</i>	{	Worse, Masculine.
<i>pire</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>tresmauvais</i>	{	worst, or exceeding bad, Masc.
<i>tresmauvaise</i>	}	Femin.
<i>Petit</i>	{	Little. Masculine.
<i>Petite</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>Moindre</i>	{	Less, Masculine.
<i>Moindre</i>	}	Feminine.
<i>Trespetit</i>	{	Least of all, or very little, Masc.
<i>Treipetite</i>	}	Femin,

Bien well, *mieux* better, *tresmal* very ill, or exceeding ill.

Peu few or a little, *moins* less, *trespeu* very few.

Beaucoup much, *plus*, and *d'avantage* more : it hath no Superlative.

You may say, *plus mauvais*, *plus mauvaise* more bad, and *plus petit*, *plus petite* less, as also *plus mal* more ill. But never *plus bon*, *plus bonne*, *plus bien*, *plus peu*; *meilleur*, *meilleure*, *mieux*, *moins*, never vary.

Hereto-

Heretofore men were wont to say, *grain-gneur* for *plus grand* greater, which now is out of use: it is found in some places of *Ronsard*, an excellent Poet.

Bien well, *trop* too much, *beaucoup* much, *par trop* a great deale too much, serve before Comparatives to rayse and increafe their signification: as *longè*, *multò*, among the Latines: as *Tu es trop plus heureux que sage*, you are much more happy then wise. *Cesar fut bien plus hardi que Pompée*, *Cesar* was farre more adventurous then *Pompey*.

Homme de bien, an honest man, *femme de bien*, an honest vyoman, have a Comparative and Superlative degree: as *plus homme de bien*, an honestest man, *tres homme de bien*, an exceeding honest man, *plus femme de bien*, an honestest woman, *tres femme de bien*, an exceeding honest woman.

Tous and *Toutes* have this Syllable *tres*, as if they were of the Superlat. degree, as *tréstous*, *tréstoutes*, everyone, *ya il tous la dedans*, are they all within? *Trestous*, every one, not a man missing.

Grandissime, is commonly received, and used for *trèsgrand* most great, and sometimes *doutissime*; Other Superlatives, drawne in the same manner from the Latines, will scarce passe current: Save onely that in the Titles of great persons, and inscriptions directed to them, we use *illustrissime* most excellent, *serenissime* high and Mighty, *Reverendissime* most Reverend.

Our

Our Comparatives are used eyther *comparatively* or *partitively*.

When we use them *Comparatively* wee put these Indefinite Articles to them: *un, une* one, *de* of; *d'un, d'une* of one; *a* to; *en* in; *à un, a une* to one; *en un, en une* in one; *à de, a des*; putting them before the comparative: and after the comparative, the Conjunction *que*, as *Vous estes plus riche que moy*, you are richer than I. *Il a une plus heureuse rencontre que les autres*: hee hath a happier meeting, incounter, or hap then others. *Je voudrois apprendre d'un plus sage que moy*, I would learne of a wiser man than my selfe. *Ne vous attaquez a plus fort que vous*, Coape not with a stronger man than your selfe.

If the sentence require a Verbe after the Conjunction *que*, then *ne*, an Adverbe of forbidding, followeth the sayd Conjunction, and after that, commeth a Verbe of the Indicative Mood: as *un tel est plus sçavant qu' il ne paroist de prime face*, such a one is more learned than he seemed to be at the first sight. *Vous fustes hier plus heureux au jeu, que vous n' aviez esperé*: You had better fortune yesterday at play, then you hoped for.

The first Præterpluperfect tense of the Optative Mood, may be put in the same manner, if the sense require it: as *J' ay mis plus d' argent que je n' eusse estimé*, I set more mony then I thought I had. *Vous avez mieux appris jey, que vous n' eussiez fait ailleurs*, you have learned better here, than you would have done elsewhere.

Autre

Autre other, and *autrement* otherwise, may be well put in the same phrase : *Je l'ay trouvé autre que je ne l'avois estimé*, I found him a different man from what I held him to be. *Il parle autrement enhyuy, qu' il ne faisoit hier*, he speaketh otherwise to day, then he did yesterday.

There is a phrase commonly used, in which I conceive there is but little elegancy, and yet you shall meet with it in Exact Writers : I even in *l' Astrée* : as *Astrée est plus belle que non pas Phyllis*, instead of *que Phyllis* ; *Astrea* is fairer than *Phyllis*. *Ce gentilhomme est mieux appris, que non pas l' autre*, this Gentleman is better learned than the other ; instead of *que l' autre*. *Cette Damaïsselle a mieux dansé au jourdhuy, que elle ne fist pas hier*, instead of *elle ne fit hier*. *Elle est plus courtoise, que je n' avois pas ouy dire*, instead of *je n' avois ouy dire*. Shee is more courteous than she was reported to be.

Where the Latines use the Superlative, wee use the Comparative partitively, putting the Indefinite Articles, before the word of the Comparative degree : and after it, one of these partitive Particles *de*, *du*, [before words of the Masculine Gender beginning with a Consonant] and *de la* [before words of the Feminine Gender beginning with a Consonant,] *d'* [before Masc. beginning with a Vowell,] *de l'* [before words of the Feminine Gender beginning with a Vowell,] and in the plurall number] *des*, according as the sense requireth : as *Achilles a esté le plus fort des Grecs*,
Achilz

Achilles was the stoutest man of the *Greekes*. *Ciceron* le plus eloquent des *Romains*, *Cicero* the most eloquent of the *Romans*. *J'ay appris ce que je sçay du plus sçavant homme de la Ville*, That which I know, I had it from the learnedest man in the *Towne*. *Soit donné a la plus belle des trois*, let it be given to the fairest of the three. *Il a parlé au plus sçavants Embassadeurs de Savoye et d'Allemagne, qui sont jamais arrivés icy*. He hath spoken to the most learned Embassadours of *Savoy* and *Germany*, that ever came hither.

If the sense require a Verbe, after this partitive Comparative, it shall have one of these Relatives *qui, que*, which; *lequel, laquelle*, the which, *dont* whereof, &c. instead of the Conjunction *que*: and the Verbe following must rather be of the Optative Mood: as *un tel est le plus sçavant homme que je connoisse*, such a man is the most learned that I know. *Je vous ay guerdonné du meilleur loyer que j'eusse*, I rewarded you with the best reward that I had. *Voilà la plus grande merveille dont j'aye jamais ouy parler*, It is the greatest miracle that ever I heard of. If we speak in the *Future*, the *Indicative* Mood will fit well with it: *Prenez la plus belle que vous verrez*, take the fairest that you shall see. *Le meilleur qui se trouvera*, the best that shall be found. The Verbe *pouvoir* to be able, if the sense requireth it, seemeth to fit better: and especially in the *Præterimperfect Tense*: as, *Il m'aydoit le plus qu'il pouvoit*. He helped me the best he could.

Note

Note these phrases also : *Voila celle qui j' ayme le mieux*, That is she whom I best love. *Celui qui me plaist le plus*, he that pleaseth mee best. *L' homme auquel or de qui je me fie le plus*, The man I most rely upon. *Celle qui danse le mieux*, She that dance:h best. *L' Orateur qui parle le plus disertement*, The Oratour that speaketh the most elegantly. *L' homme du monde a qui je porte le plus d' amitié*, The man whom I beare more good will to, then any man in the world. Likewise, *Cette Damoiselle parle des mieux*, this Gentlewoman is one of the best speakers that, &c. *Ce gentil homme joue des mieux a la paume*, that Gentleman is one of the best Players at Tennis. *Est il bien adroit aux armes* ? is he handsome at his weapon ? *de plus excellent* excellent ; *est elle belle* ? Is she faire ? *des plus*, one of the fairest that ever you saw. [These phrases perhaps, have these words or the like understood *du monde*, or *qui je vi jamais*, in the world, or that ever I saw.

We never use the Superlative but like an Adjective : as *Achilles a esté tresvaillant*, Achilles was most valliant. *Cicéron treseloquent*, Cicero most eloquent, *je vous suis treshumble serviteur*, I am your most humble Servant.

The Poets use these home-spun names elegantly enough, in Eglogues, Pastorals, and Country Sonnets.

Oftentimes we expresse a Diminutive by these words; *petit*, *petite* small or little, as *petit homme*, a little man, *petite femme* a little woman. Many times also, we put the word *petit* to the Diminutive: as *petit livres*, a little tiny booke, *petit cavalor*, a little titty horse. So also when we speake words of displeasure and dis-esteem: *Petit larronneau*, a little rascally Theefe, *petit yvrongner* a little Drunkard that a man may put in his Pocket; *petit Pendardeau*, a little crack-rope new crept out of the shell.

The forming of the Plurall Number.

VVEe forme the plurall Number by adding to the singular *s*, *x*, or *z*, observing the Rules that follow.

To all words ending in *ay*, *ou*, *oy*, *uy*, *e*, fem. *f*, *g*, *i*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *t*, *u*. we add *s*, in the plurall number: as *Ray* a Sun-beame *rays*, *clou* a nayle, *clous* nayles, *Roy* a King, *Roys* Kings, *estuy* a case, *estuis* cases, &c. for the *y*, is changed into *i*, in the plurall number.

To all words in *e*, Masculine, we rather joyn *z*, as *bonté* goodnesse *bontez*; *aimé* loved *aiméz*. This way I judge to be better then theirs, that write

write *bontés, aimés*; For *s*, is proper to the short *e*, Feminine.

Those Nounes which end in *al* or *ail*, make their plurall Number ordinarily in *aux*: as *mal* an evill *maux*; *ail* garlicke *aux* in the plurall: *canal* a gutter *canaux*, *bail* a grant, *baux* in the plurall. Observe also these words: *Ciel* Heaven *cieux*, *ayeul* a Grand-father, *ayeux*: *genouil* or *genou* a knee: *genoux* knees: *verrouil* or *verrou* a bolt of a doore, *verroux* bolts: *courrouil* or *courroy* a thong, *courrouils*, *courroys* or *courreaux*: *oyeil* an eye, *yeux* eyes: *viel* old, *vieux* in the plurall, which sometimes is used in the singular number. *sol* which sometimes is written *sold*, but pronounced *soo*, a French Coyne called a *sous*: *sous* in the plurall number.

Nounes in *eau* and *eu*, take commonly *x*; as *eau* water, *eaux* waters: *joyau* a Jewell, *joyaux*. *jeu* play or sport, *jeux* in the plurall: *feu* fire, *feux*.

Words ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular number, have the same termination in the plurall: as *bas* low, *las* weary, *ris* laughter, *gros* thicke, *divers* diverse, *travers* over-thwart, *palais* a Pallace: *courroux* anger, *jaloux* jealous: *peureux* fearefull: *nez* a nose.

Note also, that in all Nounes ending in *st*, you may change *t*, into *s*, in the plurall Number: and so it will be more gracefull, then if you should write the *t*, and *s*, after it: as *Prudent* wise, *prudents*: *savant* learned, *savans*: *Pont* a bridge, *Pons* Bridges.

Of Diminutives.

MAny Nounes, as well Substantives as Adjectives, have Diminutives of divers endings.

The most ordinary Terminations of Diminutives are in *eau*, *et*, *on*, or *ot*; for instance: when the Primitives end in *n*, *t*, or *r*, they make their Diminutives in *et* or *eau*; & sometimes in both; as *Garson* a Boy, *garçonnet*, *garçonneau* a little boy, *Jardin* a Garden, *Jardinet* a little Garden, *fin* crafty, *finet* pretty crafty. Sometimes a Diminutive may be made of a Diminutive, as *brun* brown, *brunneau* somewhat browne, *brunet* a very little browne: *Mignard* a wanton, *mignardet* a little wanton, *mignardelet* a little wanton, *Sergent* a Sergeant, *sergenteau* a little Sergeant, *Sergentelet* a very little Sergeant, *Amour* a love, *amoureux* a little love or a Pigmy. *Flateur* a flatterer, *flatereau* a little flatterer *hôte* a mā, *hommeau* a little nian, *hommet* a Dwarf, *hommelet* a man as high as 3. horse-loaves, a *Tom* Thumb. *Procureur* a procurer, *procurateur* a little procurer, *Advocat* an Advocate, *Advocaceau* a little Advocate.

Words in *ier*, forme their Diminutives in *ot*; as *Mercier* a Pedler, *Mercerot* a petty Pedler; *Archier* an Archer, *Archerot* a little Archer; others vary, *Barbeau* a Barbell, *barbillon*. *Clerc* a Sexton, *clergeon* a little Sexton. *Hain* a hooke, *hameçon* a little hooke. *Chien* a Dog, *Cagnor*

Cagnot a little Dog, *Eſcu* a Target; *eſcuſſon* a little Scutcheon; *Aſne* an Aſſe, *aſnon* a little Aſſe: *Chat* a Cat, *Chaton* a little Cat.

Words in *eau* forme their Diminutives in *let*, *couteau* a knife, *coutelet* a little knife, *manteau* a Cloake, *mantelet* a little Cloake.

Words in *s*, and *x*, make their Diminutives in *ſet* and *ſelet*, as *gras* fat, *grasſet* fattiſh, *grasſelet* plump.

Likewiſe *Arbre* a Tree, *arbiſſeau* a little Tree: *un ver* a Worme, *vermiſſeau* a little worme.

Words in *c*, make *chet*: as *ſac* a ſacke, *ſache* a little ſacke, *ſachelet* a pouch: *blanc* white, *blanchet* whitith, *blāchelet* a little inclining to white.

Nounes of the Feminine Gender, make their Diminutives in *ette*: as *femme* a woman, *femmette* a little woman, *femmelette* a feate little woman. *Maiſon* a houſe, *maiſonnette* a little houſe, &c. Some few in *elle*, as *ruē* a ſtreet, *ruēlle* a little Lane *Rouē* a wheele, *rouēlle* a little wheele: *tonne* a tunne, *tonnelle* a tunnell or little Tunne. *Prune* a plum, *prunelle* a Sloe or little plumbe.

Many proper names when they are Diminutives, turne to clowniſh and jeſting names. *Iaques* Iames, *Iaquet* Iammy, and the uſuall Feminine *Iaquette* Linny, *Jean* Iohn, *Ianot* Iacke, *Ianin* Goodman Rocke the Cradle *Iohn*, or a Cuckold, and the Feminine *Ianneton* little *Joany*. *Pierre* Peter, *Perror* little Peter, and the Feminine *Pervette* *Perichon* little ſhe Peter. *Philippe* Philip, *Philipot* Phil, or Phip, *Marguerite* Margaret, *Margot* Meg. *Charles* Charles, *Charlot*, *Charlotte* Charly, or little Charles. The

The Poets use these home-spun names elegantly enough, in Eglogues, Pastorals, and Country Sonnets.

Oftentimes we expresse a Diminutive by these words; *petit*, *petite* small or little, as *petit homme*, a little man, *petite femme* a little woman. Many times also, we put the word *petit* to the Diminutive: as *petit livres*, a little tiny booke, *petit cavalot*, a little titty horse. So also when we speake words of displeasure and dis-esteem: *Petit larronneau*, a little rascally Theefe, *petit yvrongnet* a little Drunkard that a man may put in his Pocket; *petit Pendardeau*, a little crack-rope new crept out of the shell.

The forming of the Plurall Number.

VVEe forme the plurall Number by adding to the singular *s*, *x*, or *z*, observing the Rules that follow.

To all words ending in *ay*, *ou*, *oy*, *uy*, *e*, fem. *f*, *g*, *i*, *m*, *n*, *p*, *q*, *r*, *t*, *u*. we add *s*, in the plurall number: as *Ray* a Sun-beamer *rays*, *clou* a nayle, *clous* nayles, *Roy* a King, *Roys* Kings, *estuy* a case, *estuis* cases, &c. for the *y*, is changed into *i*, in the plurall number.

To all words in *e*, Masculine, we rather joyne *x*, as *bonté* goodnesse *bontez*; *aimé* loved *aiméz*. This way I judge to be better then theirs, that write

write *bontés*, *aimés*; For *s*, is proper to the short *e*, Feminine.

Those Nounes which end in *al* or *ail*, make their plurall Number ordinarily in *aux*: as *mal* an evill *maux*; *ail* garlick *aux* in the plurall: *canal* a gutter *canaux*, *bail* a grant, *baux* in the plurall. Observe also these words: *Ciel* Heaven *cieux*, *ayeul* a Grand-father, *yeux*: *genouil* or *genou* a knee: *genoux* knees: *verrouil* or *verrou* a bolt of a doore, *verroux* bolts: *courrouil* or *courroy* a thong, *courrouils*, *courroys* or *courreaux*: *oyeil* an eye, *yeux* eyes: *viel* old, *vieux* in the plurall, which sometimes is used in the singular number. *sol* which sometimes is written *Sold*, but pronounced *soo*, a French Coyne called a *sous*: *sous* in the plurall number.

Nounes in *eau* and *eu*, take commonly *x*; as *eau* water, *eaux* waters: *joyau* a Jewell, *joyaux*. *jeu* play or sport, *jeux* in the plurall: *feu* fire, *feux*.

Words ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, in the singular number, have the same termination in the plurall: as *bas* low, *las* weary, *ris* laughter, *gros* thicke, *divers* diverse, *travers* over-thwart, *palais* a Pallace: *courroux* anger, *jaloux* jealous: *peu-zeux* fearefull: *nez* a nose.

Note also, that in all Nounes ending in *us*, you may change *s*, into *x*, in the plurall Number: and so it will be more gracefull, then if you should write the *t*, and *s*, after it: as *Prudent* wise, *prudents*: *savant* learned, *savans*: *Pont* a bridge, *Ponts* Bridges.

Of the Declension of Nounes.

THough to say the truth, neyther our Nounes, nor our participles be declined; yet we call the applying of the Articles to them, their Declension. He that shall well call to mind, that which I have discoursed at large concerning the Articles, needeth no other Declensid. Yet notwithstanding, because the Learner shall finde no defect heere, wee will set downe the Declension of Nounes, answerable to what hath beene sayd before, in the Treatise of the Articles.

And first, I will set downe an example of a Noun of the Masculine Gender, signifying a whole intire substance, and beginning with a Consonant.

An Example of the Masculine Gender.

	Singular Number.	
Nom:	<i>Prince</i>	Prince.
&	<i>un Prince</i>	a Prince.
Accus.	<i>le Prince</i>	the Prince.

	Plurall Number.	
	<i>Princes</i>	Princes.
	<i>des Princes</i>	Princes.
	<i>les Princes</i>	the Princes.

Sing.

Singular.

Genit. { *de Prince* } of a Prince.
 & { *d' un Prince* } of the Prince.
 Ablat. { *du Prince* }

Plurall.

{ *de Princes* } of Princes.
 { *des Princes* } of the Princes.

Singular.

{ 1 *a Prince* We want English words to
 { *en Prince* expresse these two Datives.
 Dat. { 2 *a un Prince* to a Prince.
 { *en un Prince* in a Prince.
 { 3 *au Prince* to the Prince.

Plurall.

{ *a Princes* } to Princes.
 { *en Princes* } in Princes.
 { *a des Princes* } to Princes.
 { *en des Princes* } in Princes.
 { *aux Princes* } to the Princes.

Singular.

Vocat. { *ô Prince* } ô Prince. |
 { *ô le Prince* } ô the Prince.

Plurall.

{ *ô Princes* } ô Princes.
 { *ô le Princes* } ô the Princes.

Of the Feminine Gender.

Nom: { 1 *Princesse* } Princess.
 & { 2 *une Princesse* } a Princess.
 Accus. { 3 *la Princesse* } the Princess.
 K 2 Plur.

			Plurall.		
Nomin.	{	Princesses	{	Princesses,	
&		des Princesses			
Accus.	{	les Princesses		of the Princesses:	
			Singular.		
Genit.	{	1 de Princesse	{	of a Princesse.	
&		2 d'une Princesse			
Ablat.	{	3 de la Princesse		of the Princesse	
			Plurall,		
			{ de Princesses	{ of Princesses.	
			{ des Princesses.	{ of the Princesses.	
			Singular.		
Dative.	{	1 a Princesse	{	to a Princesse.	
		en Princesse		in a Princesse.	
		2 a une Princesse		to a Princesse.	
		en une Princesse		in a Princesse.	
	{	3 a la Princesse	{	to the Prince.	
			Plurall,		
Dative	{	a Princesses	{	to Princesses.	
		en Princesses		in Princesses.	
		a des Princesses		to Princesses.	
		en des Princesses		in Princesses.	
		aux Princesses,		to the Princesses.	

*Here followeth an example of a Noun
Appellative, of the Masculine Gen-
der beginning with a Vowel.*

			Singular.		
Nomin.	{	1 <i>Arbre</i>	{	a Tree.	
&		2 <i>un Arbre</i>			
Accusat.	{	3 <i>l' Arbre</i>		the Tree.	

Plur:

Plurall.

{	1 Arbres	}	Trees. the Trees.
	2 des Arbres		
	3 les Arbres		

Singular.

Genit.	{	1 d' Arbre	}	of a Tree. of the Tree.
&		2 d' un Arbre		
Ablat.		3 de l' Arbre		

Plurall.

{	d' Arbres	}	of Trees. of the Trees.
	des Arbres		

Singular.

Dative.	{	a Arbre	}	to a Tree.
		en Arbre		in a Tree.
		a un Arbre		to a Tree.
		en un Arbre		in a Tree.
		a l' Arbre		to the Tree.

Plurall.

{	a Arbres	}	to Trees.
	en Arbres,		in Trees.
	a des Arbres		to Trees.
	en des arbres		in Trees.
	aux Arbres.		to the Trees.

As for those Substantives, which though they imply but a part, or portion of the thing they signify, yet beare the name of the whole, Decline them in this manner :

Singular.

Nom.	{	Or	}	Gold.
&		de l' Or		some Gold.
Accus.		l' Or		the Gold.

Gen. &	{	D' Or	}	of Gold.
Ablat.		de l' Or		of the Gold.

Dative.	{	a Or	}	to Gold.
		en Or		in Gold.
		a de l' Or		to some Gold.
		en de l' Or		in some Gold.
		a l' Or		to the Gold.
		en l' Or		in the Gold.

Singular.

Nom.	{	Blé	}	Wheat.
&		du Blé		some Wheat.
Accus.		le Blé		the Wheat.

Gen. &	{	de Blé	}	of Wheat.
Ablat.		du Blé		of the Wheat.

Dative.	{	a Blé	}	to Wheat.
		en Blé		in Wheat.
		a du Blé		to some Wheat.
		en du Blé		in some Wheat.
		au Blé		to the Wheat.

Singular.

Nom.	{ <i>Paille</i>	{ Straw.
&	{ <i>de la Paille</i>	{ some Straw.
Accusat.	{ <i>la Paille</i>	{ the Straw.
Gen. &	{ <i>de paille</i>	{ of Straw,
Ablat.	{ <i>de la Paille</i>	{ of the Straw:

Dative.	{ <i>a Paille</i>	{ to Straw.
	{ <i>en Paille</i>	{ in Straw.
	{ <i>a de la Paille</i>	{ to some Straw.
	{ <i>en de la Paille</i>	{ in some Straw.
	{ <i>a la Paille</i>	{ to the Straw.
	{ <i>en la Paille</i>	{ in the Straw.

[Here, if the Learner compare these Examples, with the Rules afore mentioned, concerning the use of the Articles, and study them thoroughly, they will be very usefull to him.]

As for the Plurall Number [in those which have the plurall Number, for *Or* Gold, *argent* and all manner of mettals, with divers others; have it not;] you must altogether follow the example of *Prince* and *Princesse*; For in the Plurall number the Articles are alwayes alike: you must also remember, that which I have already set downe at large, viz. that the Article *de*, is joyned to Adjectives, when they are put before their Substantives, in the Nominative, Accusative and Dative Case, after the Preposition *a*, and others: So we say: *J'ay acheté du Blé*, I have bought wheat; *J'ay achete de bon Blé*, I have bought good wheat. *J'ay parlé a des Princes*,

Singular.

Nom. & Accus. { Or } Gold,
 { del' Or } some Gold.
 { l' Or } the Gold.

Gen. & Ablat. { D' Or } of Gold.
 { de l' Or } of the Gold.

Dative. { a Or } to Gold.
 { en Or } in Gold.
 { a de l' Or } to some Gold.
 { en de l' Or } in some Gold.
 { a l' Or } to the Gold.
 { en l' Or } in the Gold.

Singular.

Nom. & Accus. { Blé } Wheat.
 { du Blé } some Wheat.
 { le Blé } the Wheat.

Gen. & Ablat. { de Blé } of Wheat.
 { du Blé } of the Wheat.

Dative. { a Blé } to Wheat.
 { en Blé } in Wheat.
 { a du Blé } to some Wheat.
 { en du Blé } in some Wheat.
 { au Blé } to the Wheat.

Sing?

Singular.

Nom.	{ <i>Paille</i>	{ Straw.
&	{ <i>de la Paille</i>	{ some Straw.
Accusat.	{ <i>la Paille</i>	{ the Straw.
Gen. &	{ <i>de paille</i>	{ of Straw,
Ablat.	{ <i>de la Paille</i>	{ of the Straw:

Dative.	{ <i>a Paille</i>	{ to Straw.
	{ <i>en Paille</i>	{ in Straw.
	{ <i>a de la Paille</i>	{ to some Straw.
	{ <i>en de la Paille</i>	{ in some Straw.
	{ <i>a la Paille</i>	{ to the Straw.
	{ <i>en la Paille</i>	{ in the Straw.

[Here, if the Learner compare these Examples, with the Rules afore mentioned, concerning the use of the Articles, and study them thoroughly, they will be very usefull to him.]

As for the Plurall Number [in those which have the plurall Number, for *Or* *Gold*, *argent* and all manner of mettals, with divers others; have it not;] you must altogether follow the example of *Prince* and *Princesse*; For in the Plurall number the Articles are alwayes alike: you must also remember, that which I have already set downe at large, viz. that the Article *de*, is joyned to Adjectives, when they are put before their Substantives, in the Nominative, Accusative and Dative Case; after the Preposition *a*, and others: So we say: *J'ay achetè du Blé*, I have bought wheat; *J'ay achete de bon Blé*, I have bought good wheat. *J'ay parlé a des Princes*,

I have spoken to Princes : *A des vertueux Princes*, to virtuous Princes. And therefore in the second rancke of cases, where you see *Du de l', de la, des*: you must use *de* instead of them, before the Adjectives, [as you may observe in the last example ; for where there was no Adjective mentioned, as in *J'ay achet   du bl  *: there you see *du* it used: but when *bon* is added, instead of *du*, *de* is put before the Adjective *bon*.]

There are some few Nounes which have not all kindes of Articles, in all Cases, and both Numbers [as Nounes commonly have] and therefore some have called them *Anomals*.

Tout is both a Substantive and an Adjective: when it is a Substantive, it hath onely the singular number, and in it admitteth all Articles: as *Tout, un tout*, a whole thing, *le tout*, the whole, *de tout, d'un tout*, of the whole, *a tout* to a whole, *en un tout*, in a whole, *au tout*, to the whole. When it is an Adjective, it hath onely indefinite Articles joyned with it, and hath both Genders and numbers: as *tout* all, *de tout* of all, *a tout* to all, *en tout* in all: [in the plurall Number] *tous* all, *de tous* of all, *a tous* to all, *en tous* in all; in the Feminine Gender, *Toute* all, *de toute* of all or every; *a toute* to all or every, *en toute* in all or every: Plurall, *toutes* all, *de toutes* of all, *a toutes* to all, *en toutes* in all. See concerning this Adjective, in the end of the Treatise of Articles.

Tel such, *un tel* such a one, *de tel* of such, *d' un tel* of such a one, *a tel* to such, *en tel* in such, *a un tel* to such a one, *en un tel* in such a one: Plur. *Tels* such, *de tels* of such, *a tels* to such, *en tels* in such. And so likewise is *une* declined.

Un one, *d' un* of one, *del' un* of the one, *a un* to one, *en un* in one, *a l' un* to the one, *en l' un* in the one: in the plurall number wee say, *uns* some, *les uns* the one kinde or sort of them, *d' uns* of some, *des uns* of the one kinde or sort of them, *a uns* to some, *en uns* in some, *aux uns* to the one sort or kind of them: And so likewise is *une* declined.

Un, une one, begin the Cardinall numbers: *l' un, l' une* the one, are partitives.

Deux two, *trois* three, *quatre* four; and when any of the Cardinall numbers have before them an Article in the singular number, wee must suppose their Figure or Character to bee meant: And then they are Substantives; as for Example. *Un deux*, or *le deux*, a two, the two, that is, the figure of two, which is 2. or II. [or a deuce at Cards or Dice.] *un trois*, *le trois*, a three, or the three, that is, the figure of three which is 3. or III. *Un quatre*, *le quatre*, a four, the four, that is, the figure of four, which is, 4. or IIII. [or a tray, or a four at Cards and Dice] and so forward. But when they are put in the plurall number, they are Adjectives: and by them is meant, the number of the things which are signified by those Substantives, to which they

they are joynd : as *deux hommes, deux femmes*, two men, two women ; And thus they are declined. *Deux* two, *les deux* the two, *de deux* of two, *des deux* of the two, *a deux* to two, *en deux* in two, *es deux* in the two, *aux deux* to the two, and so *in infinitum* : And they bee all, both of the Masculine and Feminine Gender.

These words following ; have Indefinite Articles joynd with them. *Plusieurs, maint, maintes* much or many. *Combien* how many, *tant* so much, *autant* as much, *beaucoup* much, *assez* enough, *hier* yesterday, *demain* to morrow. *meshuy* or *maishuy* hereafter, *enhuy, aujourd'huy* this day, *quand* when, *lors* then, *maintenant* now or at this present, *jadis* heretofore, and many others perhaps besides these : to which words we apply *de, a, en*, and other Indefinite Articles.

You may observe likewise, some Prepositions, or Adverbs, which seeme changed into Nounes, in regard we apply all kinde of Masculine Articles to them ; of this number are *Len-demain* the morrow, *Dedans* within, *dehors* without, *apres* after ward, *derriere* behinde, *devant* before, *dessus* above, *dessous* below.

*Of the Numbers, and words
derived from them.*

IT may be the Learner would be well pleased,
to see in a Page or two, our numbers and
manner of accompting, with those words
which are derived of them.

In the first place are our Cardinall or originall
Numbers :

1 <i>Un, une.</i>	17 <i>Dix sept.</i>
2 <i>Deux.</i>	18 <i>Dix huit.</i>
3 <i>Trois.</i>	19 <i>Dix neuf.</i>
4 <i>Quatre.</i>	20 <i>Vingt.</i>
5 <i>Cinq.</i>	21 <i>Vingt & un.</i>
6 <i>Six.</i>	22 <i>Vingt & deux, &c</i>
7 <i>Sept.</i>	30 <i>Trente.</i>
8 <i>Huit.</i>	40 <i>Quarante.</i>
9 <i>Neuf.</i>	50 <i>Cinquante.</i>
10 <i>Dix.</i>	60 <i>Soixante.</i>
11 <i>Onze.</i>	70 <i>Septante, or Soixant</i> <i>te dix,</i>
12 <i>Douze.</i>	80 <i>Octante, huitante, or</i> <i>quatre vingts.</i>
13 <i>Treize.</i>	90 <i>Nonante or Quatre</i> <i>Vingts dix.</i>
14 <i>Quatorze.</i>	
15 <i>Quinze.</i>	
16 <i>Seize.</i>	

100 *Cent*, a hundred.

200 *Deux cens*, two hundred, &c.

1000 *Mil* or *mille*, a thousand.

2000 *Deux mille*, two thousand.

3000. *Trois mille*, three thousand.
 4000. *Quatre mille*, four thousand.
 10000. *Dix mille*, ten thousand.
 100000. *Cent mille*, a hundred thousand.
 200000. *Deux cent mille*, two hundred thousand.
 1000000. *Un million*, a Million.
 10000000. *Dix millions*, ten Millions.
 100000000. *Cent millions*, a hundred Millions.
 1000000000. *Un milliard* or *une milliase*, a thousand Millions.

In this numbring you may observe, that *vingt* twenty, *cent* a hundred, *million* a million, *milliard* and *milliase* a thousand millions, have the plurall number: as when wee say 80. *quatre vingts* fourescore; 120. *six vingts* sixe score; 140 *Cent quarante* a hundred and forty, or *sept vingts* seven score; 180. *Cent quatre vingts* a hundred and fourescore, or *neuf vingts* ninescore; 190. *Cent nonante*, a hundred and ninety, or *neuf vingts dix*, nine score and ten; 200. *deux cens* two hundred; 300. *Trois Cens*, three hundred, &c.

Cent a hundred, is often put for a Substantive: as when wee say, *Cent d'oeufs*, a hundred of Eggs, *un, deux, trois cent de fagots*, one, two, three hundred of fagots.

Mille is alwayes an Adjective; as *mille hommes* a thousand men. *Millier* a thousand, is alwayes a Substantive; as *Millier d'hommes* a thousand men, *un millier de brebis*, a thousand sheepe.

Million

Million, Milliard, Milliace, are alwayes Substantives.

The ordinall numbers, or numbers of Rancke are these; *premier premiere* first, *second seconde* or *deuxieme* second, *tiers tierce* or *troisieme* third, *quart quarte* *quatrieme* fourth, *quint* *quinte* or *cinquieme* fifth, *sixieme* sixth, *septieme* seventh, &c. in infinitum; all ending in *ieme*, and they are of the common Gender.

After these in order come the Adverbiall Nounes, as *une fois* once, *deux fois* twice, *trois fois* thrice, *quatre fois* foure times, and so forwards.

Other Nounes of number (which some set downe) are imperfect, and cannot be applyed to both numbers: (but in this custome giveth us our limits;) such are those which they call proportionall Numbers; as *simple* single, *double* double, or two-fold, *triple* triple or three-fold, *quadruple* foure-fold, or *quatuple*, &c. cut off *x*, from the Latine Nounes of this kinde, and you have it.

Others are called Collectives, or Nounes of gathering together, which end in *ain* in the Masculine, and in *aine*, in the Feminine Gender; but they hold not in both numbers; In this, as in other things, custome swayeth.

Quadrain, is a little piece of mony worth foure deneers: [and a Deneere is the tenth part of an English penny;] *quatrain* or *quadrain* a Stanzo of foure Verses; *sixain* a sixth part, or a Stanzo of sixe Verses; *huitain* an eighth part, or a Stanzo

Scanzo of 8. Verses, *nouvain novaine* a ninth part, or the space of nine dayes: or a thing lasting nine dayes; *dixain* a tenth part, *dixaine* belonging to a tenth part, *douzain* a dozen, or a twelfth part, *demie douzaine* halfe a doozen, *vin-taine* a twensyeth part, *trentaine* a thirtyeth part, *centaine* a hundreth part, &c. which are applyed to many things: *un quarteron* a quarterne, or the fourth part of a hundred, as *un quarteron d'espingles*, a quarterne of pins. To these, you may adde, *Quinquenaire*, a thing of fiftie yeare old, *sexenaire*, a thing of sixty yeare old, *Centenaire* a thing of a hundred yeares old: which are derived from the Latines.

To these, some referre certaine Nounes signifying a charge over a set number of men, or a certaine share in government, or other things: as *quartenier* a Quarter-master in a ship, *Dixenier* a Ticher, or a Governour of tenne. *Cinquantenier* a Governour over fiftie, *Centenier* a Centurion, or a Governour over an hundred, &c. according to the degree [and extent] of theyr authority. And this is sufficient for the numbers.

Some Observations concerning the placing of Nounes.

I Shall not need to say, that the Adjective must agree with the Substantive in Case, Gender and Number, for this is a thing common to all

all Languages : and my purpose is to set downe that only which is pe-culiar to our Language.

The Adjective, is not to be separated farre from the Substantive, by putting many other words betweene them, without necessity, as it happeneth often in the Latine : But in our Language this may not bee : for wee put nothing betweene them, but what may serve to joync them together: as the Verbe Substantive or some word equivalent to it : or else some word to qualifie and explicate the Substantive, or the Adjective: as some Adverbe, or other word that signifyeth some thing, that hath dependance vpon them. As for example: *La vertu est par soy desirable et les voluptez maistresses dangereusement flatteresses, sont sans controverie rejetables*: Vertue is of it selfe desirable, and pleasures, which are dangerous flattering Mistresses, are without doubt to bee despised.

In briefe, if there be a necessity for the Adjective to be set farre, from the Substantive, they must be so linked and tyed together, by words and sence, that there be no ambiguity left in the Sentence.

Some Adjectives will not be put before theyr Substantives : as wee say, *pain blanc* white Bread, *pain bis* Browne bread, *Vin clair* Clarret wine, *Vin blanc* white wine, and not *blanc pain*, &c.

All Nounes Adjectives, that signifie any colour, are better after their Substantives, then before them. As *Paroy blanchie* a whited Wall, *prez Verds* greene Meadowes, *Robe pourprine* a purple Robe.

Likewise Adjectives which signifie the qualities of the Elements ; as *chaud* hot, *froid* cold, *sec* dry, *humide* moist, *moite* wet, *aride* drye, *tied tiede* luke warme : as *terre seiche et aride*, dry earth, *temps humide et pluvieux*, wet time and Rainy, *viande froide* cold meate.

Also participles of the Passive voyce, and Adjectives which signifie what Nation or Towne any thing is of ; as *un chemin batu et frayé*, a beaten way ; *un livre clos*, a Booke that is shut ; *chambre garnie et tapissée*, a Chamber furnished and hang'd ; *la langue françoise*, the French tongue ; *la mode Italiene*, the Italian fashion. Which notwithstanding, is not absolutely necessary, especially in Verse : wherein there is a large freedome, to change the ordinary custome in placing of words.

There are many others besides these, which cannot well be set downe in Rule, or reduced to any head, which are to be learned by custome : So it is betier and more usuall to say *le bien et repos public*, the publicke good and quiet, then to put *public* before *repos* ; *un arbre fruitier*, a fruitfull Tree ; *une terre labourable*, Land fit to be tilled ; *un forrest fueillue*, a Forrest well leaved ; *un Arbre branchu*, a well-spread Tree, and such like.

On the contrary, there be others which stand better, before the Substantive : as *Bon*, *Bonne* Good, *beau*, *belle* faire, *brave* brave, *bon Cheval* a good Horse, *bonne épée* a good Sword, *beau manteau* a faire Cloake, *belle maison* a faire house, *bonne Renommée* a good Renowne. And indeed, Adjectives which signifie honour or dishonour, shew more gracefully before their Substantives. For it is more naturall, to say *un sçavant homme*, a knowing man, *un brave soldat* a brave Souldier, *un vaillant Capitaine*, a valliant Capitaine, *un honnesté gentilhomme*, an honest Gentleman, *un mauvais ouvrier* a bad Workeman, *une sotte opinion* a foolish opinion ; then to say *homme sçavant*, *soldat brave*, &c. and yet this is not of necessity.

But the Cardinall numbers, must necessarily be placed before their Substantives, as *un* one, *deux* two, *trois* three, &c. *vous me devez cent escus*, you owe me a hundred Crownes : *âge de vingt et trente ans*, twenty and thirty yeares old. *Cent mille hommes de front*, a hundred men in front, &c.

Besides, these words also, *plusieurs* many, *maint* many, *tout* all, *quelq* some, *chaque* every one, are placed before the Substantives ; as *tout le monde* all the world, *toute puissance* all power, *plusieurs Richesses*, many Riches, *maints honneurs*, store of honours.

There are many, which may be placed cyther before, or after, at the pleasure of the speaker and writer, or as the sentence requireth : which

must be learned in time, by observing the best Writers and Speakers of our Language.

Of the Pronoun.

THe French Pronounes follow: and first, those which are called Personall; as *je* I, *moy* me, *tu* thou, *toy* thee, *il*, *luy* he: *elle* she, *soy* himselfe or her selfe, *on* they.

Demonstratives; *Luy* he, *elle* she, *ce* this, Mascul. *Cette* this, Fem. *Celuy* this, of the Masc. *Celle* this, of the Fem. *Cetuy-cy* this here, Mascul. *Cette-cy* this here, of the Feminine Gender: *Cetuy-la* that there, Mascul. *Cette-la* * that there, Fem. *Geluy-cy* this man, or this here, of the Mascul. *Celuy-la* that man or that there, Mascul. *Celle-cy* this woman, or this thing here, Femin. *Celle-la* that woman there, or that thing there, Fem. *Cery* this, *celuy* * that.

* Which is pronounced: for the most part thus; Possessives; *mon*, masc. *ma*, fem. mine; *ton* masc. *ta* fem. thine. *son* masc. *sa* fem. his, *miens* masc. *mienne* fem. mine; *tien* masc. *tienne* fem. thine; *sien* masc. *sienne* fem. his; *notre* masc. and fem. ours; *vostre* masc. and fem. yours; *leur* masc. and fem. theirs.

Relatives; *luy* he, *elle* she, *iceluy*, masc. *icelle* fem. the same; *qui*, *que*, *quoy*, masc. and fem. which; *quel* masc. *quelle* fem. which; *lequel*, masc. *laquelle* fem. the which; *y* it, *en* it, *dont* whereof.

Indefinites; *quelq* masc. and fem. some, *quelcun*

quelcun masc. *quelcune* fē. some body; *aucun* masc. *aucune* fē. any one; *chaque* every one, com. *chacun* masc. *chacune* fē. every man: *quiconq;* whosoever; *quelconq;* whatsoever; *autre* other; *autrui* another man; *nul* masc. *nulle* fem. none; *nulli* masc. & fem. no man: *pas un* masc. *pas une* fem. not one; *personne* no body; *meisme* the same.

And these be the words, which I meane to comprehend, under the title of Pronounes; and in these, the Gender, the Declension and the use, are to be considered.

Je, moy, toy, soy, are of the common Gender, and are thus declined.

Singular.

Nom. *Je, moy, I.*
Gen. *De moy, of me.*
Dative. *Me, moy, me.*
a moy, to me.
en moy, in me.
Accus. *Me, moy, me.*
Vocat. *O moy, ô me.*
Ablat. *de moy, of me.*

Plural.

Nom. *Nous, we.*
Genit. *De vous, of us.*
Dative. *Nous, us.*
a nous, to us.
en nous, in us.
Accus. *Nous, us.*
Vocat. *O nous, o vee.*
Ablat. *de nous, of us.*

Singular.

Nom. *Tu, toy, thou.*
 GÉ. & ab. *De toy, of thee.*
 Dative. *Te, toy, thee.*
 a toy, to thee.
 en toy, in thee.
 Accus. *Te, toy, thee.*
 Vocat. *O toy, o thee.*

Plurall.

Nomin. *Vous, yee.*
 GÉ. & ab. *de Vous, of you.*
 Dative. *Vous, you.*
 a Vous, to you.
 en Vous, in you,
 Accus. *Vous, you.*
 Vocat. *O Vous, o yee.*

Singular.

Nomin. *Il, luy, he.*
 GÉ. & ab. *De luy, of him.*
 Dative. *Luy, to him; a luy, to him.*
 en luy, in him.
 Accus. *Le, luy, him.*

Plurall.

Nomin. *Ils, eux, they.*
 GÉ. & ab. *D' eux, of them.*
 Dative. *Leur to them, a eux to them.*
 en eux, to them,
 Accus. *Les, eux, them.*
 Vocat. *O eux, o they,*

Singl

Singular.

Nomin. Elle she.

Gē. & ab. D'elle of her.

Dative. Luy her.

a elle to her.

en elle in her.

Accus. La, elle, her.

Vocar. ô elle, ô she.

Plurall.

Nomin. Elles they.

Gē. & ab. D'elles of them.

Dative. Leur them.

a elles to them.

en elles in them.

Accus. Les, elles them.

Vocar. ô elles, ô they.

soy, hath no Nominative Case, and is of both both Numbers.

Gē. & ab. De *soy* of himfelfe, or themselves.

Dative. se, *soy*, himfelfe, or themselves.

a *soy*, to himfelfe, or to themselves.

en *soy*, in himfelfe, or in themselves.

Accusar. se, *soy*, himfelfe, or themselves.

In the Treatise of the Articles, I have told you that *le, la, les*, before any Verbe, are ordinarily præpositive Pronounes, of the Accusative Case, and they are of this Declension: But before any other part of speech, they are Articles, as

I sayd in the same place. In like manner, *Leuy* before a *Verbe*, is the *Dative Case* plurall of the Pronounes *il*, and *la* ; but before any other word, it is a *Possessive*, which we, by the helpe of God, will speake of hereafter. Note this difference.

You must give me leave, to call some of these Pronounes *Prepositives*: viz. those, which are to be set before Verbes: whither they be of the *Nom. Case*; as *je, tu, ils, on*, or of the *Dative* and the *Accusat. Case* ; as *me, te, se, nous, vous, luy, leur, le, la, les*. And for this reason, have I placed them first in this Declension.

In the second place, I call those *Post-positives*, which are cyther put after Verbes, or else serve to make an *absolute answer*, without having any other words joyned with them ; and these be, *moy, toy, luy*, in the *Nom.* and the *Accusative case*: *Eux, elle, elles*, in the *Accus.* onely, and all those also which have an *Article* joyned with them: *de moy, a moy, de nous, a nous, de toy, a toy, de vous, a vous, de luy, a luy, d'eux, a eux, d'elle, a elle, d'elles, a elles*.

In the third place, I call some *Common*: which are onely these foure: *nous* and *vous*, both in the *Nom.* and *Accus. case*, *elle* and *elles*, onely in the *Nominative Case*. These I call *Common*, because they are sometimes used before, and sometimes after Verbes, and sometimes make an *absolute answer*, According as the sence requireth. And this for Method.

The *Nominatives* then aforesaid, do ordinarily
goe

goe before Verbs Personals, to distinguish theyr persons. *On*, is an Indefinite Nominative, which if you joyne to any *third Person* singular, it maketh a Passive Impersonall, as you shall after see in due place: as *Je croy en Dieu*, I beleeeve in God; *Tu lis l'Evangile*, thou readest the Gospell; *Il nous escoute*, he heareth us; *ils sont joyeux*, They are merry; *On en parle par tout*, they talke of it every where. Should you say, *moy croy, toy lis, &c.* it were not good French. But if by way of *distribution* or *ordering*, you assigne to every one, their severall employment and ranke, you may say, *Moy je crois, toy tu lis*, I beleeeve, and thou readest. *Moy je seray premier, toy tu seras dernier*, I will be first, and thou shalt be last.

Observe by the way, that when we speake to persons we honour and respect, we use commonly the *second Person plurall*, *vous*: as *Vous estes de mes amis*, you are one of my Friends; *Je vous honore*, I honour you. *Vous me faites plaisir*, you doe me a pleasure. *Je vous baise les mains*, I kisse your hands; We never use the *second Person Singular*, but to those, over whom we have authority, and our inferiours, or when we would speake with scorne and anger, or to our familiar intire friends; and this we call, *tutoyer*, to thou, or thee, a man:

But when we speake to God in our Prayers, or in Hymnes, we use still the *singular* number, as well to follow the style of the Scripture, as to signify the unity of the Essence. Yet some, according to the ceremonious punctuality of our Language,

use the plurall number, as supposing it to be more respectfull : as *Mon Dieu je vous prie, qu'il vous plaise*, O my God, I beseech you that you would be pleased, &c.

And though (as I sayd) we use the second *Person plurall* where we would expresse honour and respect, yet when we speake but to one, and in a *Compounded tense*, the auxiliary Verbe shall be of the Plurall number; but not the *Participle*: as *Vous avez receu mes lettres*, you have received my Letters; *si vous m'eussiez commandé*, *le vous eussie obeir*: If you had commanded me, I had obeyed you. Note also, that the afore-mentioned Pronounes of the Nominative Case cannot be used before participles; but for *je, tu, il, ils*, you must say, *moy, toy, luy, elle, eux, elles*, as *moy estant a Paris*, I being at Paris; *Tou estudiant a l'Université*, thou studying at the University. *Luy portant les armes*, he bearing Armes: *Eux suivant la cour*, they following the Court, &c.

*a *Compound-
ed Tense*, is
that which
is made of a
Participle,
of the *pas-
five voyce*,
and the
Verbe avoir
or *je suis*.

In Interrogative Phrases, the Pronounes of the Nominative Case, follow immediately after the Verbe: as, *Feray-je mal, a fin que bien en viene*? Shall I doe evil, that good may come of it? *Crois-tu aux Prophetes*? Dost thou believe the Prophets? *Messieurs sont ils ceans*? Are the Gentlemen with? *Irons-nous a l'Eglise*? Shall we goe to Church? *Vienrez-vous avec nous*? Will you come with us? *Que diront*? What say they? *Que fait-on*? What doe they? Likewise in corrective phrases: as *Di-je*,

I say, *Veux je*, I will; *Ce pense je*, this think I; *Cedit-on*, this they say: and so in all other persons and Tenses of Verbes: as *Ce dites vous*, this you say. *Ce croira-il*, this he will believe. *Ce pensoit elle*, this she thought: all which are so many short *Parentheses*. *C'est vous* (ce disent-ils) *qu'ils cherchent*; It is you, they say, that they seeke. *Le Turc*, ce dit-on, *met sus une puissante armée*; The Turke, so they say, setteth out a strong Army.

Moreover, in *Adversative Phrases* where the Conjunction *Si*, is used for *Toutefois* notwithstanding or yet: the Nominative case is put after the Verbe: as *Vous me blasmez*, si say-je *mon devoir*, you blame me, yet I doe my duty. *Un tel ne sçait rien*, si a-il esté, *long temps à l'École* *Vous faites du Seigneur*, si sçait-on *que vous estes*; you Lord it, yet men know what you are, &c.

The same Nominatives also, are put after the Verbe, in those phrases wherein *si* and *aussi* signifie a *yeilding answer* to any thing, which was sayd immediately before: as *allez tost ou je vous ay dit*, goe presently where I bad you; *si fairay je, aussi feray je*, So I wil, I will so. *Pour bien apprendre il faut bien estudier*, a man must study if he will learne well. *si faut il, aussi faut il*, So he must, he must indeed. *Je pensois que Monsieur se volust aller pour mener*, I thought the Gentleman would have gone a walking. *si veut il, aussi veut il*, So he will, he will so. *si fait il, aussi fait il*, So he doth, he doth so: And so —

so through all persons, and Tenses of the Verbes, *avoir* to have : *estre* to be ; *faire* to doe ; *saloir* *aportere*, [we want an English word for this Infinitive] *vouloir* to will, or to be willing ; by which Verbes, the aforesayd *granting* or *yeilding answers* are made : as we shall shew when wee come to the *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*.

So likewise in phrases, wherein we expresse our conception, by the first *Præterimperfect*-tense of the *Optative* Mood, wherein these *Adversatives* are implicitly included, *viz. encoresque* though, *ja soit que* notwithstanding : as *le ne le crains point* fust il *un Roland*, I feare him not, though he were an *Orlando*: that is, *encor qu' il fust*, &c. *On vous tiendra pour suspect*, et fustiez vous *le bon valet tant et plus*, you will be held in suspicion, though you play the good servant never so much, *je ne le croiray jamais*, *m' en jurast-il cent fois* ; that is to say, *ja soit qu' il m' en jurast* : I will never believe him, though hee sweare mee a hundred oathes.

These exceptions aforesayd, hold alwayes: nor may we, in any case, change the order, and put any of those *Nominatives* before the Verbe. But in these Phrases which follow, a man may put the *Nominatives* eyther before, or after the Verbe, at pleasure : but it is more *Emphaticall* and elegant, to put them after the Verbe: *viz.* in those phrases, which follow any *undeclined* part of speech, as *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*: and such are *lors*, *alors*, *adonc*, then, and then ; *tant*, & *tant*.

tant, so much ; thereupon, or so farre ; *si*, *aussi*, yet, for all that, *à ce*, in so much, *pourtant*, *bien*, notwithstanding, and such like, when wee place them in the beginning of a phrase : as, *un tel est fort sçavant*, *aussi* a *il pris grand peine*, such a man is very learned, but he hath taken great paines for it. *On dit que vous mesditez de moy*, a *ce me veux-je opposer*. They say you speake ill of me, and for that I will stand in opposition against you. *Vous m'avez fait une promesse*, or *est-il temps de l'accomplir*, you have made mee a promise, and nowv it is time for you to be as good as your word ; or *verray-je si vous m'estes ami*, now shall I see if you be my friend. Or *sçaura-on quel homme vous estes*, now men shall see what kinde of man you are.

When the Conjunction *et*, joyneth any clause, to the rest of the Sentence, the syllable *on*, and all the *Nominatives* which we spake of before, come after the Verbe : as *Le roy se porte bien*, *et dit-on qu'il viendra bien tost icy*. The King is well, and they say he will come hither shortly. *Voilà un honeste homme*, *et fait-on grand cas de luy*. There is an honest man, and men esteeme him very much. In this manner of speaking, it is ordinary to leave out the other *Nominatives* : as *Vous m'avez fait plaisir*, *et vous en aimeray toute ma vie*, you have done me a courtesie, and I will love you while I live.

Moreover

Moreover in earnest wishing Phrases, these Nominatives come after the Verbe: as *Fussie je aussi heureux que vous*, O that I were so happy as you are; *Puisse je mourir s' il n' est vray*, I would I were dead if it be not true. *Maudie soit il qui a fait ce meschant tort*, cursed be he that hath done this foule wrong; *a la bonne heure soyez vous venu*, in good time may you come.

To conclude: the Prepositive Pronounes are put after the Verbe, in sentences wherein difficulty is expressed, by these Adverbes following; *a peine* scarce, *a grand regret* very unwillingly, *difficilement* hardly, *malaisément* with much ado, *a toute force* with might and maine, &c. as *Vous parlez si bas, qu' a peine puis-je entendre*, You speake so low, that I can scarce understand you; *Un tel est si coustumier de mentir, que bien envis le croit on, voire quand il dit vray*, he is so used to lying, that men hardly believe him, though he speake true. But this Rule dependeth upon another, wherein (a little before) mention was made of Adverbes, or Conjunctions, put in the beginning of a Phrase.

This then shall suffice, to avoyd running in *infinitum*. For if there be any such like Phrases, they may be guessed at by these.

It is very seldome, that we leave out these Pronounes of the Nominative Case, in regard our Language, which avoydeth ambiguity as much as may be, useth to distinguish the Persons of Verbes, with them. Except onely in answers yeilding some thing affirmed to be true; as *Vous*
escrivez

escrivez you write, *ce fais mon*, I doe indeed; *Non say* I doe not, *si faites*, but you doe. Which mannet of Phrases, you may see at large in the Adverbs of granting and denying.

We doe likewise often omit these Nominatives, in such Phrases as are joyned by the Conjunction *et* and, *et si*, and if, by way of pertinance to some other thing going before, where in the person was sufficiently expressed; as *Vous m'avez bien conseillé et si vous* croiray *un autre fois*. You gave me good counsell, and so I will beleave you another time. *Il vous respecte*, *et si vous* servira *bien*, He respecteth you, and so will doe you good service; See a little above.

We doe often also leave out the first, and second person plurall, in the course of our speech, after these Cōjunctions *et* and, *aussi* also, *que* that, *aussi que* as also; as *I'ay receu les Lettres*, *que m'avez envoyées*, I have received the Letters you sent me; *Vous voyez qu'avons soin de vous*, *et aimons vostre profit*, you see that wee have a care of you, and love to advantage you.

Of personall Prepositive Pronounes
of the Dative and
the Accusative
Case.

ME mee, te thee, se himselfe, nous wee ;
vous yee, luy him, or her, leur them, are
Pronounes Prepositive, of the Dative
Case ; and they are also called *Attributives*, be-
cause they signifie the person, to whom the At-
tribute is given, and they must alwayes goe cyther
before the Verbe put *Acquisitively*, or the Parti-
ciple of the *Active* voyce ; As *je te donneray les
clefs du Royaume de Cieux*, I will give thee the
Keyes of the Kingdome of Heaven : *Je vous
presente aujourduy une grande joye* , I present to
you this day great joy : *Vous luy presenterez mes
humbles recommandations*, You will present my
humble recommandations to him. *Dites leur que
je leur suis serviteur* , Tell them I am theyr
Servant. *Me faisant ce plaisir, vous m'obligerez
grandement*, In doing me this pleasure, you shall
much oblige me. *Vous offrant mon service, je
n'en pretens autre recompence que vostre amitié*,
In offering you my Service, I have no ayme at a-
ny other Recompence, but your friendship. *Luy
donnant cet advis, il se gardera de mesprendre*,
giving him this *Item*, he will take heed how hee
despisech it. But not before the *Participle* of the
Passive

Passive voyee, which I ordinarily call common; before which; the *Post-positive* Pronounes of the *Dative* case, may be aply placed; as *Par vos Lettres*, a moy dernièrement écrites, j'ay reconnu vostre benevolence en mon endroit, By the Letters you wrote last unto me, I have taken notice of your good will towards me, *Le conseil* a vous donné de ma part a reüssi heureusement, The Counsell which was given you on my part, hath happily succeeded.

In like manner may you place *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les*, when they are of the *Accusative* Case: and we use these Pronounes *le, la, les*, before the Verbes, as *Relatives*, to referre that which followeth, to the whole sentence going before, and to repeat it in a manner; as *J'ay esgaré mon livre*, l'avez vous point veu quelq; part, I have layd aside my Book, did you see it no where? *Qui aime la bonne renommee*, la pourchasse par vertu, He that loveth a good name, seeketh to purchase it by vertue. *Respectons les gens de bien*, car Dieu les aime, Let us respect honest men, for God loveth them.

Le, la, les, before the *Verbe Substantive* [*je suis* I am] are of the *Nominative* case, as they are in the Latine; As *Sont ce la vos livres*? Are these your Bookes? *Oüy, ce les sont*, yes they are so.

Le also is put in the *Neuter* Gender [before the *Verbe Substantive*, to rehearse a thing done

or a whole sentence : in Latine it is *Hoc, Illud*, [in English, *it, that ;*] *Trouvez vous ceste femme belle ?* Doe you finde that woman fayre? *Si elle ne l'est, elle le pense estre.* If she bee not, she thinkes she is, *Estes vous bien dispose ?* Are you well in health? *Si je ne le suis, je le voudrois bien estre, et le seray quand il plaira a Dieu,* If I be not so, I would be so, and shall be when it pleaseth God.

Before the Participles of the Passive voyce, instead of these Accusatives, we put *Moy, toy, luy, elle, eux, elles, iceux, icelles*; as *Moy arrive a Paris, je ne manqueray a vous escrire*: When I come to *Paris*, I will not fayle to write to you. *Eux or iceux partis, nous les suivrons a la trace, &c.* When they are gone, we will follow them by the scent; which are absolute Phrases in a manner.

Observe then, in an Affirmative sentence, this order; begin with the Pronoun of the Nominative Case: then put the Prepositive Pronoun in the Dative or the Accusative Case: and then the Verbe: as it may appeare by the examples mentioned before. And in a Negative Preposition or saying, put the Nominative Case first, then the Negative particle *ne*, which alwayes followeth the Nominative, whatsoever it be: then the Prepositive Pronoun, of the Dative or the Accusative Case, and last of all the Verbe; as *Je ne vous refuse pas*, I doe not refuse you. *Vous ne me plaisez pas*, You please me not. *Si vous ne me vouliez pas tenir promesse, il ne me la falloit*

falloit pas faire, If you meant not to have kept promise with mee, you should not have made it: Nor may we *interpose* any other words among these, but these two Relatives *y*, and *en*, when they fall aptly, as wee will shew in due place.

Except *imperative* sentences. in which the aforesaid *Prepositive* Pronounes of the *Dat.* and the *Accusat.* case, doe follow the Verbe of the *Imperative* mood; Our *Imperatives* doe admit noe *Nominative* case, to be joyned with them, in the *first* and *second* person: nor doe they admit *me*, *te*, but *moy*, *toy*, without Articles; as *Baillez moy a boire*, Give me to drinke; *Oste toy de mon soleil*, Stand out of my Sunneshine; *Versez luy de l'eau a laver les mains*, Powre him out some water to wash his hands; *Cetuy la sait bien le chemin, suivons le*, That man knowes the way well, let vs follow him; *si vous voyez mes amis, saluez les de ma part*. If you see my freinds salute them from mee,

Yet if these *Relative* syllables *y* and *en*, must necessarily be vsed in the *Imperative* Phrase, then *me* and *te*, are to be set before the Particles *y* and *en*, with an Apostrophus, in stead of the *e*; as *J'ay bien affaire d'argent prestez m'en*, I have great need of money: lend mee some; *Je t'ay aduertie de ton dommage; garde t'en*; I have given you notice what hurt is towards you: looke to it; *Vous allez aux nopces; menez m'y*, you goe to the wedding;

wedding; carry me with you. *Il faut que tu harangues demain en public: prepare t'y; You must make a publike Oration to morrow; prepare for it. Tu as affaire aux plaids: va t'y en. You have Law businesse: away about it.*

But if you adde a *Second* command to the first, and joyne them both together with a *Conjunction*, then the Pronoun commeth before the Verbe againe, but stands after the Conjunction; as *Si vous voyez mes amis, saluez les, et leur dites que je me porte bien.* If you see my friends, salute them, and tell them that I am well. *Ecrivez leur: puis me baillez vos Lettres,* Write to them, and then give me your Letters. *Servez moy a mon gré, ou vous en allez,* Serve me as I would have you, or goe your wayes. But the Pronoun *se* goeth alwayes before, like a Prepositive; as *Qu'elle se souviene de moy,* Let her remember me. *Qu'il se garde de m'esprendre,* Let him take heed he mistake not. *Qu'elle ne s'ennuie point,* Let her not be weary.

In a *forbidding* Phrase (which is a *Negative Imperative*) these Pronounes keepe theyr place, viz. before. *Ne luy faites point de mal,* doe him no harme. *Ne la fâchez pas,* doe not vexe her. *Ce que je vous di ne le dites à personne,* Tell no body what I say to you. *Ne le leur dites pas,* doe not tell them.

You may not place two Prepositive Pronounes before a Verbe, one in the Dative, and the other in the Accusative case: Vnlesse it be with one of these three Accusatives, *le, la, les;* For if an other

Prep

Prepositive Pronouns goe before a Verbe, in the *Accusative Case*, in a Sentence wherein a *Dative*, signifying the Person to whom the *Attribute* is given, is required: instead of the *Prepositive Dative*, we must use a *Post-positive*: as I will shew hereafter.

For the ordering of the *Prepositive Pronounes* of the *Dative case*, with these three, *le, la, les*, in the *Accusative*, follow these Rules.

Luy him, and *leur* them, *Prepositive Pronounes* of the *Dative case*, will have no other word come betweene them and the Verbe, but the *Relatives* *y*, and *en*, when they fall aptly in the sentence: of which two *Relatives* hereafter. As, *si vous m'editez de mon maistre, je le luy diray*, If you speake ill of my Master, I will tell it him. *Qui trouvera les gants a Madame, qu' il les luy rende*, He that shall find my Ladyes Gloves, let him restore them to her. *La leçon aux escoliers, je le leur diste*, I dictate to the Schollers.

On the contrary, *se*, when it is of the *Dative case*, will alwayes goe before, and these three *Accusatives* must stand betweene *se*, and the Verbe; as *Voila une belle epee: Monsieur se la veut acheter*, There is a fayre Sword: the Gentleman will buy it for himselfe. *Ces beaux ornemens la, Madame se les fait faire*, my Lady makes her those faire trimmings these.

Me, te, nous, vous, may be placed eyther before, or after these *Accusatives* *de, la, les*; as *J'ay envie d' apprendre la langue françoise, je vous prie*

prie la me monſtrer, or me la monſtrer, I have a deſire to learne the French tongue; I pray teach it me. Si vous avez affaire de mes livres je les vous preſteray, or je vous les preſteray, If you have any uſe of my bookes, I will lend them to you.

In a Negative Sentence all the former rules hold [that is to ſay, the Accuſatives *le, la, les;* may be ſet before any of the Prepoſ. Pronounes, *luy, leur, me, te, ſe, vous, nous:* or betweene them and the Verbe; *Jas Je ne la vous, or ie ne vous la donneray pas, I will not give you her, or it; Si ce cheval n'eſt bon, ne le me faites, or ne me le faites pas acheter. If this Horſe be not good, let me not buy him; Sa requeſte eſt incivile: ne la luy ottroyez pas, or ne luy l'ottroyez pas, his requeſt is vneivill; doe not grant it him.*

Oftentimes, with theſe Datives *luy* and *leur* wee omitt to write the aforeſaid accuſatives *le, la, les;* as *Ne luy ottroyez pas,* doe not grant it him; *Je luy ay promis,* I have promiſed it to him; *Ne leur diſez pas,* Doe not tell it to them; *Je leur eſcriray,* I will write to them.

But in an Imperative Sentence the Verbe goeth firſt: then the Prepoſitive Pronoun of the Accuſative caſe, for the moſt part: and then the Dative, unleſſe it be *ſe,* which (as was ſayd) alwayes goeth before the Verbe and theſe Accuſatives *le, la, les,* alſo; *vous ne devez ſervir plus de ces habits là: donnez les moy*
You

You give over wearing those cloathes : give mee them ; *Vos amis ne savent pas que vous so-
jez icy*, mandez le leur, Your friends know
not that you are heere : send them word of it ;
sa requeste est juste ottroyez la luy, His request
is just ; grant it him. And if the *Accusative*
case [which dependeth vpon the Verbe] be a
Noune, the *Pronoun* of the *Dative* case
must be put before it ; as *Donnez moy
ces habits* ; *Ottroyez luy sa deman-
de*, Grant him his demand ; *Man-
dez leur vostre sejour*, Send them word
where you abide.

In Sentences wher there are *two Verbes*, and
the *second* of the *Infinitive* Mood, you may
place, the *Pronounes* of the *Dative* and the *Ac-
cusative* case, indifferently before either of the
Verbs ; as *vostre demande est raisonnable* : *je veux
vous l'ottroyer*, or *je vous veux ottroyer*, Your
request is reasonable I will grant it to you.
But if the *Infinitive* be governed with a *Pre-
position*, you must place your *Pronounes* betweene
the *Preposition* and the *Verbe* of the *Infinitive*
Mood, in this manner following. *Je desire de
la vous ottroyer*, I desire to grant it you ; *I'ay
oublié a les vous envoyer*, I have forgot to send
them to you ; *Je m'appreste à le leur mander*,
pour le leur faire entendre, I make preparation
to send them word of it, that they may know
how it is.

This Observation following, is not to be forgotten : viz. that the *Imperative* Mood of these Verbes, *aller* to goe, *venir* to come, when a Verbe of the *Infinitive* Mood followeth after them, may have *me* and *te*, before the Verbe of the *Infinitive* Mood, instead of *moy* & *toy*; as, for *Allez moy querir*, say *me querir le tailleur*, goe fetch me the Taylour. *Va te caucher*, goe thy wayes to Bed; *vien te reposer*, come and rest your selfe; *Venez me conduire*, come and conduct me, &c.

*Of personall Post-positive
Pronounes.*

THe *Post-positive* Pronounes we reckoned up, almost in the beginning of this Treatise of the Pronounes : viz. *Moy, toy, luy*, of the *Nominative* and the *Accusative* case : *Eux, elle, elles*, onely of the *Accusative* : and all those which are joyned with an Article; as *De moy, a moy, de nous, a nous, de toy, a toy, de vous, a vous, de luy, a luy, d'eux, a eux, d'elle, a elle, d'elles, a elles*; And they are called *Post-positive*, because their proper place is after the Verbe : for if they be found otherwise placed, this transposition of them, is more warrantable in Verse, then in Prose, as for example : it is truer French to say, *Je fay mention de vous*, I make mention of you : *Je me recommande a vous*,

vous, I recommend my selfe to you; then, *De vous fais je mention*, a vous *je me recommande*; For in these latter sentences, the Genitive and Dative Cases, come before the Nominative, by a kinde of reverse *transposition*; which is not our ordinary style, though it be lawfull.

As for the Datives *a moy*, *a toy*, *a nous*, *a vous*, &c. They serve to signifie the party to whom the Attribure (if there be any) is given, or to whom the addresse is made; but their chiefest use, is to be put after the reciprocal Verbs, which have already before them, not *le*, *la*, *les*, but some other prepositive Pronoun in the Accusative case; for then the Dative, resigning up his place to the Accusative, turneth Post-positive; as *Je me rapporte a vous de tout mon affaire*, I referre my whole businesse to you. *Ils se recommandent a vous*, they recommend themselves to you. *Monsieur vous envoie a elle*, the Gentleman sends you to her. *La dame s'adresse a luy*, The Lady addresseth her selfe to him. *Votre Pere vous a baillé en charge a moy, pour vous instruire*: Your father hath given me charge over you, to instruct you. *Ce paquet s'adresse a vous*, This Packet is directed to you.

So likewise, before the *Participles* of the *passive Voyce*, or *Neuter*, as I told you in the beginning of this Chapter,

Likewise, after Verbes of *locall motion*; as *aller* to goe, *venir* to come, *courir* to runne, *fuir* to fly, *retourner* to retorne; as *J'ay recours a vous*, I have recourse to you; *Vous venez a moy*, you

come to me : and not *vous me venez* ; *elle va a luy*, she goeth to him ; I meane when these Verbes are put *absolutely*, without another Verbe ; for if a Verbe of the *Infinitive* Mood, should follow any of these Verbes, then a *Prepositive* Pronoun were to be used ; as *je vous vien dire des nouvelles*, or *je vien vous dire des nouvelles*, I tell you Newes ; *J'iray vous secourir*, or *je vous iray secourir au besoin*, I will goe to helpe you in time of need.

The Verbe *Parler* to speake, hath this property : to agree better with a *Post-positive* Pronoun of the *Dative* case, unlessse the thing spoken of be expressed ; as *le parle a vous*, I speake to you ; *Il parle a moy*, he speakes to me ; *J'ay veu untel*, et *ay parlé a luy*, I have seene such a one, and have spoken to him.

If you *expresse the thing* spoken of, or *referre* it to the sense afore-going by the Relative *en*, you must use *Prepositives* ; as *Vous me parlez de vos affaires*, et *je voulois vous parler de mienes*, you speake to me of your businesse, and I would speake to you of mine. *Untel m' a parlé du mariage de son fils avec ma fille*, Such a one hath spoken to me, about a marriage betweene his Sonne and my Daughter. *Parle moy de rire*, et *non pas de ranser*, Speake to me of laughing, not of chiding : *Parlez luy de bonne chere* : Tell him of good cheere. *Je luy en ay parlé*, I have told him of it ; *Parle luy en*, Speake to him of it.

We have called these Post-positive Pronounes *Responsive*, or such as serve to give an absolute and full answer : because we use them, when we give answer to those which aske a question ; And for this cause is it, that these *Nominatives* and *Accusatives*, *moy, toy, soy, luy*, and *eux, elle, elles*, when they be *Accusatives* onely, be put into the number of *Post-positives* : as for example ; *De qui tenez vous ceste nouvelle*, from whom have you this newes ? *De luy, d'eux, d'elle, d'elles, de toy, de vous, &c.* of him, of them, of her, of them, of thee, of you, &c. *Qui m'appelle*, who calleth me ? *moy, toy, luy, eux, elles, vous*, I, thou, he, they, you, &c. [In the Nominative Case] *qui cherchez vous*, whom seeke you ? *Toy* thee, *luy* him, *elle* her, *eux, elles* them, &c.

Of personall common Pronounes.

THose Pronounes remaine to be spoken of, which we call *common* : and they be these *fourse* ; *nois, vous*, in the *Nomin.* and *Accusative*, and *elle, elles* onely in the *Nominative*. And these are used as *Prepositives*, *Post-positives*, and *Responsive* : They are likewise used as well in asking and commanding, as the sense requireth ; Examples of this kind are so many, that we need not multiply them in this place. You may make use of the examples aforegoing, apply these Pronounes to them.

We

We use often certaine Phrases, wherein our *personall Pronounes* of the same person, are in divers Cases repeated before Verbes Active: and when the Pronounes are thus repeated, the Verbes reflect or turne backe the action, upon the agent himselfe; we call such Verbes *reciprocall*, or *reflected*; mention was made of them in the Chapter going before, as for example: *Je me suis esbahy, de ce que vous vous estes retiré de moy, qui m' estois proposé de me comporter en telle sorte en vostre endroit, que vous vous consenteriez, et nous nous entr' aimerions a jamais.* I wondred that you went from me, I having resolved, so to carry my selfe towards you, that you might receive content to your selfe, and both of us love one another for ever. In such Phrases, where (as you see) the same Pronoun seemeth to be repeated, as *nous nous, vous vous*, the first is of the *Nominative*, and the second of the *Dative* or the *Accusative*.

When we aske a question with thele reciprocal Verbes, the *Dative* or *Accusative* goeth before the Verbe, and the *Nominative* followeth it; as *Te chacheras tu tous-iours quand il faut estudier?* Doe you alwayes hide your selfe, when you should study? *Vous tiendrez vous prest a me secourir?* Will you be ready at hand to helpe me? *M' attendray je a vostre promesse?* Shall I relye upon your promise?

Verbes of the *Imperative* Mood have no *Nominative* Case expressed, if they be of the first and second person: and the *Reciprocall* Verbes

of the *Imperative* Mood, have alwayes after them a *Pronoun* of the *Dative* or the *Accusative* Case, which signifyeth the party commanded; as *Repentez vous de vos pechez*, Repent you of your sinnes. *Survenons nous de Dieu*, Let us remember God. But if you will make another command, and ioine it to the first, with a *Coniunction*, the *Pronoun* may change his place, and stand better before * the *Verbe*; as *Repentez vous, et vous convertissez au seigneur, ou vous assurez de perir malheureusement*, Doe you repent, and turne your selfe to the Lord, or else be sure to perish wretchedly. For the *third Person* of the *Imperative* Mood, there is no difficulty. *Qu' il se tiene en repos*, Let him keepe himselfe at rest. *Qu' elle m' aime, et se tie en moy*, Let her love me, and relye upon me. *Qu' ils se gardent de faillir*, Let them take heed of fayling.

viz. In the second command.

Of Demonstratives.

OVr *Demonstrative* *Pronounes* are these which follow; *Luy* he, *elle* she; *ce* this of the *Masc.* *cette* this, of the *Feminine* gender, and their compounds; as *Cecy* this heere, *cela* that there; *Celuy* that man, *celle* that woman; *cestuy* this man; *celuy-cy* this man heere; *celuy-la* that man there, or that same man; *celle-cy* that woman here, [or any other thing of the *Feminine Gender*.] *celle-la* that there; *ce* this

this man here, *cette-cy* this here; *cetuy-la* that man there; *cette-la* that woman there: of which I intend to speake further in this Chapter.

Lux he, hath beene sufficiently spoken of before, I shall not therefore need to say any more of it.

Masc. Singular,

Nom. & Accus. *Ce, cet, cest* this.

Genit. & Ablat. *De ce, de cet, or de cest*, of this, from this.

Dativ. *A ce, a cet, or a cest*, to this.

Fem. Singular.

Nom. & Accus. * *Cette* or *Ceste* this.

Genit. & Ablat. *De cette, or de Ceste*, of this, from this.

Dativ. *A cette, or a ceste* to this.

Plurall, of the Common-Gender.

Nom. & Accus. *Ces*, these.

Genit. & Ablat. *De ces*, of these, from these.

Dativ. *A ces*, to these.

* *Cette* and *ceste* are commonly pronounced as if they were written, *ste*, as *ste fême*, for *cette* or *ceste femme*

In brieft, (to avoyd all Repetition) you are to note that all *Demonstrative* Pronounes, are declined in this manner, and no otherwise: viz. by applying the Definite Article *de*, in the Genit. and *a* or *en*, in the Dative.

We both write and pronounce *ce*, before words beginning with a *Consonant* : and *cet* [or *cest* according to the old Orthography] before words beginning with a *Vowel* or *h*, more ; as *ce livre* this Booke ; *ce cheval* this Horse, *cet arbre* this Tree ; *cet homme* this man ; in Latine they are, *is, his, iste*.

This Pronoun *ce*, doth Demonstrate a certaine thing : for a fuller expression, we joyne to it, these Adverbiall Particles *cy* and *là* ; *cy* to demonstrate a thing neere hand ; and *là* for a thing that is further off, [or so mentioned as if it were farre off, as we may speake sometimes, when we tell a thing of a man before his face, which he did elsewhere.] But the *Substantive* which is demonstrated, must be put betweene the *Demonstrative* Pronounes, and the syllables aforesayd ; as *Ce livre cy*, this Booke heere. *Cette plume là*, that Pen there. *Cet honneste homme cy*, this honest man heere : *Ceste belle fille là*, that fayre Mayd there. *Cette luisante et bien tranchante espee cy* this glistering and good-cutting Sword heere. Instead of *cy*, you may say *icy* ; as *Cette plaisante Ville icy*, this pleasant Towne heere.

Ce, is also put before these *Relatives* *qui, que, lequel, dont* : and then it is put in the Neuter Gender, and *Singular* Number ; nor doth it demonstrate any *Substantive* in the Sentence, but hath *Reference* to some *Action*, or the

the whole *sence* going before, and it is as much as if a man should say, *laquelle chose* the which thing. For if the Relation were to any Substantive, we should put *celuy, celle, ceux, celles*, as we will shew hereafter. In Latine it is expressed by these words, *Hoc, illud, istud*, as *Ce que je di*, That which I say, *Ce dequoy, or dont vous me parlez*, This which you speake to me of. *Vous vous moquez de moy, ce que jetrouve fort estrange*, you make mockes at me, which to mee seemes very strange. *Ce qui vous est mal seant*, which ill becommeth you.

Yet *ce* put thus in the Neuter Gender, is sometimes used for *cecy* and *cela*, when it is in the beginning of a Sentence without a Relative; as *Ce ne croy je pas*, This I beleeve not. *De ce estant esmerueille*, this I wondering at. *Estant de ce fort joyeux*, being very glad of this: where we would most commonly say, *cecy, cela*.

For these two, *cecy* and *cela*, have the same signification with *ce* in the Neuter Gender, but differ in use and place, forasmuch as *ce* before the Relatives *qui, que* is more neate for the Pronunciation, then *cecy, cela*. And *cecy, cela*, doe close a sentence, better then *ce* as *le ne croy pas ce que vous ditez*, I beleeve not what you say. *Je feray ce qu'il qui vous plaira*, I shall doe what you please [here you see *ce* is before *y* Relatives] *Je ne croy cela*, I beleeve not that; *Je feray cecy*, This will I do. *Vous ditez cecy pour vous moquer de moy*, This you say to flout me. *Ce que vous ditez tend a vous moquer de moy*, This which you say

say, is on purpose to deride mee. *si vous m'ostez cecy, je prendray ce-la*, If you take this from mee, I will take that [here you see how *cecy* and *cela* close a Sentence:] you may observe also the reason, why *ce* is not so full a Demonstrative as *cecy*, *cela*.

In demonstrating those Substances, which the verbe Substative *je suis*, I am, governeth, wee use *ce*, before the verbe, when a Nounne subst. with an Article before it, or a Personall pronounne followeth the verbe, as *C' est la verité*, this is a truth; *c'est une chose vraie et certaine*, this is a true and a certaine thing; *Ce sont des claires et évidentes raisons*, These reasons are evident and cleere; *Ces furent les causes qui l' induisirent*, these were the reasons which induced him; *Ce seront les arguments, qui le persuaderont*, These will be the arguments, that shall perswade him; & soe also in all Tences and both Numbers. This *Demonstration*, may be made somewhat stronger, by the conjunction *que*; as *C' est la plus opulente ville de France que Paris*, This Paris it is the most weal thy city in France; *C' est une belle vertu que la Chastité entre les dames*, This chastitie, amongst Ladies it is an excellent vertue; *C' est un des plus vallians et jages Princes de ce temps, que le Prince Maurice de Nassau*, This Prince Maurice of Nassau, is one of the most valiant, and wisest Princes, of this age. But this verbe for the most part, is used in the third person Singular, when it is applyed to any personall Pronounne, whether it be of the singular, or plurall number

number : as, *c' est moy*, it is I : *c' est toy*, it is thou : *c' est luy*, it is he : *c' est vous*, it is you. Some hold these manner of Phrases to be irregular. Yet the first and third person Plurall, may be expressed two wayes : *c' est nous*, or *ce sommes nous*, it is we. *C' est eux*, or *ce sont eux*, It is they. So likewise in the first person singular we say, *ce suis je*, it is I : or *c' est moy*, which is more in use.

We place likewise the Demonstrative *ce*, before the Verbe Substantive, in the same manner, when a Participle in an Active sence, with an expression of the quality of the action, cometh after it ; as *c' est bien dit*, this is well sayd : *c' est combattu en braves hommes*, this was fought like brave men : *Ce sera sagement parlé*, that will be wisely spoken : *q' a esté subtilement argué*, this was subtilly argued : *C' eust esté prudemment advisé*, that had beene wisely counselled. In all these Phrases, an Action is considered, as the maine Subiect of the Sentence, and no certaine Substantive. If a Substantive were, then a Personall Pronoun agreeing with that Substantive in Gender, were to be used : viz. one of these *il, ils, elle, elles* : as also a Verbe of fitting number and person : as *Que dites vous de ce livre ? il est doctement composé*, What say you of this Booke ? It is learnedly written. *Et cette harangue ?* And this Oration, what thinke you of it ? *Resp. Elle est elegantment tissüe, disertement et eloquemment prononcée*, It is elegantly contrived, distinctly and Eloquently pronounced.

But if the *Verbe* aforesayd, have after it an *Adjective* put * *Substantively*, we use *cecy*, *cela*, and * viz. *with-
ce* would be nothing worth, in such a Case; out a *Sub-
Cela est vray*, This is true. *Cela est certain*, *stantive*.

This is certaine: *Cecy est clair et evident*, This is cleere and manifest: *Cecy est bon*, This is good. *Cela est beau*, That is faire. So likewise, if the *Substantive* be put after the sayd *Verbe*, in the *Genitive* Case; as *Cecy, cela est de bonne grace*, this or that is gracefull. *Cecy est de grand travail*, this is very laboursome. *Cela sera de plaisir et recreation*, that will be but for sport and recreation. Or else we use *il*, as a signe that the *Verbe Substantive* is *Impersonall*; as *il est vray*, it is true. *Il est certain et assure*, it is certaine and undoubted. *Il est de grand profit*, it is very profitable.

In an *Interrogation*, the Pronounes follow the *Verbe*, the Rules aforesgoing standing firme still, as *qui est ce*? Who is this? *est ce moy*? is it I? *est ce luy*? is it he? *Sera ce nous*? Shall wee be they? *Fust ce eux*, was it they? *Qu' est ce*? What is this? *Qu' est cela*? What is that? *Quand fust ce*? When was this? *Qu' est cela*? What is that? *Qu' est cecy*? What is this? *Ou a c' esté*? Where was this? And in these Phrases, where *ce* is joyned with the *Verbe Substantive*, the Pronounes Relative *qui*, *que*, *lequel*, *dont*, make up the Sentence; as *Est ce vous dont on parle tant*? Is it you whom men talke so of? *Sera ce nous que payerons*? Shall we be the pay-masters? *C'estoit donc luy que vous priiez tant*, It was he then, whom

number : as, *c' est moy*, it is I : *c' est toy*, it is thou : *c' est luy*, it is he : *c' est vous*, it is you. Some hold these manner of Phrases to be irregular. Yet the first and third person Plurall, may be expressed two wayes : *c' est nous*, or *ce sommes nous*, it is we. *C' est eux*, or *ce sont eux*, It is they. So likewise in the first person singular we say, *ce suis je*, it is I : or *c' est moy*, which is more in use.

We place likewise the Demonstrative *ce*, before the Verbe Substantive, in the same manner, when a Participle in an Active sence, with an expression of the quality of the action, cometh after it ; as *c' est bien dit*, this is well sayd : *c' est combattu en braves hommes*, this was fought like brave men : *Ce sera sagement parlé*, that will be wisely spoken : *q' a esté subtilement argué*, this was subtilly argued : *C' eust esté prudemment advisé*, that had beene wisely counselled. In all these Phrases, an Action is considered, as the maine Subiect of the Sentence, and no certaine Substantive. If a Substantive were, then a Personall Pronoun agreeing with that Substantive in Gender, were to be used : viz. one of these *il, ils, elle, elles* : as also a Verbe of fitting number and person : as *Que dites vous de ce livre ? il est doctement composé*, What say you of this Booke ? It is learnedly written. *Et cette harangue ?* And this Oration, what thinke you of it ? *Resp. Elle est elegantement rissuë, disertement et eloquemment prononcée*, It is elegantly contrived, distinctly and Eloquently pronounced.

But if the *Verbe* aforesayd, have after it an *Adjective* put * *Substantively*, we use *cecy, cela*, and * viz. *with-
ce* would be nothing worth, in such a Case; *out a Sub-
Cela est vray*, This is true. *Cela est certain*, *stantive*.

This is certaine: *Cecy est clair et evident*, This is cleere and manifest: *Cecy est bon*, This is good. *Cela est beau*, That is faire. So likewise, if the *Substantive* be put after the sayd *Verbe*, in the *Genitive* Case; as *Cecy, cela est de bonne grace*, this or that is gracefull. *Cecy est de grand travail*, this is very laboursome. *Cela sera de plaisir et recreation*, that will be but for sport and recreation. Or else we use *il*, as a signe that the *Verbe Substantive* is *Impersonall*; as *il est vray*, it is true. *Il est certain et assure*, it is certaine and undoubted. *Il est de grand profit*, it is very profitable.

In an *Interrogation*, the Pronounes follow the *Verbe*, the Rules aforesgoing standing firme still, as *qui est ce*? Who is this? *est ce moy*? is it I? *est ce luy*? is it he? *Sera ce nous*? Shall wee be they? *Fust ce eux*, was it they? *Qu' est ce*? What is this? *Qu' est cela*? What is that? *Quand fust ce*? When was this? *Qu' est cela*? What is that? *Qu' est cecy*? What is this? *Ou a c' est e*? Where was this? And in these Phrases, where *ce* is joyned with the *Verbe Substantive*, the Pronounes Relative *qui, que, lequel, dont*, make up the Sentence; as *Est ce vous dont on parle tant*? Is it you whom men talke so of? *Sera ce nous que payerons*? Shall wee be the pay-masters? *C'estoit donc luy que vous priiez tant*, It was he then, whom

whom you esteemed so highly : For if the Particle *ce* be not put in, the Verbe must be *Personall*, and have fitting Pronounes joyned with it : and then the Articles *le, la, les,* must follow, or else *celuy, celle, ceux, celles, un, une,* before the Relatives : as *Sommes nous les arbitres des vos differens ?* Are we the Iudges of your differences ? *Suis je le respondant ?* Am I the answerer ? *Estes vous celuy qui m' appelle ?* Is it you that calleth me ?

Other Pronounes also, may follow the Verbe in such *Interrogative* Phrases ; as *Suis je vostre juge ?* Am I your Iudge ? *Est elle ma Maistresse ?* Is shee my Mistresse ? Or else thus ; *Est cela le Roy ?* Is this the King ? *Est ce la Royne ?* Is this the Queene ? *Est cecy mon livre ?* Is this my Booke ? *Est cecy la Ville d' Orleans ?* Is this the City of Orleans ?

In *granting* answers, which, the common people among us, fill up with the Enclitic *mon,* (as shall be shewed in fitting place) they use *ce* before the Verbes *avoir* to have, *faire* to doe, *estre* to be, *falloir* to behoove, *vouloir* to bee willing, which serve fitly in these kind of answers ; as *Voila vostre femme,* Looke you there is your wife : *Resp. C' est mon,* It is indeed. *Ce sont la vos enfans,* Those are your Children : *Resp. Ce sont mon,* They are so. *Vous les aimez bien,* You love them well : *Resp. Ce fais mon,* I doe indeed. *Et les avez instruits,* And you have instructed them : *Resp. c' ay mon,* I have so. *Et les voulez avancer aux bonnes lettres :* and you

you will set them forward in Learning: *Ce* *veux* mon, *ce* *fais* mon, I will: I doe; *Il* *vous* *en* *faut* *donc* *estre* *bien* *soigneux*: you must then be very industrious; *Ce* *faut* *mon*, *ce* *fait* *mon*, I must; that indeed doth it.

Cetuy, celuy, celle, ceux, celles.

THese *Demonstratives* in Latine, are *Hic* this man, *is* he, *iste* that man, *ille* he; *hic* this woman [or any other thing of the Feminine Gender] *ea*, *illa*, *ista*, that woman, [or that thing of the Feminine Gender] and such like; But there is a notable difference betwene them; For *cetuy* hath neither a Feminine Gender, nor a Plurall Number proper to it; and serveth to make an absolute Answer: *Celuy*, when it doth *Demonstrate*, doth serve for *Antecedent*, to these Relatives *Qui*, *que* which, *lequel* the which, *dont* whereof: or else before these Articles, *de*, *du*, *des*: And it is most commonly used in this manner, when in Demonstration it hath Relation to some certaine Substantive: as I sayd by the way, in the Rules of *ce* Neutrall. *Celuy* then, cannot make an absolute answer like *cetuy*; *Qui* *t* *a* *poussé*? who thrust thee? *Resp.* *Luy* hee, or *cetuy* or that man;

and not *Celuy*. But if *Relatives follow*, we must use *Celuy*; as *Celuy que vous voyez*, He that you see. *Ceux qui s'enfuient*, they which flye away. *Celle qui s'en va là devant*, She that goeth before there. *Celuy qui aime Dieu, croit en celuy qu'il a envoyé*, He that beleeveth in God, beleeveth in him, whom God hath sent. The reason of this, is because *celuy* maketh so present, and expresse a Demonstration, that it needeth not the Relative, nor the Article, to shew what Substantive it meaneth. *Celuy*, on the contrary, being of it selfe *Indefinite*, hath need of the *Relatives* and *Articles*, to shew what Substantive is meant, and therefore is used accordingly; as *Vos accoustremens d'aujourd'uy vous fessent mieux, que ceux d'hier*, the cloathes you have on this day fit you better, then those you wore Yesterday. *Ce n'est icy mon cheval, c'est celuy de mon frere*, This is not my Horse, it is my Brothers. *Ils ont mieux aimé la gloire des hommes, que celle de Dieu*, They have loved the glory of men, better then the glory of God. *Chacun cherche plus son profit que celuy du public*. Every man seeketh his owne profit, more then the common good. In such phrases as these, *celuy* would not have beene proper; Yet if the thing Demonstrated or shovne be present in view, *celuy* may be used: as *Celuy que vous voyez*, He that you see. *Celuy qui a l'accoustrement de taffetas*, He that hath the Taffeta suit on, but *celuy* is more usuall.

Besides

Besides; *Cetuy* is used as a *Relative*, like *ice-luy*: but it is not so neate in my opinion; as *De deux freres que vous avez, l'aîné s'addonne a la vertu, et cetuy me plaist fort*, The eldest of your Brethren taketh a virtuous course, and him I like very well. *Le puisné est vicieux, et de cetuy j'ay bien mauvaise opinion*, The younger is vicious, and of him I have a very ill opinion.

These two Demonstrative Pronounes, *celuy* and *cetuy*, when the Syllables *cy* and *là*, are joyned to them, (*cy* to shew a thing neere hand, and *là* a thing further off,) fall more gently from the tongue, but have the same signification, which they have without them, and are used in the same manner.

Cetuy-cy this man here, *cetuy-là* that man there; *celuy-cy* this man here, *celuy-là* that man there; *Ceux-cy* these men here, *ceux-là* those men there. So likewise, *Cette-cy* in the Femin. Gender, *cette-là*, *celle-cy*, *celle-là*, and in the Plurall Number; *Cettes-cy*, *cettes-là*, *celles-cy*, *celles-là*.

When they are thus compounded, use them indifferently one for the other, applying the *Definite Articles de, a*, to them, as to others which are not compounded.

Of Relatives.

I Celuy Masculine, icelle Feminine the very same; *quel* Masculine, *quelle* Feminine which, *lequel* Mascul. *laquelle* Femin. the which; *qui*, *que*, which, *quoy* what, are our *Relatives*; to which we joyn these Syllables *y*, *en*, *is*, *dont*, whereof. They have onely *Indefinite Articles*, in both the Singular and Plurall number: except *lequel*, which carryeth the Article *inseparably* joyned with it: *y*, *en*, *dont*, never have any Articles.

Iceluy, *iceux*, *icelle*, *icelles*, signifie the same which *is*, *ea*, *ipse*, doe in Latine; and are pure *Relatives* like *cetuy-cy*, having alwayes *Reference* to an *Antecedent*; it cannot begin a Sentence, because it presupposeth ever something gone before, and it is more usuall and smooth then *cetuy*. Oftentimes *Iceluy*, *icelle*, &c. stand for *il*, *luy*, *elle*, and may be joyned with Verbes instead of them: and so may *il*, *luy*, and *elle*, be put for *iceluy*, *icelle*: as *Embrassez les promesses de Dieu, et vous confiez en icelles*, or *en elles*, Embrace the promises of God, and trust in them; you may say also, *et vous y confiez*. So also, *Dieu est mon roc, je m'appuyera sur iceluy*. or *sur luy* or *je m'y appuyera*: God is my Rocke, I will rest upon him. *Iceluy est mon defendeur*, he is my Defender, or *il est*, &c.

Qui and *que*, whether they be Relatives or Interrogatives, are of the Masculine and Feminine Gender, and are indeed of great use: they signify the same with the Latine Pronounes, *Quis, Qui, Quæ, Quod, Quid*. Their Antecedent is often *ce* and *celuy*, as hath beene already sufficiently sayd, and shall appeare more plainly by the following examples.

Qui, when it is an Interrogative, hath still reference to some person; *Qui estes vous?* Who are you? *Qui demandez vous?* whom doe you aske? *Qui cherchez vous?* whom doe you seeke? And so in all cases: as *De qui tenez vous ces nouvelles?* From whom have you this newes? *A qui parlent ils?* To whom doe they speake? *Qui faites vous vostre chef?* whom doe you make your chiefe man? So likewise, though it be *not* an Interrogative, and when it hath no antecedent expressed, it hath reference to persons onely, and it is vted in all cases; as *Je sçay bien qu' ils sont*, I know well who they are; *Qu' ilz prennent garde qui ilz offensent*, Let them take heed whom they offend; *Considerez de qui on parle*, a qui il fault s' adresser, Consider of whom they speake, and whom they should addresse themselves to.

Notwithstanding this that hath beene sayd, in certaine Phrases, and in the Nominative Case onely, where it hath no certaine Antecedent expressed, it may be used generally to signifie both persons and things also, as if it were of the

Neuter Gender; as *Ditez moy qui vous tourmente l'esprit*, Tell me who vexeth and tormenteth your mind. *Je ſſay bien qui vous guidera, que vous ne ſçauriez vous eſgarer*, I know well who will guide you ſo, that you ſhall not erre. *Je ne puis penſer qui les meux de m' injurier*, I cannot imagine, what hath mooved them to injure me; and in ſuch like Phraſes, which ſeeme to bee *Eclipticke*, and to have theſe words underſtood: *viz. Ce*, or *que c'eſt*, what it is: or *quelle choſe c'eſt*, what thing it is, &c.

Qui who, when it is a true *Relative*, (that is to ſay, when it hath reference to a Subſtantive going before) it may bee referred both to *Persons*, and other things which are ſignified by any *Subſtantive*; yet in the *Accuſative Caſe*, we uſe *que*: yea and in the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Ablative*, wee uſe it; And the *Germans* note, that after it, wee never uſe a *Perſonall Pronounce* in the *Nominative Caſe*, to which *qui* is referred, as they doe ordinarily in *Dutch*; as *Noſtre Pere qui eſ eſ cieux*, our Father which are in Heaven; and not *qui tu eſ*, &c. *Vous me devez aimer qui vous ay bien ſervi*, You ought to love me that have done you good Service, and not *qui je vous ay*; *Je vous ſuis grandement obligé qui m' avez ſecouru au beſoin*, and not *qui vous m' avez*, I am greatly obliged to you, that have ſuccoured me in time of

time of need, for otherwise there would be two Nominatives of the same person.

Que, when it is an Interrogative, or when it hath no certaine Antecedent expressed, hath only reference to things, as if it were of the Neuter gender, like *quid* in Latin, which signifieth what, or what thing; soe wee say commonly *Qu'est ce?* what is his? *Qu'y a-il?* what is there? *Que demandez vous?* what doe you aske? *Je voy bien que l'on cherche*, I see well what they seeke for; *Vous savez assez que ie desire*, You know well enough what I desire. And here also, seemeth to be an Ecclipsis, (viz. in these two last sentences) & that these words *ce* or *que c'est*, or *quelle chose c'est*, may be vnderstood: For so the Phrases in the Nominative case runne sometimes, viz. when the Relative is construed with the Verbe Substantive: and sometimes also in the Accusative, viz. when it commeth before a Verbe Actiue: for the other cases, wee must take *De quoy, a quoy*, of what, to what, in the Neutrallience.

But when *que* is a true Relative, (viz. when it hath a certaine Antecedent expressed) it is not of the Nominative, (for *qui* is the Nominative) and hath relation as well to Persons, as all other things, which any Substantive can signifie, by way of Antecedent; and this it doth in the Gen. Dat. and Accusative; as *Ce est Dieu* * *que j'aime*, et * *de luy que j'attend tout* is of the Accusative. It is God whom I loue, & from whom I expect all good: or *De qui j'attens* et * *a luy* * *que* of the Gen.

* Here *que* is of the Accusative.
* Here *que* is of the Gen.

que je m'adresse: a qui or auquel je m'adresse, and it is hee to whom I addresse my selfe; C'est a vous que je recommande mes affaires: a qui, or auquel je recommande mes affaires, It is you to whom I recommend my business; C'est a la raison que ie me rends: a qui, or a laquelle je me rends, It is reason that I yeild to; C'est en la raison que ie me fonde: en qui, or en laquelle, or en quoy je me fonde, It is reason vpon which I build.

Note here that when *que* is of the *Genitive*, or *Dative* case, it doth necessarily require an *expresse antecedent*, which is to be governed of the *Verbe Substantive*, by some *Article* or *Preposition*; as C'est pour le public que ie travaille, pour qui, or pour lequel je travaille, It is for the common good that I labour: But you may not say, I' invocque Dieu que je me fie, I call on God in whom I trust: nor may you say, I' ayme le bien public que je dirige toutes mes actions, but a qui, auquel, or ou je dirige &c. I love the Common good, to which I leuell all my Actions, And therefore *que*, cannot be put in a *Neutrall sence* for an *Interrogative*, in the *oblique* cases afore mentioned: but instead of it we vse *Dequoy*, a quoy, as de quoy parlez vous? Of what doe you speake? A quoy pensez vous? What doe you think of? Or when a person is understood, we say de qui, en qui, a qui, pour qui; as De qui parle-on? Whom doe they speake of? En qui me fieray je? In whom shall I trust? Pour qui me prend il? For whom doth he take mee? A qui nous ont ils envoyez?

envoyez ? To whom have they sent vs ? If any should now object that *que*, in the Phrases afore mentioned, is a *conjunction* rather then a Pronoun, I will not quarrell with him about it: nor will I contest about *que*, when it serveth for an *Expletive*, in a *Demonstration* made by *ce*, before the *Verbe Substantive*; as *C'est une belle, grande et riche ville que Paris*, It is a faire, great and wealthy City * *this Paris*; *Ce sera une belle Dameselle, que la fille de ce Gentilhomme là*, It will be a faire gendewoman that Gentlemans daughter there; *C'est une belle vertu que la patience*, It is a good Vertue this patience.

* Where note that we in English use the word this as y French doe their que

To conclude; *Qui*, when it is of the *singular* number, and the *Nominative* case, it may begin a sentence without an *Antecedent*; but not when it is of the *Plurall* Number; as *Qui a bon voisin a bon matin*, He that hath a good neighbour hath good words; *Qui est content est riche*, He that hath contentednesse wants no wealth. In the *Plurall* Number, there must be an *Antecedent* expressed; as *Ceux qui sont nos voisins, nous méprisent*, Those which are our neighbours disrespect vs; *Ne craignez point ceux qui ne peuvent tuer que le corps*, Feare not those which can but kill the body; *Contemplez les Cieux qui sont l'ouvrage de Dieu*, Contemplate the Heavens which are the worke of God. The reason of this, is because *qui* in the *Singular* Number signifieth *whoever*.

Nom.

Masc. Singular.

Nom.	<i>Lequel</i> , the which
Gen.	<i>Du quel</i> , of the which,
Dat.	<i>Au quel</i> , to the which.

Plurall number, Masc.

Nom.	<i>Les quels</i> , the which.
Gen.	<i>Des quels</i> , of the which.
Dat.	<i>aux quels</i> , to the which, <i>es quels</i> , in the which.

Singular number, Fem.

Nom.	<i>Laquelle</i> , the which.
Gen.	<i>De laquelle</i> , of the which.
Dat.	<i>A laquelle</i> , to the which. <i>en laquelle</i> , in the which.

Plurall.

Nom.	<i>Lesquelles</i> , the which.
Gen.	<i>Desquelles</i> , of the which.
Dat.	<i>Auxquelles</i> , to the which, <i>esquelles</i> , in the which.

Lequel, is a *Relative* and an *Interrogative*, as *que* is, and hath the same signification; they might be put one for another, but that *lequel* cannot be without an *expresse Antecedent*, and therefore cannot begin a sentence, as *qui* may, when it is of the *Nominative* case, and *Singular* number: Soe, wee say; *C'est Dieu qui* or *Lequel m'a assisté toute ma vie*; de *qui* or *duquel* *j'atten*

J'attens tout mon heur : à qui or auquel je remets toute ma fiance ; It is God who hath assisted me all my life-time : *from whom* I expect all my happinesse : *in whom* I put all my trust.

Yet when it is an *Interrogative*, it hath a certain *Partitive* or *elective* significatiō, to pick that out of many, which the Latine word *uter* doth out of two ; as *Lequel de ces livres est le vostre ?* Which of these Bookes is yours ? *Laquelle de ces epees vous plait le plus ?* Which of these Swords doe you like best ? *Qui a escrit cecy ?* who wrote this ? *Resp. Un de mes garçons,* one of my Boyes. *Lequel ?* which of them ? *Le plus jeune,* the youngest.

Quel, Quels, Quelle, Quelles.

THIS Pronounce is not a *Relative*, but an *Interrogative*, and signifyeth the same which *qui* doth : but they differ in their *Cōstruction* : for *qui* will have no Substantive ; and *quel* cannot be without a Substantive expressly set downe, eyther before the Verbe, or a little after it, it it be a Verbe *substantive* ; for Example : *qui a fait cela ?* who hath done that ? *que vous plait il ?* what would you have ? But [if you will use *quel*, you must say] *quel homme estes vous ?* what man are you ? *quelle personne pourroit endurer ?* what man could endure you ?
quelle

Quelle parole *ditez vous* ? What is it that you speaks ? Quel livre *tenez vous* ? What booke doe you hold ? Soe likewise in all Phrases Negative, Doubting, or Conditionall, which follow Interrogations ; as *Je ne sçay qui me tient*, or *quel respect me tient*, *que je ne vous dechasse*, I know not what respect hindereth mee, from hunting you away from hence ? *Sçachez qui me demande*, or *quelle personne me demande*, Know who asketh for me ; *Je me doute bien qui*, or *quel personnage*, I doubt much who it is : Marke this different construction of *qui*, and *quel* ; when they are joyned with the *Verbe Substantive*, if a *Noune* follow with its *Article*, or a *Pronoune Possessive*, betweene the *Verbe Substantive* and the *Noune*, they differ not in their Construction but are placed in this manner : *Qui est*, or *quel est l'entuy qui vous tourmente*, What care is it that tormenteth you ? *Advissez qui*, or *quel est le respect qui me tient*, thinke what the respect is y^e witholds mee : *Que je sçache quel*, or *qui sera le bien que me ferez*, Let me know what good you will doe mee ; *Quelle sera vostre bonne reception*, What good entertainment will you give ; *Quel a esté ce soin, que j'ay eu de vous* ? What a care have I had of you, *On parle d'une bonne épée, et quell' est cette-cy* ? They talke of a good sword, and what is this ?

Quoy and *que* agree in their *Neutrall* signification : for both of them signifie the same, which

which *quid* and *quod* in Latine doe; But in theyr *Syntaxe* or *Construction* they differ: for *que*, is alwayes ioyned with *Verbes*; or the *Demonstrative Pronounes* *Ce, celuy*, as may be amply seene, in the former examples: *Quoy* agreeth with *Participles* very well, but not with the *Demonstrative Pronounes* aforesaid; as *quoy entendu*, or *ce qu' entendu*, which being vnderstood: *quoy fait*, or *ce que fait*, which being done: *quoy voyant*, or *ce que voyant*, Which he, we, or I seeing; *Quoy ayant recité*, or *ce qu' ayant recité* which when it was recited; &c.

When *que* hath reference to *Nounes*, in the oblique cases, it commeth neere to the nature of a *Conjunction*; as *est ce de ceste monnoye là que me cuidez payer*? Is it out of that money that you intend to pay mee; *Regardez a quoy il vous plait que je m' employe pour vous*, Sec What you please that I should doe for you;

* Here que is a Relat.

* Here que is a Coniun-

Quoy, serveth to expresse admiration, *Quoy! vous voulez vous perdre* What! will you vndo your selfe? *Quoy! me donnerez vous tousiours tant d'ennui* What! will you trouble me thus alwaies?

ction.

It serveth also for an absolute *Interrogative*; as *Je veux vous dire quelq; chose*, I will tell you a thing; *Quoy? what? et quoy?* and what is it? *mais quoy encore?* and what I pray? It is likewise vsed at the end of a *Sentence*, in this manner; *Je ne vous diray pas quoy*, I will not tell you what; *Que fait mon*
la

laquais là bas ? What doth my lackey there be low? *Il cherche, ie ne sçay quoy qu' il a esgaré,* He seeketh for I know not what, that he hath laid out of the way; In these Phrases, *que* could not have beene vsed, because it loveth better to be ioyned with the *Verbe*.

* in the two first exam-
ples quoy is
an Interroga-
tive. *Dequoy, a quoy,* are both *Interrogatiue* and *Relatives*; as * *Dequoy me parlez vous ?* What doe you speake to me off? * *A quoy est bon cecy ?* What is this good for? *Je trouve cet affaire si douteux, que je ne sçay* * *a quoy m' en tenir,* I

finde this businesse soe full of doubt, that I know not what to fixe vpon; *Dequoy* is referred to *Persons* also; as *Viola l' homme dequoy je vous ay parlé,* Looke you, there is the man I spake to you of, *La femme dequoy l'on fait des contes par La ville,* The woman that men tell tales of all the Towne over: And both these *oblique* cases have other *Antecedents* [beside persons] ioyned with them in the sentence; as *C'est la raison dequoy l'on vous bat,* It is reason, that you are pressed with; *Le fleuve dequoy il est mention,* The river spoken of; *Le but a quoy je vise,* The butt I aime at; *L'esperance en quoy je me repose,* The hope wherevpon I rest; *Les secours a quoy je m' attens,* The helpe that I expect; *La cause pourquoy je fais cecy,* The cause for which I doe this.

* This is
like our En-
glish phrase,
that man
hath where
withall. To conclude; *Dequoy* importeth by way of *Emphasis, goods, argument, or matter*; as *Cet homme a bien* * *dequoy,* That man hath store of wealth

wealth; *vous me remerciez : mais il n'y a pas de quoy*, You thanke me : but there is no reason for it.

Of Y, and En.

Y, is a *Relative particle*, which commeth somewhat neere the *Dative* case; and it hath *reference* either to some *place*, or *thing* before mentioned: and when it hath reference to a *place*, it implyeth a *going* or *remouing* thitherward; as *Va au marché*, Goe to market; Resp. *Bien, j' y vay*, Well, thither I goe; *I' y iray tantost*, I will goe thither by and by; *Quand voulez vous aller a l' Eglise?* When will you goe to Church? Resp. *I' y veux aller tout a cette heure*, I will goe thither iust now; *Vous plaist il escrire a Orleans* Will you write to Orleans; *I' y enuoye mon laquais*, I send my lackey thither; Resp. *ouy j' y escriray*, Yes I will write: *y*, sometimes signifieth an *abiding* or *residence* in a place; as *Ton maistre est il au logis?* Is your master in the house? Resp. *Ouy il y est* Yes, he is within; or *il n'y est pas*, He is not within, *Je vay a Blois pour y sejourner quelq; temps*, I goe to Blois to reside there for some time.

Likewise when wee signifie *passing by a place*, wee vse *y*; as *I' y passeray*, I will passe that way.

When *y* hath *reference* to some *thing* before mentioned, it signifieth *applying ones selfe to it*,

or *minding* of it; as *Prenez garde a vous*, take heed of your selfe: *Bien j y prendray garde aussi: personne n y prendra garde pour moy*, well, I will take heed then: no body will take heed for me: *Vous sçavez bien-rost la langue françoise, vous y prenez bonne peine: vous y etudiez sans cesse*, You will learne French very quickly: You take great paines at it: you are still a studying of it. This Particle *y* seemeth somewhat like the Latine Particle *ibi*.

En, before *Verbes* is a *Relative*, but before other parts of Speech, it is well knowne to be a *Preposition* very frequently used. When it is before a *Verbe*, it hath reference to some place or thing; and because it hath some similitude with the *Ablative* case, it signifyeth going out of a place; as *Viens tu de la Maison?* Come you out of the house? *Ouy j'en vien*, Yes I doe: or *non; je n'en viens pas*, No; I doe not come from thence. *Quelles nouvelles de la Cour? on dit que vous en venez*, or *que vous en arrivastes hier a soir*: What newes from Court? they say you come from thence, or that you came from thence last Night.

When it hath no certaine Antecedent, it is joyned with these *Verbes*, *Aller* to goe, *Venir* to come, *retourner* to returne, *fuir* to flye, *courir* to runne, which signifie mooving from a place: but withall, it will have before it one of these Prepositive Pronounes in the *Accusative* Case:

vis.

viz. me, te, se, nous, vous, which must be of the same person, that the *Nominative* case to the to the Verbe is; as *Je m'en vay* I am going; *Tu t'en vas*, Thou art going; *Il s'en va*, He is going; *Nous nous en allons* Wee are going; *Tu t'en retournes*, Thou art comming backe; *Ils s'en fuyent*, They are running away. This addition of the *Prepositive* Pronounes to these Verbs, sheweth them to be *Reciprocall*: And being thus absolutely used, they signifie *parting from* that place where a man was: & yet *withall* they imply *motion to* the place also, to which a man goeth, if *sitting Prepositions* be used in the sentence with it; as *Je m'en vay de cette ville a Paris*, I am going from this towne to Paris; *Je m'en fuis de la bataille en lieu de seurété*, I am flying from the battaile to some place of safety; If a certaine *Antecedent* be expressed before the Verbe, both *y*, and *en* are to be used, and placed in this manner; *J'ay esté a Orleans et je m'y en retourne*, I have beene at Orleans, and am comming from thence; *Il a affaire aux plaids, et il s'y en va*, He hath businesse in the pleading place, and he is going thither.

If the Verbes be *not Reciprocall*, *en* is not to be used with them, but *y*; as *J'y retourne*, I come from thence; *J'y vay*, I goe thither.

When *en* hath reference to a thing, it signifieth some *portion*, *part*, *quantity*, and *share* in it, and it is used, as if it stood for the *Ablative* Case; as *On m'a dit que vous*

vous mesdites de moy, They say you speake ill of mee, Resp. *Sauf vostre grace je n'en mesdi point : si j'en mesdisois ce seroit a tort*, By your favour, I doe not; if I did, it were ill done, *Nous joüons a la prime, en voulez vous estre, viz de nostre jeu*: wee play at *Primeros*; will you make one & viz among vs.

For the same reason, when wee speake of some quantity of things, wee vse *en*; as *Prêtez moy de l'argent si vous en avez*, Lend mee some monny if you haue any; *Je n'en ay point; si j'en avois, je vous en prêterois*: I have none: if I had any, I would lend you it.

In like manner if quantity be expressed by any word whatsoever, the *Relative en*, is necessary, to expresse relation to the *aforesaid quantity*; and it must come before the *Verbe*; *Combien avez vous d'enfans?* How many Children have you? *J'en ay assez*, I have enow; *J'en ay un, deux, trois*, I have one, two, three, &c. *Y a-il beaucoup d'estrangers en ceste ville*, Are their many strangers in this towne? Resp. *Il y en a peu, beaucoup, assez*: There be some, many, enow. For it is a generall rule without exception, that *en* is to be put before the *Verbe*, when the *subject* or matter of the sentence, is any *quantity*, or *part of a thing*; if the *whole entire thing*, were supposed for the *subject* of it, wee were to vse these *Relatives*, viz. *le, la, les*, as wee have already shewed, in due place.

To conclude, note that *y*, standeth for the *Accedents* when they are understood: which, if they

they werexpressed, should be governed by the prepositions *a, au, aux, es, en, avec*: whereas the Antecedents of the Particle *en*, are governed by the Partitive and Exclusive Prepositions of the Ablative case, viz. *de, du, des*, where *en* seemeth to signifie, of it, from hence, from thence, out of this, out of these; &c. These Particles alwayes goe immediately before the Verbe: and if the sentence require them both, y goeth first, and then *en*, immediately before the Verbe, as may appeare in the examples mentioned before: some Adverbes are here to be noted, and *bien* especially which may elegantly be put betweene the Particle *en*, and the Verbe of the Infinitive Moode; as *estudiez ces preceptes, et mettez peine d' en bien user*, Study these precepts and take paines to vse them well; Indeed they follow the Verbe of y Imperative Mood, in commanding sentences, in this manner; *Il est temps d' aller au marché allez-y, et revenez en bien tost*, It is time to goe to the market, goe your wayes thither, and come backe againe presently: *Allez vous y * en*, * Here en goe your wayes thither; *souvenez vous en*, Re-seemeth to member it; *La langue Françoise est elegante estudiez y, appliquez vous y, apprenez en la perfection* have relation to the action: The French is an elegant language, study it, apply your selfe to it, and learne the perfection of and not the place. it. If wee vse the second person Singular of the Imperative Mood, an s shall be put in the end of it to make the Pronunciation smooth; as *Tu as affaire au marché vas y, et reviens en tantost*, Thou hast businesse in the market, goe thither;

and come againe presently ; *Tu as beaucoup d'affaires en charge* songes y, prends en soin, Many businesles are given you in charge : mind them, and take care of them.

When these two Relatives y, and en, are put before the *third person* singular, of the Verbe *avoir* put *Impersonally*, the *Antecedent* to the Particle y, is supposed to be, *au monde* In the World, or *en la nature des choses*, In the nature of things ; And for the *Antecedent* of the Particle en, wee must vnderstand ; *Des hommes, des gens, des personnes*, men, people, persons ; as *Il y en a de si curieux des affaires d'autrui, que les leurs en demeurent*, There are [*viz.* in the world] some, [*viz.* men, people persons] soe curious after other mens businesles, that they let theyr owne alone ; *Il y en avoit du temps de Cesar, qui entretenoit le trouble pour leur profit particulier* ; There wer [*viz.* in the World] some, [*viz.* men, people, or persons] in Cesar's time, that cherished stirrs or tumults, for theyr owne private commodity ; These Phrases in *Latin*, are expressed by the *third Person* of the Verbe *substantive*, *Sunt, erant* : as *Sunt quibus in Satyra videor nimis acer*, *Il y en a qui me trouvent trop acere en Satyre*, There are some which thinke mee too sharpe in the Satyre.

The Relative *en*, is vsed alone with many Verbs : as *I'en sçay* I know some ; *j'en ay cognu*, I have knowne some ; *Il s'en trouve*, There are found some ; *On en voit*, Some you may see ; so likewise before all Verbs which governe the aforesaid

Articles

Articles de, du, des, Si j'entend parler de quelques nouvelles, ie vous en advertiray, If I vnderstand any newes, I will tell you it; Un tel me fera beaucoup de secours, s'il vous plaist l'en prier Such a one will help mee much, if you please to request him.

Moreover, when reference is made to *ŷ* efficient and materiall cause of any thing, of *W* mention is made before, in *ŷ* Sentence, *ŷ* Relative en will fit well with *ŷ* Verbe, *W* signifieth the effect of that cause, and is put before it; as *S' estant eschauffé, il en est tombé malade d'un pleuresie*; Il aime tant la chasse, qu'il en perd le boire et manger, He loveth hunting so well, that he looseth his meat and drinke for it; *Il est si amoureux de cette Damoiselle, qu' il en perd les pieds*, He is so in love with that Gentlewoman, *ŷ* he knoweth not where to stand: [hitherto you have scene examples of *ŷ* efficient cause. now follows one wherein mention is made of the materiall cause] *J'ay amassé tous mes materiaux, pour en faire bâtir une maison*, I have gathered together all my materials to build a house of them; [now followeth another wherein mention is made of an efficient cause] *Plusieurs sont tellement curieux des affaires d'autrui qu'ils en oublient les leurs*; Many are soe inquisitive after other mens matters, that they forsake, get theyr owne.

[I will not here dispute, whether those *W* Monfr. Maupas calleth efficient causes, be indeed such: but those which I have pointed out for efficient causes he intendeth them for such.]

Sometimes when the aforesaid Impersonall *i* is vsed, those words, to which *il y a*, is referred

referred, are put after it; as Il y a beaucoup de peine d'apprendre une langue estrangere, there is much trouble in learning a forraigne Language. Il y a eu cette année peu de fruits en ce país, there was but little fruit in this Country, this yeare. Il y aura du danger sur la mer si la tempeste s'eleue, There will be danger upon the Sea, if a Tempest arise, and so throughout all the Tenses of this Verbe.

These Relative Syllables *y*, and *en*, as also *le, la, les*, whereof we spake before, are frequently used by us, and necessarily to be understood by those who will speake our language: for strangers, eyther by leaving of them out, or putting one for another, make all their discourses hang ill together, imperfect, and doubifull. Then let them study to make good use of them, and not to omit them when they should be used; alwayes using *le, la, les*, when reference is made to a whole thing before mentioned; *en*, when reference is made to a part, or quantity of a thing, or going from a place. & *y*, when we will signifie an applying of ones selfe to a thing, or a minding of it, as also an attempt upon a thing, or entring into a place.

Dont may be Englished like the Latine word *unde*, and signify from whence: we use it as a Relative of the Ablative Case, whither the Antecedent be a thing, or a place: of the Singular or Plur. number: of the Masc. or Fem. Gender: and it signifyeth the same which these words following doe; *viz. De quoy* of what, or from what, *de qui*, of which, or from which, *duquel* Masc.

Masc. *de laquelle* Fem. of the which, or from the which, *desquels*, Masc. and Plur. number, *desquelles* fem. and Plur. number, of the which: These Latine words *Cujus, Quorum, Quarum, de Quo, de Qua, de Quibus*, signifie the same; as *le vien du lieu dont vous m'avez parle*, I come from the place, of which you spake to me. *Voila l'homme dont est question*, Looke you there is the man in question, or the man of who question is made; *Vacquez aux affaires dont avez pris la charge*, Mind the businesse which you have taken charge of. *Vous me parlez de choses dont je n'ay que faire*, You speake to me of businesse, which I have nothing to doe with.

Of Possessives.

Our Pronounes Possessive, are these which follow.

	Singular.
<i>Mon</i> , Masc.	} Mine.
<i>Ma</i> , Fem.	
<i>Mien</i> , Masc.	
<i>Mienne</i> , Fem.	

	Singular.
<i>Ton</i> , Masc.	} Thine.
<i>Ta</i> , Fem.	
<i>Tien</i> , Masc.	
<i>Tienne</i> , Fem.	

<i>son</i> , Masc.	}	His.
<i>sa</i> , Fem.		
<i>sien</i> , Masc.		
<i>siene</i> , Fem.		
	Plurall Number.	

Nostre, our.*Vostre*, your.*Leur*, their.*Mon*, and *ma*, are thus declined.

Masc. Singular.

Nom. *Mon*, mine.Gen. & Ablat. *de Mon*, of mine.Dative. *a Mon*, to mine.*en Mon*, in mine.

Fem. Singular.

Nom. *Ma*, mine.Gen. & Ablat. *de Ma*, of mine.Dative. *a Ma*, to mine.*en Ma*, in mine.

Plurall to both.

Nom. *Mes*, mine.Gen. & Ablat. *de Mes*, of mine.Dative. *a mes*, to mine.*en mes*, in mine.*Ton* and *son*, are declined in the same manner.

These Possessives are meere *Adjectives*, and cannot be without their Substantives expressly set downe: as *voila mon Livre*, Looke you, there is my Booke: *voicy ma plume*, here is my pen. Epithets may be put betweene the Adjective, and the Substantive; as *Cestuy-cy, est mon plus*

plus grand ami, That man is my greatest friend; *et cet autre mon capital ennemi*, and that other man is my deadly Enemy. *Dieu est mon souverain, voire seul bien*, God is my chiefest, yea even my only good.

Though *Mon, ton, son*, be of the *Masc.* Gender, yet are they joyned to *Nounes* of the *Fem.* Gender, if they begin with a *Vowel*, or *h Mute*, to avoyd the *ill sound* that would bee caused by the comming together of two *Vowels*; so we say, *mon ame*, my soule; *mon esperance*, my hope; *mon humble obeissance*, my humble obeysance; *son honneste recompence*, his honest reward.

Notwithstanding this, there are *two words*, which suffer *Ecclypsis*, viz. *Amour*, and *Amie*; as *M' amour* my Love; *T' amour* thy Love; *S' amour* his Love; *M' amie* my she friend; *t' amie* thy she friend; *s' amie* his she friend; instead of, *Mon amour*, *Ton amour*, *Son amour*; *mon amie*, *ton amie*, *son amie*, which may bee used indifferently as well as the other.

Masc. Singular.

Nom.	}	<i>Mien, un mien, le mien</i> , mine.
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>de mien, d' un mien, du mien</i> , of mine.
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>a mien, a un mien, au mien</i> , to mine.
		<i>en mien</i> , in mine.

Masc.

Masc. Plurall.

Nom.	}	<i>Miens, les miens, des miens, mine.</i>
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>De miens, des miens, of mine.</i>
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>A miens, aux miens, a des miens, to mine.</i>
		<i>En des miens, es des miens, in mine,</i>

Fem. Singular.

Nom.	}	<i>Miène, une miène, la miène, mine.</i>
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>De miène, d'une miène, de la miène,</i>
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>(of mine.</i>
		<i>A miène, a une miène, a la miène, to mine</i>
		<i>En une miène, in mine.</i>

Fem. Plurall.

Nom.	}	<i>Miènes, des miènes, les miènes, mine.</i>
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>De miènes, des miènes. of mine.</i>
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>A miènes, a des miènes, aux miènes,</i>
		<i>es miènes, in mine, (to mine.</i>

Tien thine, and *sien* his. are Declined in the same manner.

This application of the Articles to these Possessives, sheweth that they are not used like the former. For *mon, ton, son*, never goe without their Substantives after them. *Mien, tien, sien*, on the other side, never have any Substantives:

but

but serve to make *absolute answers* to Interrogatives, and are referred to the *Substantive* going before in the Interrogation; as *a qui est ce livre?* Whose Booke is this? *Mien* mine, *rien* thine, *Sien* his: *a qui est cette epee?* Whose Sword is this? *Mienne*, *tiene*, *siene*, and not *mon*, *ton*, *son*: *ma*, *ta*, *sa*; For if we would use these last, we should be forced to repeat the *Substantive* and say, *C'est mon livre*; *c'est mon epee*; *c'est ma plume*; it is my Booke; it is my Sword; it is my pen.

Mien, *rien*, *sien*, seldome use to have *de* with them in the Genitive case, unless it be in a *Negative* sentence, or in an *Interrogative*, *conditional*, or *doubting*, which have the same construction that *Negatives* have; as *un tel loue un cheval, par ce qu'il n'en a point de sien*, or *qui soit a lui*: such a one hireth a Horse, because he hath none of his owne. *Vous demandez de bottes a emprunter, si j'en avois de miennes*, or *qui fussent a moy, je vous les presterois*, You aske to borrow Bootes: if I had any of mine owne, I would lend them to you.

A man can scarce use the *first Dative* of these Possessives, viz. That which hath *a* for its Article: I had therefore left it out as *needlesse*, but that it is used in some *forced Phrases*: but it is alwayes better to use the *second Dative*, viz. that which hath the *note of particularity* joyned with it; *au mien*, *a une mienne*.

When they are joyned with a *Definite Article*, they are *absolute Relatives* in a manner;
and

and *Reſponſives* alſo, and have *relation* alwayes to the *ſubſtantive* afore going; as *ſi vous n' avez point de cheval, ie vous preſteray le mien*, If you have not a horſe, I will lend you mine; *Voſtre frere ſe recommande a vos bonnes graces, et moy aux ſiènes meilleures*, Your brother recommendeth himſelfe to your good favour, and I doe more deſire his, then he doth yours. Soe y a man may *anſwer* to a queſtion concerning *poſſeſſion*, *ſoure* ſeverall wayes; *A qui eſt ce livre?* Whoſe booke is this? *Mien*, mine; or *Il eſt mien*, it is mine; *C'eſt le mien*, it is mine; *C'eſt mon livre*, It is my booke; *Il eſt a moy*, It belongeth to me, *A qui eſt cette plume?* Whoſe pen is this? *Miène*, Mine; or *elle eſt miène*, It is mine; *C'eſt la miène*, It is mine; *C'eſt ma plume* It is my pen; *Elle eſt a moy*, It belongeth to mee.

Whereby it appeareth that *Mon, ton, ſon*, may be called *Prepoſitive poſſeſſives*, and *mien, tien, ſien*, *Postpoſitive Relatives*, and *absolute Reſponſives*: becauſe the *firſt*, allwayes goe before the the *ſubſtantive expreſſed*, and the *laſt*, have *reference* to a *ſubſtantive* going before, and ſerve to make an *absolute anſwer* to a queſtion.

But when, in y *Singular* number, they have theſe words before them, viz. *un, une, one, deux, two, trois, three, quatre ſoure, &c.* as alſo *ce, cette*, this, *quelq;* ſome, *nul nulle*, none, *aucun aucune* any, *chaque*, every one, *chacun chacune*, every one, *tel telle*, ſuch: And in the *Plurall* number theſe which follow; *ces, theſe, des*, of the

the, *Plusieurs* more or many, *quelques* some, and other Indefinite termes, they may have *expresse* Substantives, either *before* or, *after* them, put *Indefinitely*; as *un ami mien*, or *un mien ami m'* a *convie* à *souper*, a friend of mine hath invited mee to Supper. *Quelques tiens sages voisins m'ont averti d'aucuns fols deportemens tiens*, Some of your understanding Neighbours, have given me notice of some indiscreet carriages of yours; *le vous consacrez ces miens labours*, or *ces labours miens*.

And though they should not have their *Substantive* expressed, when they are joyned with an *Indefinite Article*, yet the *Poets* have Licence sometimes to say, *Le cœur mien*, or *le mien cœur*, my heart: *L'ame mienne*, my Soule: *la rigueur siene*, his or her rigour: *La tiene vertu*, thy vertue; and such like. [Where you see, the *Substantives* *cœur*, *ame*, *rigueur*, and *vertu*, are expressed,] which Phrases in *Prose*, would not be currant.

Masc. Singular.

Nom.	{ 1	Nôtre	} Our.
&	2	un Nôtre	
Accus.	3	le Nôtre	

Fem. Singular.

Nom.	{	Nôtre,	} Our.
&		une nôtre,	
Accus.	{	la nôtre,	

Plural

Plur. number, Masc. and Fem.

Nom.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Nos,} \\ 2 \text{ des nôtres} \\ 3 \text{ les nôtres} \end{array} \right\}$	Our.
&		
Accus.		

Masc. Singular,

Gen.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ de notre,} \\ 2 \text{ d'un notre,} \\ 1 \text{ du notre,} \end{array} \right\}$	Of our.
&		
Ablat.		

Fem. Singular.

Gen.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ de notre,} \\ 2 \text{ d'une notre,} \\ 3 \text{ de la notre,} \end{array} \right\}$	Of our.
&		
Ablat.		

Plur. Masc. and Fem.

Gen.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ de nos,} \\ 2 \text{ } \end{array} \right\}$	Of our.
&		
Ablat.		

Dat. Masc. Singular.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{à notre,} \\ \text{en notre,} \\ \text{à un notre,} \\ \text{en un notre,} \\ \text{au notre,} \end{array} \right\}$	To our and in our.

Fem. Singular.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{à notre,} \\ \text{en notre,} \\ \text{à une notre,} \\ \text{en une notre,} \\ \text{à la notre,} \\ \text{en la notre.} \end{array} \right\}$	To our and in our.

Plur.

Plur. Masc. and Fem.		
Dat.	1	à nos,
		en nos,
		à des nôtres,
		en des nôtres,
	2	aux nôtres,
		es nôtres,
	3	

To our and
in our.

Voc. Masc. Singular.

{ ô nôtre, } ô Our.

{ ô le nôtre,

Voc. Fem Singular.

{ ô nôtre, } ô Our.

{ ô la nôtre,

Voc. Plur. Masc and Fem.

{ ô nos, } ô Our.

{ ô les nôtres,

Votre is declined in the same manner.

Now for the better distinguishing of the use of these Pronouns, we must consider the Singular, a part from the Plurall; for the same rules will not serve for both. Next, let vs consider the division of the cases, into three ranks or sorts: for each of them require particular rules, as I shall now shew.

The first Nom. Sing. which is without an Article, may be used * both as a Prepositive, and also as a Postpositive: for it alway hath the Substantive expressed as Mon, ton, son, have: as nôtre père qui es es Cieux &c. Our father which art in Heaven &c. Nôtre force est du tre shalt, our power is from y most high: Nor is it lawfull to change this order and to say Père nôtre, force nôtre;

* But not
in the same
sentence.

It serveth also in an *absolute answer*, like *mien*, *tien*, *sien*; as *A qui est ce livre?* Whose booke is this? *Nostre*, *Ours*; *Il est nostre*, It is ours; *C'est le nostre*, It is ours; *C'est nostre livre*, It is our booke; *Il est à nous*, It belongeth to us; Soe likewise *Vostre*, *Vours*; *Il est vostre*, It is yours, &c.

The *first* rancks of the *other cases*, viz. the *oblique*, are onely *Prepositive*: and are ioyned with the *Indefinite* articles, and a *Substantive expressly* set downe; as *Le salut est de nostre Dieu*, Salvation is from our Lord; *Pensez à vostre devoir*, Mind your duty; *D'où venez vous?* Whence come you? *De nostre maison*, From our house; *De vostre logis*, From you lodging.

As for the *two last rancks*, viz. the *second*, and the *third*, they are used altogether in the *same manner* with, *un mien*, *un tien*, *un sien*, *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*; as when we say, *Vn nostre ami*, A friend of ours; *Quelq; nostre voisine a esté enhuy epousée*, Some neighbour of ours was married this day; *Quelq; vostre compaignon se recommande à vous*, Some companion of yours rememberth himselfe to you.

The *last ranck*, viz. that which hath a *definite* article ioyned with it, is onely *Postpositive*: and doth *not require* to have *ſ* Substantive *expressed*, but hath *relation* to the *Substantive* going before: as *Pour ce que mon cheval se deult d'un pied, ie vous prie me prester le vostre*, My horse is lame of one foote: and therefore I pray lend mee yours.

For the *plural* number, it is carefully to be observed, that the *first* ranks are onely *Adjectives*, and *Prepositive* altogether after the manner of *Mon, ton, son*: that is to say, they serve before *Substantives* which are expressed: as *Ceux qui sont nos voisins, ne sont tous-jours nos amis*, Those which are our neighbours, are not alwaies our freinds; *Possédez vos ames en patience*, Possesse your soules in patience, we may not say *nostres voisins, vostres ames*.

The other *definite* ranks, [*viz.* those cases which are ioyned with definite articles] are onely *Postpositive Relatives*; as *Nos chevaux sont meilleurs que les vostres*, Our horses are better then yours; *Vos habits ressemblent aux nostres*, Your habits are like to ours; *Des quels arbres avez vous cueilli ces beaux fruits?* From what trees, gathered you these faire fruites? *Des nostres, des vostres*, From ours, from yours.

Sometimes, we vse the *Pronoune vostre*, though wee speake but to *one* person: and this wee doe, to signify *honour* and *respect*, as I said before in the rules of the *Pronoune tu*, instead of which wee say *vous*; as *Monseigneur, je me recommande a vostre bonne grace*, Sir I recommend my selfe to your good favour; And you are to note that it would be ridiculous, in the same sentence or discourse, first to say *tu, ton, tien*, and afterwards to say *vous, vostre*, if still you meane the *same person*, which I have

It serveth also in an absolute answer, like *mien, tien, sien*; as *A qui est ce livre?* Whose booke is this? *Nostre, Ours*; *Il est nostre*, It is ours; *C'est le nostre*, It is ours; *C'est nostre livre*, It is our booke; *Il est à nous*, It belongeth to us; Soe likewise *Vostre, Yours*; *Il est vostre*, It is yours, &c.

The first rancks of the other cases, viz. the oblique, are onely *Prepositive*: and are ioyned with the *Indefinite* articles, and a *Substantive* expressly set downe; as *Le salut est de nostre Dieu*, Salvation is from our Lord; *Pensez à vostre devoir*, Mind your duty; *D'où venez vous?* Whence come you? *De nostre maison*, From our house; *De vostre logis*, From you lodging.

As for the two last rancks, viz. the second, and the third, they are used altogether in the same manner with, *un mien, un tien, un sien, le mien, le tien, le sien*; as when we say, *Un nostre ami*, A friend of ours; *Quelq; nostre voisine a esté en-huy épousée*, Some neighbour of ours was married this day; *Quelq; vostre compagnon se recommande à vous*, Some companion of yours remembreth himselfe to you.

The last ranck, viz. that which hath a definite article ioyned with it, is onely *Postpositive*: and doth not require to have ſy Substantive expressed, but hath relation to the *Substantive* going before: as *Pour ce que mon cheval se deult d'un pied, ie vous prie me prester le vostre*, My horse is lame of one foote: and therefore I pray lend mee yours.

For the *plurall* number, it is carefully to be observed, that the *first* ranks are onely *Adjectives*, and *Prepositive* altogether after the manner of *Mon, ton, son*: that is to say, they serve before *Substantives* which are expressed: as *Ceux qui sont nos voisins, ne sont tous-jours nos amis*, Those which are our neighbours, are not alwayes our freinds; *Possédez vos ames en patience*, Possesse your soules in patience, we may not say *nostres voisins, vostres ames*.

The other *definite* ranks, [*viz.* those cases which are ioyned with definite articles] are onely *Postpositive Relatives*; as *Nos chevaux sont meilleurs que les vôtres*, Our horses are better then yours; *Vos habits ressemblent aux nôtres*, Your habits are like to ours; *Des quels arbres avez vous cueilli ces beaux fruits?* From what trees, gathered you these faire fruites? *Des nôtres, des vôtres*, From ours, from yours.

Sometimes, we vse the Pronounne *vostre*, though wee speake but to one person: and this wee doe, to signify *honour* and *respect*, as I said before in the rules of the Pronounne *tu*, instead of which wee say *vous*; as *Monseigneur, je me recommande a vostre bonne grace*, Sir I recommend my selfe to your good favour; And you are to note that it would be ridiculous, in the same sentence or discourse, first to say *tu, ton, tien*, and afterwards to say *vous, vostre*, if still you meane the same person, which I have

seene some strangers doe: Therefore take heed of this error, and continue the same stile, in which you beginne:

Leur, is declined like the Pronounes aforesaid, and vsed in the same manner: for as *nostre* implieth many possessours in the first person, and *vostre* in the second, so *leur* in the third. And being an Adiectiue like them, it must agree with its Substantiue.

Masc. Singular,		
Nom.	{ 1 <i>Leur,</i>	} Their.
&	{ 2 <i>un leur,</i>	
Accus.	{ 1 <i>le leur,</i>	
Fem. Singular.		
Nom.	{ 1 <i>leur</i>	} Their.
&	{ 2 <i>une leur,</i>	
Accus.	{ 3 <i>la leur,</i>	
Plur. Masc. and Fem.		
Nom.	{ 1 <i>leurs</i>	} Theirs.
&	{ 2 <i>des leurs,</i>	
Accus.	{ 3 <i>les leurs,</i>	
Masc. Singular.		
Gen.	{ 1 <i>de leur,</i>	} Of their,
&	{ 2 <i>d' un leur,</i>	
Ablat.	{ 3 <i>du leur,</i>	

It is declined (as I said before) like the former Pronounes, viz. *mien*, *tien*, *sien*, *nostre* *vostre*, and therefore I shall need to adde no more. And were it not that I finde many learners of our language, at a losse, in the vse of this Possessive, it would be enough

enough to say that it is used altogether like *nostre*, and *vostre*, without speaking particularly of it; but partly for this reason, and partly because the Latins have no Pronoun answerable to it, I will not omit any thing that shall be needfull.

First remember what I said in the rules of the personall Pronounes, viz. *leur* before a Verbe, is not a possessive but a personall Dative of the Plurall number, in Latine *illis* and *ipsis* are used instead of it.

That which remaineth to be said, is, that *Leur* without an Article, is both a *Prepositive Adjective*, and a *Postpositive responsive*, like *nostre* and *vostre*; as *Leur train ne tend qu' a toute vanité*, Their plot aymeth at nothing but vanity of all sorts; *Leur cœur, est fin, faux, et couvert*, Their heart is crafty, false, and close; *Leur gosier est un sepulchre ouvert*, Their throat is an open sepulcher; *De menterie fauce et vaine leur langue est pleine*, Their tongue is full of false and vaine lying; Likewise, *A qui est ce livre?* Whose booke is this; *Leur, Theirs*; *Il est leur*, It is theirs; *C' est le leur*, It is theirs, *il est d' eux*, It belongeth to them.

The other ranks, [viz. the second and third] follow the Syntaxe of the aforesaid Pronounes, *mien, tien, sien, nostre, vostre*; as *Vo leur amy*, A friend of theirs; *Vo leur voisine*, A neighbour of theirs. Likewise *Les hommes font moins de cas de la perte d'autrui, que de la leur*, Men take lesse care for another mans losse then theyr owne.

Though the Substantive, of this Possessive, be of the *Plurall* number, there is still *the same* correspondence betweene them; and when the Substantive (which still signifieth the thing possessed) is of the Singular number, *Leur* is Singular; when it is of *ſ* Plur, *leur* also is of the Plur. number; an example of the Sing. number is this; *Ditez a nos amis qu'ils ayent ſoin de leur ſanté, nous recommandant a leur bonne grace*, Bid our friends to have a care of theyr health, and recommend us to their good favour; Examples of the *Plurall* number are theſe; *Les bons Roys aiment leurs ſubjets, comme leurs enfans*, Good Kings love theyr ſubjects as theyr children; *Les avaricieux idololârent leurs richesses*; Covetuous men make an Idoll of theyr wealth; *A qui ſont ces livres?* Whoſe bookes are theſe? *Leurs*, Theyrs; *ils ſont les leurs*, They are theirs; *Ce ſont leurs*, they are theyrs; *Ils ſont a eux*, They belong to them; *Et ces bagues?* And theſe rings, whoſe are they? *Leurs*, Theirs; *elles ſont leurs*, They be theyrs; *Ce ſont les leurs*, They be theirs; *Ce ſont leurs bagues*, They be theyr ringes; *Elles ſont à elles*, They belong to them. The two firſt waies of answering, are not *uſuall*, but good notwithstanding.

The *Latines*, not having a *Pronoun* to answer this, expreſſe it by the *Genitive* caſes of the *Plurall* number *illorum, eorum, ipſorum*, and ſuch like, or elſe by the *reciprocall Poſſeſſive ſum, ſus, ſuum*, when it fitteth better, which in the examples aforeſaid it doth not.

Of Indefinite Pronounes.

I Call those Indefinite Pronounes, which signifie some person or thing, but not certainly *which*, or *what* it is: &c. for such I take, *Quelq;* some, *quelcun*, some body, *aucun*, any body, *chaque*, every, *chacun*, every body, *quiconq;* whosoever or whatsoever, *quelconq;* whosoever, or whatsoever, *Pas un* none at all, *autre*, other, *autrui* an other man, *nul*, none, *nulli* noe body, *mesme*, the same.

Quelq; Sing. *quelques*, Plur. are of the Masc. and Fem. gender.

Quelcun, Masc. Sing. *quelques-uns*, Masc. Plur. *quelcune*, Fem. Sing. *quelques-unes*, Fem. Plurall, are all ioyned with Indefinite articles, they differ in use, but not in signification, For *quelq;* is merely an Adiective, and must have its Substantive expressed after it: as *quelq;* homme some man, *quelque femme*, some woman, *quelque bien*, some good.

Quelcun, (which also may be written *quelqu'un*) is a Substantive, and will not have another Substantive joyned with it, except it be in the Genitive case: as *quelcun vous demande*, Some body asketh for you; when it hath a Noun Substantive of the Genitive case after it, *quelcun* is a Partitive; as *quelcun de mes amis*, Some of my friends; *quelcun d'entre vous*, Some among you; *Preste moi quelcune de vos chemises*, lend mee one of your shirts; in Latine they signifie *aliquis*, *quispiam*.

A Discourse concerning the applying of the Coniunction Que after qui, quel, quelle, quoy.

Quiq; signifyeth whosoever, in Latine it is *Quisquis*, *quicumque*; *Quelque* Mascul. *quelle-que* Fem. of what kind soever; in Latine it is *qualiscunque*: and they are to be joyned with a *Nominative Case* and a *Verbe*, as you shall see in the following examples, which I would have you take for a *Rule*: as *le suis prest d'obeir a vos commandemens*, *quels-qu' ils soyent*, or *quels soyent ils*, or *quels qu' ilz puissent estre*, or *quels puissent ils estre*; I am ready to obey your commands whatsoever they be; *Il faut se contenter chacun de sa condition*, *quelle-qu' elle soit*, *quelle soit elle*, *quelle qu' elle puisse estre*, *quelle puisse elle estre*: every man must be content with his condition whatsoever it be. *Il n' est pas licite de murmurer en affliction* *quelle-que Dieu l' envoie*, or *quelle-que Dieu la vueille envoyer*: It is unlawfull to murmur in affliction, whatsoever God sendeth.

If the *Substantive*, to whom the Sentence is addressed, be a *person*, you may use *qui-que*; as *je ne vous crain*, *quiq; vous soyez*, *qui-que puissiez estre*, *qui puissiez vous estre*, I feare you not be you what you may be.

We

We doe also expresse the *same Phrases*, by the Indefinite *quelq;*, but the *Substantive* must follow *quelq;*, or if the *Substantive* goe before, the *Adjective* must follow it. Marke well this order. *Je ne vous crain point quelque grand que vous soyez*, I feare you not, how great soever you be. *J' obeiray a vos commandemens, quelques difficiles qu' ils soient*, I will obey your commands, how hard soever they be. You may say also elegantly, *J' obeiray a vos commandemens, pour grands et difficiles qu' ils soient*. *Je me contente de ma condition pour petite or quelque petite qu' elle soit*, I am content with my condition, how meane soever it be.

Note heere, that the *Verbe* is alwayes of the *Optative Mood*.

In these following Phrases, the Relative *Qui*, may serve for a *Nominative Case* to the *Verbe* of the *Subjunctive Mood*. As, *L' homme sage et vertueux, ne se desconforte pour calamité*, or *quel-que calamité qui luy advienc*: et ne s' enorgueillit point pour prosperité, or *quelque prosperité qui luy arrive*: The wise and vertuous man is not discomforted, what calamity soever befall him.

Quoy-que, sometimes signifyeth *quic-queid* whatsoever; as, *quoy-que vous me faciez*, whatsoever you doe to me; *quoy-qu' il y ait*, whatsoever there is; *quoy-que ce soit*, whatsoever it is: *De quoy-que vous luy parliez*, whatsoever you speake to him of. *A quoy-que vous vous apportiez*, whatsoever you referre your selfe to.

Some-

Sometime it signifyeth *quandvis* although; as quoy-que vous me baïssiez si ne vous fis je jamais tort, Though you hate me, yet I never did you wrong. Quoy-que je soye pauvre, toutesfois j' aime l' honneur, Though I be poore, yet I love honour. Quoy-que vous faciez peu de cas de moy, si est ce que je vous vauz bien, Though you slight me, yet I am as good a man as you.

Aucun, sing. *aucuns*, plur. Masc. *aucune*, sing. *aucunes*, plur. fem. signifie any, and are joyned with the Indefinite Articles *de*, *a*, *en*, as other Indefinites are. They may be put cyther *with* or *without* a *Substantive*, before *thē*, or *after* them, as you please. They serve better in *Negative*, *Cōditionall*, *Interrogative*, or *doubtfull* sentences, then in others. As, *je ne cognoy aucun en ceste Ville*, I know not any in this Towne. *le n' ay eu aucunes nouvelles de mon païs*, I have had no Newes from my Country. *Avez vous accointance aucune avec cet homme?* Have you any acquaintance with this man? *Je doute si je trouveray aucun qui me face faveur*, I doubt whither I shall finde any man to doe me favour. Except in these Phrases aforesayd, *aucun*, and *aucune*, doe not suit so well, unlesse it be in the *Plurall* number, wherein they signifie *nonnulli*, *nonnullæ* some, as *Aucuns se sont tenuz a leur thresor*, Some are wedded to their wealth. *On en void aucuns qui n' ont que la piasse et point d' argente*, A man may see some, that have no mony, but bravadoes good store. When they be *thm* in the *Plurall* number,

the

the Article *les*, is sometimes joyned with them, in the *Nom.* and in the *Accusat.* Case.

The difference betweene *aucun*, *aucune*, and *quelque quelcun*, is worth noting. For *quelque, quelcun* fit best in *Affirmation*, and *aucun* in *Negation*: otherwise they differ not.

Chaque, chaque every, are *Adjectives* both of the *Masc.* and *Fem.* Gender, alwayes joyned with *Indefinite Articles*, and must have their *Substantives expressed after them*: as *Chaque homme*, every man; *chaque femme*, every woman; *chaques personnes*, all kind of persons.

Chacun, sing. *chacuns* plurall masc. *Chacune* Sing. *chacunes* plur. Fem. signifie the same that *chaque* and *chaques* doe; and are joyned with the same *Articles*. But it may be without a *Substantive expressly* set downe; as *Chacun aime son plaisir*, every one hath his delight. A *chacun* plaist tout ce qu'il fait, every man liketh all that he doth himselfe. It may also have a *Substantive* joyned with it: as *Chacun homme doit avoir sa femme* et *chacune femme son mari*, Every man must have his wife, and every woman her husband. The *Plurall number*, is usuall enough, after *Touts* and *toutes*, in this manner: *Il oblige tous et chacuns ses biens, venus, et a venir, renouant a toutes et chacunes loix, costumes, et ordonnances a ce contraires*, Hee bindeth all and every part of his goods which he hath in present, or shall hereafter possesse: and renounceth all and every *Law, Custome, and Order* to the contrary.

Some

Sometimes we use *these words following*, with *chacun* *chacune*; viz. *un une, uns ues*; as *un chacun* homme, every man whatsoever; *une* *chacune* Ville, every Towne.

When a *Genitive Case* followeth *chacun*, it is a *Partitive*. *Chacun de vous* prene sa part, Let each of you take his share. In Latine it is *quisvis*, or *quilibet*.

Quiconque whosoever, is joyned with the *same Indefinite Articles*, It wanteth the *Plural* Number, and is joyned to a *Verbe* in a Sentence, without a *Substantive*: in Latine it is *quicumq;*: as, *quiconque* veut vivre sainement, qu' il vive sobrement, whosoever will live in health, let him live soberly. *Quiconq; sois, tant sois tu brave, &c.* whosoever you are, be you never so brave.

Quelconq; Sing. *Quelconques* Plur. of what kind soever, haue the *same Indefinite Articles*; they are used in *Negations*, *Interrogations*, *Conditionall* and *Doubting Sentences*, and after the *Noun* *Substantive*: as *Je ne voy* raison *quelconque* en *vostre* dire, I see no reason in what you say: *Avez vous* ouy *nouvelles* *quelconques* de *vos* affaires? Have you heard any Newes of your businesse? *Si je m'apperçoy* de faute *quelconq;*, je *vous en* advertiray, If I perceive any fault, I will give you notice of it. *Cherchez si* *vous* trouverez chose *quelconque* qui *vous* appartient, See if you can find any thing that belongeth to you. Instead of *quelconq;* you may put *aucun* *aucune*, in all these examples; in Latine they

they may be rendred by *ullus ulla*.

Nul, Sing. *Nulle*, Plur. Masc. *Nulle* Singul. *Nulles* Plur. Fem. signifying none; as also, *Nulli* no body, have the *same Indefinite Articles*: *viz.* *d', à, en*.

Nul, may be joyned to a *Verbe* in a sentence, *eyther without*, or *with* a *Substantive*: as, *nul ne vid onques Dieu*, none ever saw God. *Nul ne m' a aidé en ma defence*, no man hath helped me to defend my selfe. In the *Fem. Gender* it doth *not* runne so well *without* a *Substantive*: and therefore we say, *le n' ay commis nulle faute*, I have not committed any fault. *Il n' a nulle connoissance de vos affaires*, He hath no knowledge of your businesse. They seeme here to signifie *ullus, ulla* any, because we joyne the *Negative* particle *ne* to the *Verbe*, notwithstanding we put *nul nulle* after it. You may also, instead of *nul nulle*, in these Phrases put *aucun*, or *quelconq;* after the *Noun* *Substantive*.

Yet in an *absolute answer* we must say, *nul*, or *nulle*, without a *Substantive*: as *connoissez vous quelcun icy?* doe you know any man here? *Resp. Nul none*.

If *nul nulle* be joyned to any *Substantive*, as an *attribute*, after the *Verbe* *Substantive*, or any other *Verbe* of like nature; they signifie *nullus, nulla* none: as *vostre procedure est nulle*, or *n' est pas nulle*, your proceedings are as much as come to nothing. *Cet argument est nul*, or *n' est pas nul*, this Argument is no argument.

Autrui an other, *L'autrui* that which belongeth to another, are thus declined,

Nom.	}	<i>Autrui</i> , an other man or woman.
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>D'autrui</i> , of an other man or woman
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>Autrui</i> , to another man or woman. <i>En autrui</i> , in another man or woman.
Nom.	}	<i>L'autrui</i> , that which is anothers.
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>De l'autrui</i> , of that which is anothers.
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>Autrui</i> , to that which is anothers. <i>En l'autrui</i> , in that which is anothers.

Autrui, hath *noe* *Plurall* number: in *Latine* it is *Alter*, it differeth from *l'Autrui*, because it is not applyed *but* to *persons*, and is ioyned to *Verbs* like a *Substantive*; as *N' offence point autrui*, Offend not another man; *C' est mal fait de mesdire d' autrui*, it is ill done to speake ill of another man; *Ne faites a autrui que ce que vous voudriez vous estre fait*, Doe nothing to another man but what you would have done to your selfe.

L'autrui signifieth the *goods*, *possession*, or *any thing* which belongeth to *another man*; as *Plusieurs ne font conscience de ravir l'autrui*, Many make no conscience of taking away that, which is another mans; *le ne veux rien de l'autrui*, I will

will have nothing that is another mans ; A l'autruy *ne porte envie*, Covet not that which is another mans ; in Latine it is *Alienum*.

It is not now much from the purpose, to tell you that *all Pronounes Possessive*, have the *same emphaticall* signification, when they are *put absolutely*, in the Singular number, with an *Indefinite* article : such are *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* *A chacun le sien, n'est pas trop*, noe mans possession in his owne opinion is too great ; *Qui perd le sien, perd le sens*, He that looseth his wealth, looseth his wit too ; *le ne veux rien du vostre, mais aussi je ne vous donneray pas le mien*, I desire nothing that is yours, nor will I give you any thing that is mine ; *Plusieurs s'enrichissent en meslant l'autruy avec le leur*, Many grow rich by mingling theyr estates with other mens.

But in the *Plurall* number, by *les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nostres, les vostres, persons* are meant ; as *Il n'est pas vray pere de famille, qui n'a soin des siens*, He is no true father of a family that hath not care of those which are his ; *le ne crain ny vous, ny les vostres*, I feare neither you, nor yours ; *Les nostres ont gagné la bataille*, that is to say, *Ceux de nostre part, &c.* Those of our side have got the field.

Celuy, and *ceux*, are allwayes vnderstood of *persons*, if noe certaine *Antecedent* went before, *Ceux de chez nous*, that is to say, *nos domestiques*, Those of our house ; *Ceux de Paris, ceux d'Orleans*, They of *Paris*, those of *Orleans*, that is to say, the inhabitants of *Paris* and *Orleans* ;

Nulli, is in a manner a *Substantive*, and will not be joyned to any other Substantive : it signifyeth *nemo* no body ; it is both of the Masc. and Fem. Gender, and is joyned with the *Indefinite Articles* aforesayd : as *Ce que ne veulez estre sçeu ne le dites* a nulli, Tell no body that which you would not have knowne. Our Forefathers used this word oftner then wee doe. We say *Personne* instead of it : which is a Nounc Substantive of of the Feminine Gender, and as much as *Persona* in Latine; but we use it in a Sentence for *nemo*, with *ne* a Particle of Negation, before a Verbe, or in an *absolute answer*. And taking it in this sense, I put it among the Pronounes : it admits none but the Indefinite Articles, and is onely of the *sing.* number. As, *Je ne connoy personne icy*, I know no body heere. *Ce que je sçay, je ne l'ay appris de Personne*, That which I knew I learned from no man. *Ne fiez a Personne vostre secret*, Trust no man with your secret. And so likewise in *Interrogations*, and in *Conditionall* or *Doubting* Sentences, which alwayes follow the Rules of the *Negations* ; as *ne connoissez vous personne icy ?* Doe you know no body here ? It serveth also in an *absolute answer* : as *qui est au logis ?* who is in the house. *Resp. Personne*, no body. *De qui tenez vous ce secret ?* From whom have you this secret ? *Resp. de personne*, frō no body. *A qui l'avez vous ouy dire*, who did you heare speake it ? *Resp. A personne*, no body.

The common people use the word *ame* a soule, in the same sense; as *Je n'ay veu ame a qui parler* I saw no Soule to speake to.

Pas

Pas un, masc. *pas une* fem. none in the world, is used with the same *Indefinite Articles*, instead of *Nul*, *Personne*, and the other *Negatives*. It is used when we speake of a *whole* thing: as, *Je n'ay pas un denier en ma bourse*, I have not one penny in the world in my purse. *Pas une goutte de vin en ma cave*, *pas un grain de bled en mon grenier*; not one drop of wine in my Cellar, nor one graine of wheat in my Granary. It were unproper to say, *je n'ay pas un argent*, *pas un vin*, *pas un bled*, but rather *point d'argent*, *point de vin*, *point de bled*. I have no mony, no wine, no wheat, as I have already sayd in convenient place. Also when we speake of *Persons*, we say: *Il n'y a pas un au logis*, There is not so much as one in the house. *Je n'ay appris de pas un*, *ce que je sçay*, no body in the world taught me that which I know.

Pas un, before a *Noun*, or a *Pronoun* of the *Genitive Case*, is a *Partitive*, as the other *Negatives* are: as in *Vous estes plus riche que pas une de vos compaignes*, You are richer then any one of your Companions. *Ceste Damoiselle me semble plus belle que pas une de ses sœurs*, This Gentlewoman seemeth to me fairer then any of her Sisters.

Autre other, is a *mere Adjective*, and hath no particular Rule concerning it, but only those which concerne *all Adjectives* in *generall*, that are of the *Masculine* and *Feminine Gender*: in *Latine* it is *alius*, *alia*, *aliud*, *alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.

Autrui

Autruy an other, *L'autruy* that which belongeth to another, are thus declined,

Nom.	}	<i>Autruy</i> , an other man or woman.
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>D'autruy</i> , of an other man or woman
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>A autruy</i> , to another man or woman.
		<i>En autruy</i> , in another man or woman.

Nom.	}	<i>L'autruy</i> , that which is anothers.
Accus.		
Gen.	}	<i>De l'autruy</i> , of that which is anothers.
Ablat.		
Dat.	}	<i>A autruy</i> , to that which is anothers.
		<i>En l'autruy</i> , in that which is anothers.

Autruy, hath noe *Plurall* number: in *Latine* it is *Alter*, it differeth from *l'Autruy*, because it is not applyed but to persons, and is ioyned to Verbs like a Substantive; as *N' offence point autruy*, Offend not another man; *C'est mal fait de mesdire d'autruy*, it is ill done to speake ill of another man; *Ne faites a autruy que ce que vous voudriez vous estre fait*, Doe nothing to another man but what you would have done to your selfe.

L'autruy signifieth the goods, possession, or any thing which belongeth to another man; as *Plusieurs ne font conscience de ravir l'autruy*, Many make no conscience of taking away that, which is another mans; *le ne veux rien de l'autruy*, I will

will have nothing that is another mans ; *Al'autruy ne porte envie*, Covet not that which is another mans ; in Latine it is *Alienum*.

It is not now much from the purpose, to tell you that *all Pronounes Possessive*, have the same *emphaticall* signification, when they are put *absolutely*, in the Singular number, with an *Indefinite* article : such are *le mien, le tien, le sien, &c.* *Chacun le sien, n'est pas trop*, noe mans possession in his owne opinion is too great ; *Qui perd le sien, perd le sens*, He that looseth his wealth, looseth his wit too ; *Je ne veux rien du vostre, mais aussi je ne vous donneray pas le mien*, I desire nothing that is yours, nor will I give you any thing that is mine ; *Plusieurs s'enrichissent en meslant l'autruy avec le leur*, Many grow rich by mingling theyr estates with other mens.

But in the *Plurall* number, by *les miens, les tiens, les siens, les nostres, les vostres, persons* are meant ; as *Il n'est pas vray pere de famille, qui n'a soin des siens*, He is no true father of a family that hath not care of those which are his ; *Je ne crain ny vous, ny les vostres*, I feare neither you, nor yours ; *Les nostres ont gagné la bataille*, that is to say, *Ceux de nostre part, &c.* Those of our side have got the field.

Celuy, and *ceux*, are allwayes vnderstood of persons, if noe certaine *Antecedent* went before, *Ceux de chez nous*, that is to say, *nos domestiques*, Those of our house ; *Ceux de Paris, ceux d'Orleans*, They of *Paris*, those of *Orleans*, that is to say, the inhabitants of *Paris* and *Orleans* ;

Ceux de la religion, ceux de la ligue, The men of the religion, the men of the league. Among the common people, the *woman*, speaking of her husband, saith sometimes, *Celuy de chez nous*, Our good man at home; and the *husband*, speaking of his wife, saith, *Celle de chez nous*, Our dame at home.

Des miènes, des tiènes, des siènes, des nôtres des vôtres, des leurs, being of the *Genitive* and *Ablat* Case, *Fem.* gender, and *Plurall* number, without substantives, are emphatically understood by an *Eclipsis*, of fooleries, of toys, bravadoes, or some such Substantives in a bad sense. *Quand vous m' aurez fait endurer les vôtres, je pourray bien faire les miènes*, I may well play my trickes, now you have made me endure yours, *Auras tu tantost assez des tiènes*, What will you make an end there of your quilllets?

Mesme, is a true and a meere Adjective, and may have all the Articles ioyned with it: in *Latine* it is *idem, eadem*, the same; as *Mesme cause, en mesme sujet, disposé en mesme, doit produire mesme effect*, The same cause, dispos'd in the same manner, and vpon the same subject, produceth the same effect.

When it is ioyned to a Pronoun, *mesme* is as much as the conjunction *met*: as *moy-mesme, ego-met*, I my selfe; *Luy-mesme, ipse-met*, he himselfe; *ce mesme homme, ipse-met*, that man himselfe; and it may be ioyned to all the pronounes, but *Je, tu, il, ils, me, te, se*: as also to all other Subst. or Adject. ; Examples of this kind are so frequent:

frequent every where, that it is not needfull, in this place, to set downe any of them.

Of a Verbe.

Strangers are generally of opinion, that it is very hard to vnderstand our Verbes; I is see indeed; but if they will take my word, I will promise them an easie way, to the knowledge of them.

First, let them learne exactly without booke, these examples which I shall heere set downe at length. Then let them reduce all other Verbes to them, by the rules which I shall give them, concerning the *forming* or *drawing* of *Tenses* and *Persons*, one from another; I have found by experience among my Schollers, that a fortnights time or thereabouts (which is not much) will serve the turne.

The first Verbe to be learned, is *I' ay*, I have; which hath an *Active signification*; and it is called *Auxiliary*, because it *helpeth* to coniugate other Verbes.

Indicative Mood.

Present	{	1 <i>I' ay</i> , I have.
tense		2 <i>Tu as</i> , thou hast.
singular		3 <i>Il a</i> , he hath.

Q 2

Plurall

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous avons*, wee
 2 *Vous avez*, yee
 3 *ils ont*, they } have.

Preterim-
 perf. tense { 1 *I' avoy*,
 singular { 1 *I' avoye*, } I had.
 { 1 *I' avois* }

2 *Tu avois*, thou hadst.3 *Il avoit*, he had.

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous avions*, wee
 2 *Vous aviez*, yee
 3 *Ils avoyent*, they } had.

The first Preter-perfect tense, Simple, and Indefinite.

Singular.

{ 1 *I' eu*, I had.
 2 *tu eus*, thou hadst.
 3 *Il eut*, he had:

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous eumes*, wee
 2 *Vous eustes*, yee
 3 *Ils eurent*, they } had.

* viz of the present tense
 I'ay I have,
 and the participle of the
 Passive voice
 eu had.

The second Preter-perfect tense, * compounded and Indefinite.

Singular.

{ 1 *I' ay eu*, I have
 2 *Tu as eu*, thou hast
 3 *Il a eu*, he hath } had.

Plurall.

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous avons eu*, wee have
 2 *Vous avez eu*, yee have } had.
 3 *Ils ont eu*, they have }

Preterplu- { 1 *J' avoy eu*, I had
 perf. tense { 2 *Tu avois eu*, thou hadst } had.
 singular. { 3 *Il avoit eu*, he had }

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous avons eu*, wee
 2 *Vous avez eu*, yee } had had
 3 *Ils avoyent eu*, they }

Future { 1 *J' auray*, I shall
 tense { 2 *tu auras*, thou shalt } have.
 singul. { 3 *Il aura*, he shall }

Plurall.

{ 1 *Nous aurons*, wee
 { 2 *Vous aurez*, ye } shall have.
 { 3 *Ils auront*, they }

The Imperative.

Present { It hath noe first person singular.
 tense { 2 *Aye*, have thou.
 singul. { 3 *Qu' il ait*, or *aye*, let him have.

Plurall.

{ 1 *Ayons*, let us have.
 { 2 *Ayez*, have yee.
 { 3 *Qu' ils ayent*, let them have.

*Optative Mood.**A la miéne volonté que, I pray God.*

Singular.

Present & { 1 *J'aye*, I have
 Future { 2 *Tu ayes*, thou hast,
 tense: { 3 *Il aye*, he hath.

Plurall.

1 *Nous ayons*, wee }
 2 *Vous ayez*, yee } have.
 3 *Ils ayent*, they }

Pleust a Dieu, I pray God.

1 Preterim- { 1 *J'eusse*, I had.
 perf. tense { 2 *Tu eusses*, thou hadst.
 Singular. { 3 *Il eust* and *eusse*, he had.

Plurall.

1 *Nous eussions*, wee }
 2 *Vous eussiez*, yee } had.
 3 *Ils eussent*, they }

Pleust a Dieu, I would God.

Singular.

2 Preter- { 1 *J'auroy*, I might
 imperfect { 2 *Tu aurois*, thou mightst } have.
 tense. { 3 *Il aurait*, he might }

Plurall.

1 *Nous aurions*, wee }
 2 *Vous auriez*, yee } might have.
 3 *Ils auroient*, they }

Preterperf.

Preterperfect tense ; *a la miéne volonté que,*

God grant

Singular.

- 1 *J'aye eu,* I have }
 2 *Tu ayes eu,* thou hast } had.
 3 *Il ait or aye eu,* he hath }

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous ayons eu,* wee }
 2 *Vous ayez eu,* yee } have had.
 3 *Ils ayent eu,* they }

The first Preterpluperf. tense : *Pleust á dieu que*

I would God.

Singular.

- 1 *J'eusse eu,* I had had.
 2 *Tu eusses eu,* thou hadst had.
 3 *Il eut eu,* he had had.

Plur.

- 1 *Nous eussions eu,* wee }
 2 *Vous eussiez eu,* yee } had had.
 3 *Ils eussent eu,* they }

The second Preterpluperf. tense : *Volontiers*

I would God,

Singular.

- 1 *J'auroy eu,* I might }
 2 *Tu aurois eu,* thou mightst } have had.
 3 *Il auroit eu* he might }

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous aurions eu,* wee }
 2 *Vous auriez eu,* yee } might have had.
 3 *Ils auroient eu,* they }

The *Subjunctive Mood* is altogether like the *Optative*, save that it hath a *Future Tense* of its owne, Here is nothing else to be observed, but how the *Conjunctions* are applyed to the *Verbes*: to this purpose, observe what followeth.

Tant que while that, *jusques a tant que*, or *jusques a ce que*, untill that, may be applyed to all *Tenses* of the *Subjunctive Mood*.

Bien que, *combien que*, *ore que*, *encore que*, *ja-soit que*, although; *Soit que*, whether; *Pourveu que*, so that; *mais que* on condition that; *Comme ainfi soit que*, notwithstanding that; *ains que*, *ainsois que*, or ere; *Avant que*, *premier que*, before that; are joyned to the *Present Tense*, and the *first Præterimperfect Tense*, the *Præterperfect*, and the *first Præterpluperfect Tense*.

Comme, as; *fust que*, though; *comme ainfi fust que*, notwithstanding that; suite very well with the *first Præterimperfect*, and the *first Præterpluperfect Tense*, and may also bee joyned with the *second Præterpluperfect Tense*.

Quand, *lors-que*, when, when as; *Si* if; *si tost-que*, so soone as; *Si est ce que*, notwithstanding; agree well with the 2. *Præterimperfect*, the 2. *Præterpluperfect*, and the *Future Tense*: And the other *Conjunctive Phrases*, in some cases may be used with these *Tenses*, as well as with the others.

The

The Future Tense of the Subjunctive

Mood: *Quand*, when.

Sing.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--------|
| 1 | <i>J'auray eu</i> , I shall have | } had. |
| 2 | <i>Tu auras eu</i> : thou shalt have | |
| 3 | <i>Il aura eu</i> , he shall have | |

Plur.

- | | | |
|---|--|--------|
| 1 | <i>Nous aurons eu</i> , we shall have | } had. |
| 2 | <i>Vous aurez eu</i> , yee shall have | |
| 3 | <i>Ils auront eu</i> , they shall have | |

The Infinitive.

THE Present Tense, and Præterimperfect tense,
avoir to have.

The Præterperfect, and Præterpluperfect tense,
avoir eu, to have had.

The Participle.

THE Present and Præterimperfect Tense of
the Active voice, *ayant* having.

The Præterperfect and Præterpluperfect tense
of the Active voice, *ayant eu*, having had.

The Præterperfect Tense of the Passive voice, *eu*,
ordinarily I call *Common*. *Eu*, masc. *euë*, fẽ. had.

The Latine *Participles* of the *Future* Tense,
are rendred in French divers wayes.

We expresse it most often by the *Future* Tense,
of the *Indicative* Mood, viz. when the *Principal*
Verbe

Verbe in the Sentence is of the *Present Tense*. We expresse it also often, by the second *Præter-imperfect Tense* of the *Subjunctive Mood*, when the *chiefe Verbe* in the Sentence, is of the *Præter-perfect tense*: and we alwayes use cyther the *Conjunction que*, or the *Relatives qui* and *lequel* with it; as *Spero me habiturum*, I hope I shall have. *j' espere que j' auray; te habiturum*, That thou shalt have: *Que tu auras*; *Petrus habiturum*, That *Peter* shall have: *Que Pierre aura*; *nos habituros*, that wee shall have: *Que nous aurons &c*: We use also these *Phrases*; *Que je dois avoir*, that I shall have; *Que tu dois avoir*, that thou shalt have; or *Que je suis pour avoir*; that I am to have; *Que tu es pour avoir*, that thou art to have: When a *thing* to come is *neere at hand*, we say *Que je vay avoir*, which I am shortly to have; *Que tu vas avoir*, which thou shalt shortly have. *Educatur scitus puerulus Principatum Franciæ habiturus*, There is a jolly Boy a comming on, that shall be King of *France*; [in French we render it thus:] *On nourrit un joli enfant on qui aura*, and *qui doit avoir*, *qui est pour avoir*, and if the thing mentioned be *neere at hand*, we say *Qui va avoir*; We doe expresse this *Future Tense* of the Latine *Participle*, by the Verbe *Vouloir* to will, and say, *Qui veut avoir*, which will have; as, *Magnanimus Rex habiturus Regni Curam Tyrannos, primum pro-bernere decrevit*, This stout King, which will have a care of his Kingdome, will first plucke

plucke downe the Tyrants. *Ce magnanime roy allant prendre soin, or voulant avoir soin de son Royaume, resolut premier d'abbatre les Tyrans.*

VWhen the *chiefe Verbe* in the Sentence, is of the *Præterimperfect* or *Præterperfect* Tense, we say *je pensois que tu aurois*, I thought that thou should'st have; *I' ay creu que vous auriez*, I beleevved that you would have; *I' auray, je dois avoir, je suis pour avoir, je vay avoir, je veux avoir*, I shall or will have; There is some difference betweene these Phrases; Especially in the *First*, which implyeth a thing that shall more certainly be: we must therefore use Discretion, in choosing the most fitting phrase for our purpose: So when wee would expresse *Habitus eram*, I was to have: wee say, *je devoay avoir, j' estoay pour avoir, I' alloay avoir.*

We expresse the *Gerunds* and *Supines* divers wayes, as shall best fit our purpose; for *Habitu ire*, about to have, we say, *aller avoir, pres d' avoir*; for *Habitu*, about to be had, we say, *d' estre eu, à avoir; digne d' estre eu*, worthy to bee had; *Difficile à avoir*, hard to be had; *Habendi*, of having: *d' avoir*; as *Convoitise d' avoir*, desire of Having; *Habendo* in having, *ayant, en ayant, à avoir; Habendum* to be had; *avoir, pour avoir*; as *Il faut avoir*, it is to be had; for *habendus*, male. *habenda*, fem. *habendum*

habendum Neut. to be had ; we say, *qu' il faut avoir, qui sera eu, qui doit estre eu, qui est à avoir, qui va estre eu, pres d'estre eu, or eue :* for the Gender of the *Participle*, must vary with the Gender of the *Substantive* with which it must agree.

Here followeth the Conjugation of Iesuis, I am ; which is the auxiliary Verbe for Verbes Passive, Reciprocall, and Neuter.

The Indicative Mood Present Tense

- Singul. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Je suis, I am.} \\ 2 \text{ Tu es, thou art.} \\ 3 \text{ Il est, he is.} \end{array} \right.$
 Plurall.
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ Nous sommes, we are.} \\ 2 \text{ Vous estes, yee are.} \\ 3 \text{ Ils sont, they are.} \end{array} \right.$

The Præterimperfect Tense,

- Sing.
- 1 *J' estois, j' estoie ;* } *I was.*
 or j' estois }
- 2 *Tu estois, thou wast.*
 3 *Il estoit, he was.*
 Plurall.
 1 *Nous estions, we were.*
 2 *Vous estiez, yee were.*
 3 *Ils estoient, they were.*

The first Præterperfect Tense, single
and Definite.

Sing.

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|------|
| 1 | <i>Ie fu</i> , I have | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Tu fu</i> , thou hast | | |
| 3 | <i>Il fut</i> , or <i>fusse</i> , he hath | | |

Plurall.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|------|
| 1 | <i>Nous fusmes</i> , we haue | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Vous fustes</i> , yee have | | |
| 3 | <i>Ils furent</i> , they have | | |

The second Præterperfect Tense, compoun-
ded and Indefinite.

Sing.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|------|
| 1 | <i>I' ay esté</i> , I have | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Tu as esté</i> , thou hast | | |
| 3 | <i>Il a esté</i> , he hath | | |

Plurall.

- | | | | |
|---|----------------------------------|---|------|
| 1 | <i>Nous avons esté</i> , we have | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Vous avez esté</i> , yee have | | |
| 3 | <i>Ils ont esté</i> , they have | | |

The Præterpluperfect Tense;

Singular.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|------|
| 1 | <i>I' avoy esté</i> , I had | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Tu avois esté</i> , thou hadst | | |
| 3 | <i>Il avoit esté</i> , he had | | |

Plurall.

- | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|------|
| 1 | <i>Nous avions esté</i> , wee had | } | bin. |
| 2 | <i>Vous aviez esté</i> , yee have | | |
| 3 | <i>Ils avoyent esté</i> , they have | | |

The

The first redoubled Præterperfect tense, or
Præterpluperfect tense, Definite.

Singular.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|--------|
| 1 | <i>J'eu esté</i> , I have | } bin. |
| 2 | <i>Tu es esté</i> , thou hast | |
| 3 | <i>Il eut esté</i> , he hath | |

Plurall.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|--------|
| 1 | <i>Nous eûmes esté</i> , we | } bin. |
| 2 | <i>Vous eûtes esté</i> , yee | |
| 3 | <i>Ils eurent esté</i> , they | |

The second redoubled Præterperfect tense, or
the Præterpluperfect tense indefinite.

Singular.

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|--------|
| 1 | <i>J'ay eu esté</i> , I had | } bin. |
| 2 | <i>Tu as eu esté</i> , thou hadst | |
| 3 | <i>Il a eu esté</i> , he had | |

Plurall.

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 1 | <i>Nous avons eu esté</i> , we | } had bin. |
| 2 | <i>Vous avez eu esté</i> , yee | |
| 3 | <i>Ils avoyent eu esté</i> , they | |

The Future Tense,

Singular.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------|-------|
| 1 | <i>Je seray</i> , I shall | } be. |
| 2 | <i>Tu seras</i> , thou shalt | |
| 3 | <i>Il sera</i> , he shall | |

Plurall.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1 | <i>Nous serons</i> , we | } shall be. |
| 2 | <i>Vous serez</i> , ye | |
| 3 | <i>Ils seront</i> , they | |

The

The Imperative Mood.

Singular.

- { 1 *sois*, be thou,
3 *Qu' il soit*, let him be.

Plurall.

- { 1 *soyons*, let us be.
2 *soyez*, be yee.
3 *Qu' ils soyent*, let them be.

*The Operative Mood ; the Present
and Future tense.*

à la même volonté que, God grant.

Singular.

- 1 *Je sois*, *soye*, or *sois*, I } be
2 *Tu sois*, thou
3 *Il soit*, he

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous soyons*, we } be.
2 *Vous soyez*, yee
3 *Ils soyent*, they

The first Præterimperfect Tense :
Pleust à Dieu que, I would God.

Singular.

- 1 *Je fusse*, I were.
2 *Tu fusses*, thou wert.
3 *Il fut*, he were.

Plur.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous fussions*, wee }
 2 *Vous fussiez*, yee } were.
 3 *Ils fussent*, they }

The second Preterimperfect tense, *Volontiers*, I
 would God:

Singular.

- 1 *Je seroy, seroye, or serois*, I might or would be.
 2 *Tu serois*, thou mightst or wouldst be.
 3 *Il seroit*, he might or would be.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous serions*, wee }
 2 *Vous seriez*, yee } might or would be.
 3 *Ils seroyent*, they }

The Preter-perfect tense, *a la mienne volonté que*,

I pray God.

Singular.

- 1 *J'aye esté*, I have }
 2 *Tu ayes esté*, thou hast } bin.
 3 *Il ait esté*, he hath }

Plur.

- 1 *Nous ayons esté*, wee }
 2 *Vous ayez esté*, yee } have beene.
 3 *Ils ayent esté*, they }

The 1 Preterpluperfect tense, *Pleust a Dieu que*,

I would God.

Singul.

- 1 *J'eusse esté*, I had }
 2 *Tu eusses esté*, thou hadst } bin.
 3 *Il eust esté*, he had }

Plurall.

Plur.

- | | | | |
|---|---------------------|------|------------|
| 1 | Nous eussions esté, | wee | } had bin. |
| 2 | Vous eussiez esté, | yee | |
| 3 | Ils eussent esté, | they | |

The second Præterpluperfect tense, *Volontiers*,

I would God.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|---|-----------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1 | J' auroye esté, | I should | } have bin. |
| 2 | Tu aurois esté, | thou shouldest | |
| 3 | Il auroit esté, | he should | |

Plurall.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|------|--------------------|
| 1 | Nous aurions esté, | wee | } should have bin. |
| 2 | Vous auriez esté, | yee | |
| 3 | Ils auroient esté, | they | |

The Subjunctive Mood.

All the Tenses of the Optative, and \bar{y} Subjunct. Mood are the same, save onely the Future tense, as was sayd before.

The Future tense, *Quand, when.*

Singul.

- | | | | |
|---|----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 | J' auray esté, | I shall | } have bin. |
| 2 | Tu auras esté, | thou shalt | |
| 3 | Il aura esté, | he shall | |

Plurall.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------|------|-------------------|
| 1 | Nous aurions esté, | wee | } shall have bin. |
| 2 | Vous auriez esté, | yee | |
| 3 | Ils auroient esté, | they | |

R

Infinitive

The Infinitive.

Present and	}	estre, to be.
Preterimperf. tense.		
Preterperf. and	}	avoir esté, to have bin.
Preterpluperf. tense.		

The Particle.

Active voice.	}	Present tense, <i>étant</i> , being.
		Preterperf. and
		Preterpluperf. } <i>ayant esté</i> , ha- ving bin.
Passive voyce	}	Preterperfect tense which I call common, <i>esté</i> , bin.

The *Future* tenses of the *Infinitive* Mood; as also the *Gerands* and *Supines*, may be expressed as they are in the active *Auxiliary Verbe A voir*, as *Futurus* that shall be, *qui sera*; *qui doit estre*, *qui est pour estre*, or *à estre*, *qui est pres d'estre*, *qui va estre*, &c. as was said before.

If you will make a *Verbe Passive*, you must adyne the *Participle* of the *Preterperfect* tense of the *Passive* voice (which by another name I call *Common*) of all *Verbes* whatsoever, to all the *Tenses*, *Numbers* and *Persons*, of this *Verbe* *Je suis*: and for this cause I call it the *Auxiliary Verbe* of the *Passive* voice.

I call

I call the *Participle* of the *Preterperf.* tense of the *Passive* voice *Common*, for two reasons. The *first*, because with it and the *Auxiliary Verbe*, we make diverse tenses: as *I'ay eu*, I have had; *I'aye eu*, I have had, &c. Soe likewise *I'ay esté*, I have bin; *j'ayoy esté*, I had bin; *j'auroy esté*, I should have bin; Where you see the *auxiliary Verbe* changerth in al tenses, as it doth also in al persons, but the *Partic.* remaineth in *Common* to them all.

The second reason is because, though *single* by it selfe it hath a *Passive* signification, yet when it is ioyned to the *Auxiliary Verbe* of the *Active* voice, it maketh *Active* Tenses: as *I'ay aimé*, I have loved; *Tu as aimé*, Thou hast loved; *I'ay escrit*, I have writtten; *tu as escrit*, thou hast writtten; And when it is ioyned to *the Auxil. verbe* of *the Passive* voyce, viz. *le suis*, it hath a *Passive* signification; as I said a little before. Soe wee say, *je suis aimé* I am loved; *Tu es aimé*, Thou art loved; *j'estoy aimé*, I was loved; *je suis escrit*, I am writtten; *Tu es escrit*, Thou art writtten; *j'estoy escrit*, I was writtten.

The like wee must doe throughout all *Moods* and *Tenses*, in both *Numbers*, and in all the three *Persons*: save onely that the *Participle* must agree with his *Substantive* in *Gender* and *Number*: so a woman must say *je suis aimée*, I am loved, not *aimé*; *Vne histoire est écrite*, not *escrit*, a history is writtten.

Note that all *Verbes*, which have theyr *Terminations* formed from the diphthong *oi*, have, *the first* person Singular ending in *oy*, *oye*, or *ois*: as *I'auoy*

j' avoye, j' avois, I had; the *presens* tense onely excepted; Where we onely say, *le voy*, I see; *le doy*, I owe; *le croy*, I beleêve.

All *second persons Plurall* end in *ez*, and that syllable is alwayes long; except the *second person Plurall* of the *first Preterperfect* tense of the *Indicative* Mood; except likewise the *second persons Plurall*, of the *Present* tense of the *Indicative* Mood, of *estre, dire, faire, viz. estes, dites, faites*, which have *e* short.

* except it
be of *ſ* first
conjugation.

This Rule also is not to be despised, that the *third persons singular*, of the *first Preterimperfect* tenses of the *Optative* Mood, have a double termination: the one ending in *ſſe*, the other in *ſt*, which is the most vsed: soe wee say *Il euſt, il euſſe; il fuſt, il fuſſe*; And it is * alwayes like the *third person singular*, of the *first definite preterperf. tense* of the *Indicative* Mood: but the sayd *Preterperf. tense* of the *Indicative* Mood is *short*, and the other, *long*, and hath an *f*, for that purpose, more then other hath; soe wee say *eut, euſt; fut, fuſt; bent, benist*; In French printed books, you ſhall find one put for *ſ* other, either through the negligence of the *compositors*, or for want of good *Correctors*.

Wee call *theſe two Verbes* ordinarily *Auxiliars*, becauſe *all other Verbes*, borrow ſome thing from theſe, to make vp theyr tenſes. It is not therefore poſſible to vnderſtand other Verbes, velleſſe a man firſt learne theſe at his fingers ends, (as wee ſay.) Having therefore ſpoken of theſe, let vs come to the reſt.

Of the severall significations, de-
clinings, and Coniugations
of Verbs.

VEE have three severall wayes of decli-
ning Verbes.

The first is *Active*, viz. when the effect of the action, signified by the Verbe, passeth from the *Agent* to the *Patient*: and these Verbs the Grammarians call *Transitives*; as *J'aime les lettres*, I love learning; *La vertu me plaist*, Vertue pleaseth mee; *Nature tuit le vuide*, Nature abhorreth a *Vacuum*; *J'obeiray au Roy*, I will obey the King; So y in the sentence where these Verbs are, two parties are signified, the one of the *Nom.* case the other of the *Accus.* or *Dative*.

The Second is *Reciprocal* or *Reflected*; viz. when the same Verbes *Active*, doe not transerre there *Action*, vpon any other thing, or Person, but the *Agent* himselfe. Hence is it that these *Actives* doe often signifie some passion of body, or mind; as *Je me delecte à l'estude*, I am delighted with study; *Tu te plais à joüer*, You take pleasure in playng; *Ton Pere s'en fasche*, Thy father is discontented at it; *Tu ne t'en soucies pas*, You care not; In these sentences, the *Nom.* and the *Accus.* or *Dative*, are but one party.

The third sort is *Neuter*, which doth not much differ from the last, in the application of *Auxiliary* Verbe to it: for by this application of the *Auxiliary* Verbe, the action of the Verbe *Neuter* is

signified, especially if it signifie *locall motion*, as *aller*, to goe, *Venir*, to come. They are also *Reciprocall*, as was shovne in the Rules of the Relative particles *y*, and *en*.

These observations being first set downe, wee may divide our Verbs into two kindes *Regular*, and *Irregular*. *Regular* Verbes are those, concerning which a generall *infallible rule* may be given: *Irregular* Verbes are those which *cannot* be learned *by rule*, but have something peculiar: and therefore they must be learned *one by one*.

Yet, because it is the custome to divide them into *four* *Coniugations* like the Latines, I will divide them soe also.

There is some *variety* of opinions in the *ordering* or ranking these *Coniugations*. Some make *that* the *second*, which others make the *third*, and the matter is of noe great importance, whether part you take. For my part I will follow the *Latine Gramarians*, who divide their *Coniugations* according to the order of the *vowels*, and make *a*, the signe of the *first*; *e*, *long* of the *second*; *e*, *short*, of the *third*, and *i*, for the fourth: And this they doe to helpe the Memory.

I will make (according to the rule of the Latines) our *first Coniugation* of these Verbes in which *a*, and *e*, are of *chiefest* note: *viz.* *e*, in the *first person singular* of the *Indicative Mood*, (which I call the *Theme*:) and *a*, in the *first preterperfect* tense of the *Indicative Mood*, which I call *simple* or *uncompounded*, and *definite*; as in

*viz a good Preterperi. Je parlay, I spake; je priay, I *prayed;
while a goe.

ed; *aimer*, to love; *parler*, to speake; *prier*, to pray : and about this Conjugation all men agree without controversy,

I, followeth next, and therefore I allot it for the *second coniugation* : and of this I account all those to be, which have theyr *Theme*, and their *first preterperfect* tense of the *Indicative Mood*, in *i*, and the *Infinitive* in *ir* or *ire*: as in the *Present* and *Preterperf.* *Je gueri*, I heale, or have healed; *Je basti*, I build, or have built; *Je li*, I read, or have read; in the *Infinit.* *guerir* to heale, *bastir* to build, *lire* to read, *escrire* to write.

Next followeth *o*, and therefore, those verbes which have *oy*, in the end of the *Theme*, and *oir* or *oire*, in the end of the *Present* tense of the *Infinitive Mood*, I reckon of the *third Coniugation*: as *Je voy* I see, *Je doy*, I ow, *Je croy*, I beleive; in the *Present* tense; *voir* to see; *devoir* to owe, *croire* to beleive, in the *Infinit. Mood*. Amongst the *Verbs* of this *Coniugation*, I place some which are indeed *Irregular*, (as the most part of these *Verbs* be) but they are so like to *these*, that I know not how to rancke them better.

Those *Verbes*, which haue *re*, in the *Infinitive Mood*, with *c, d, p, r, t, or v*, before it, are of the *4.th Coniugation*; as *vaincre* to overcome, *prendre* to take, *rompre* to breake, *tire* to weave, *clore* to shut, *vivre* to live; which are all *Irregular*, & have all of them a *particular way* by themselves : I will put them in the *ranck* of *Irregular*, after the *Regular Verbes*. To helpe the memory I will here set downe the *Coniugations* in a *briefe scheme*.

1. *Er, e* being Masc, and the syllable long; as *aimer*, to love; *parler*, to speake.

2. *Ir, ire*, as *Bastir* to build; *choisir*, to choose; *lire*, to read; *dire*, to say.

3. *Oir, oire*; as *voir*, to see; *vouloir*, to be willing; *croire*, to believe.

4. *Re*, with a Consonant before it; as *vaincre*, to overcome; *mettre*, to send.

Of the Derivation of the Tenses of Verbes.

BEfore I proceed any further in the *Conjugation* of Verbes, I must entreat and advise the learner, to understand and keepe in memory, the *Derivation* of the Tenses one from another, as followeth.

The Conjugating of all Verbes, dependeth ordinarily upon these *Five* Tenses.

1. The *Theme*, by which I meane the *first Person Singular* of the *Indicative Mood*.

2. The first uncompoundd *Praterperfect* Tense, which I call also *Definite*.

3. The *Present* Tense of the *Infinitive Mood*.

4. The *Present* Tense of the *Participle* of the *Active* voyce.

5. The *Praterperfect* tense of the *Participle* of the *Passive* voyce, which I call also *Common*, for the Reasons above given.

The *Derivation* followeth.

In the *first* Conjugation, the *Theme* is formed

med of the *Infinitive* Mood, by putting away *r*, and changing *é*, Masc. into *e*, Feminine : as of *aimer* to love, *j' aime* I love ; of *Parler* to speake, *je parle* I speake ; on the contrary, by putting *r*, to the *Theme*, you may make the *Infinitive*.

In the *second*, take away *r*, or *re*, from the *Infinitive* Mood in *Verbes Regular*, and that which remaineth, is the *Theme* : as of *guérir* to heale, *je guéri* I heale ; of *Polir* to polish, *je poli* I polish ; of *lire* to read, *je li* I read. On the contrary put *r*, or *re*, to the *Theme*, and you have the *Infinitive* *Guerir*, *polir*, *lire*. As for the *Irregular* Verbes of this Conjugation, they are to be learned every Verbe by it selfe, as I shall shew hereafter.

Of the *third* Conjugation no certaine Rule can be set downe : and therefore you shall have them in a Chapter by themselves.

In the *fourth*, put away the last syllable of the *Infinitive* Mood, and you have the *Theme* : as of *Prendre* to take, *je pren* I take ; *Vivre* to live, *je vi* I live ; *Suyvre* to follow, *je suy* I follow ; In some few Verbes, onely *re*, is taken away, as of *vaincre* to overcome, *Je vains* I overcome ; *Rompre* to breake, *je romp* I breake.

The *Plurall* number of the *Theme* is not alwayes readily found : but take the *Participle* of the *Present* tense, of the *Active* voyce, and change *ant*, into *ons*, and you shall never misse of the *first person Plurall* of the *Theme*. As of *aimant* loving, *aimons* wee love ; of *Benissant* blessing, *benissons* we bleſſe ; of *voyant* seeing, *voyons*

voyons we see; joignant joyning, joignons wee joyne; on the contrary, *change ons*, into *ant*, and you have the *Participle* of the *Present* tense of the *Active* voyce: but remember withall that if there be any *Diphthong* in the *Theme*, though it be not in the *Participle*, nor in the *first* and *second* *Person*, yet it is in the *third* *person* *Plurall*: as I will shew hereafter.

The Prater From the same *Participle*, or from the *first* *imp^l Tense*. *person* *Plurall* of the *Theme*, the *Preterimp.* Tense of the *Indicative* Mood is derived: viz. by changing *ant* or *ons*, into *oy*, *oye*, or *ois*: as of *aimant* loving, or *aimons* we love, com-meth *aimoy*, *aimoye*, or *aimois*, I did love: from *benissant* blessing, or *benissons* wee bleſſe, com-meth *benissoy*, *benissoye*, or *benissois*: I did bleſſe: of *Prenant* taking, or *prenons* we take, com-meth *prenoy*, *prenoye*, or *prenois*, I did take, &c.

The Imp. The *Second* *Person* *Singul.* of the *Imperative* Mood, is alwayes the *Theme* it ſelfe, putting away the *Personall* Pronoun *je*. The *third* *Person* *Singul.* of the *Imperative*, is derived from the *third* *Person* *plurall* of the *Theme*, by taking away *nt*; the *whole* *Plurall* number of the *Imperative*, is the *Plurall* number of the *Theme*; if you leave out the *Personall* Pronounes *Nous* and *Vous*, of the *first* and *second* *Person*. The *third* *Person* both *Sing.* and *Plurall* of the *Imperative*, keepe the Pronounes of the *Theme*, and put *qu'* before them. As *j' aime* I love, *aime* love thou; of *il aime* he loveth, *qu' il aime*

aimer let him love ; of *nous aimons* we love , *aimons* let us love ; of *vous aimez* yee love , *aimez* love yee ; of *ils aiment* they love , *qu' ils aiment* let them love . [This Rule holdeth chiefly in the first Conjugation , for in the other Conjugations oftentimes the third Person Sing. or Plur. is the same with the third Person Sing. of the Pres. of the Optative Mood] as of *Benir* to blesse , *je beni* I blesse , Imperat. *Beni* blesse thou , *qu' il benisse* , let him blesse , [and not *qu' il benit* ;] *benissons* , blesse wee or let us blesse , *benissez* blesse yee , *qu' ils benissent* let them blesse : of *Querir* to seeke , *je quier* I seeke , *quier* seeke thou , *qu' il quiere* let him seeke , [and not *qu' il quiert* .] *Querons* let us seeke , *querez* seeke yee , *qu' ils quierent* , let them seeke : of *je reçois* I receive , *reçois* receive thou , *qu' il reçoive* let him receive , [and not *qu' il reçoit*] *reçevons* let us receive , *recevez* receive yee , *qu' ils reçoivent* let them receive . *Four* Verbs are excepted from this Rule , *voir* . *Faire* to doe , *Savoir* to know , *Pouvoir* to be able , and *aller* to goe : Of which hereafter in due place .

The Pres. and Fut. tense, of the Optative and the Subjunctive Mood, are formed in the same manner : for without any exception the 3. Person Sing. of the Imp. Mood, and the first Person Sing. of the Present and Fut. tense of the Optative and Subjunctive Mood are all one : as *qu' il aime* , *qu' il benisse* , *qu' il quiere* , *qu' il reçoive* , *qu' il Prenne* , in the Imp. and in the Optat. & Subj. à la miene volonté que , or si j' aime ,
je

Pres. and
Fut. Optat

je benisse, je quiére, je reçoive, je prenne.

**I. Præter-
imperfect.
Optat.**

The first Præterimperfect tense of the Optat. and the Subjunctive Mood, is derived from the second Person singular, of the first Præterperfect tense of the Indicative Mood (which I call *Definite* and *uncompounded*) by adding thereto *se*; as of *tu aimas* thou hast loved, *j' aimasse*; of *tu Benis* thou hast blessed, *je benisse*; of *tu vis* thou hast seene, *je visse*; of *tu quis* thou hast sought, *je quisse*; of *tu joignis* thou hast joyned, *je joignisse*.

**Future In-
dicative.**

The Future tense of the Indicative Mood, is commonly derived of the Infinitive Mood, by putting *ay*, after the last *r*: so also the second Præterimperfect tense of the Optative and Subjunct. Mood, is derived of the Future tense of the Indicative, by changing *ray*, into *roy*; as *aimer* to love, *j' aimeray* I shall love; *aimeroy* I should or would love; *Benir* to blesse, *beniray* I shall blesse, *beniroy* I should or would blesse; *joindre* to joyne, *joindray* I will joyn, *joindroy* I would joyne. Some irregular Verbs are excepted from this rule; which I will give notice of in due place.

All other Tenses are made, by ioyning the common Participle and the Auxiliary Verbes together: I' *ay*, *j' avoy*, *j' aye*, *je suis*, *j' estoy*, &c. as I' *ay aimé* I have loved, *je suis aimé* I am loved; *j' avoy aimé* I had loved, *j' estoy aimé* I was loved, &c. as I sayd before, and shall shew hereafter more at large.

Whence it appeareth, that when the five ten-
ses aforesayd, with this derivation of the Tenses
last

last mentioned, and the composition of the auxiliary Verbe with the Common Participle, is knowne, the whole Coniugation of the Verbe is learned.

[*Mons. Maupas* hath here omitted the forming of the Terminations of some Persons, I will therefore, before each example, set downe all the Terminations, to y^e end that having the in memory, we may apply them to all Verbes whatsoever.]

Of the first Coniugation.

L Et us now set downe the first Coniugation : which will serve for a patterne and modell to all other Verbes in some sort.

It consisteth (as I told you before) of Verbes which have *e*, Fem. in the end of their Theme, and so consequently that Syllable is short : as *j' ayme* I love, *j' enuoye* I send, *je prie* I pray, &c.

The Definite Praterperfect tense endeth in *ay* : as *'je parlay* I spake, *je donnay* I gave, *je priay* I prayed.

The Infinitive endeth in *er*, which *e*, before *r*, is Masc. and the Syllable long ; as *aimer* to love, *envoyer* to send, &c.

The Participle of the Active voyce endeth in *ant* ; as *aimant* loving, *parlant* speaking, *envoyant* sending, *priant* praying.

The Common Participle endeth in *e* Masc. & the Syllable wherein it is, is long : & out of these five Tenses the whole Verbe is derived, as followeth.

The

Indicative Mood.

Sing.	Present Tense	Plur.
1 e	1 ons	
2 es	2 ez	
3 e	3 ent	
j' aime, I love.	nous aimons, we	} love.
tu aimes, thou lovest	vous aimez, yee	
il aime, he loveth.	ils aiment, they	

The Præterimperfect Tense,

Singul.	1 oy
	2 ois
	3 oit
	j' aimoy, I did love.
	tu aimois, thou didst love.
	il aimoit, he did love,

Plurall.

1 ions
2 iez
3 oyent
nous aimions, we did love.
vous aimiez, yee did love.
ils aimoyent, they did love.

The first Præterperfect Tense, definite,
and uncompoundd.

Sing.

1 ay	} as	j' aimay, I have loved.
2 as		tu aimas, thou hast loved.
3 a		il aimas, he hath loved.

Plur.

Plurall.

1	asmes	} as	{	nous aimasmes, we	} have loved
2	astes			vous aimastes, ye	
3	evrent			ils aimerent, they	

The third person *Plurall* changeth *d*, into *ent*; take heed of saying *aimerent*, *parlarent*, *criarent*; like a *Gascoigner*.

The second *Præterperfect Tense*, *Indefinite* and compounded.

Sing.	1	j'ay aimé,	I have	} loved.
	2	tu as aimé,	thou hast	
	3	il a aimé,	he hath	
Plur.	1	Nous avons aimé,	we have	} loved.
	2	Vous avez aimé,	ye have	
	3	ils ont aimé,	they have	

Sing. The *Præterpluperfect Tense*;

1	j'avois	} aimé	{	I had	} loved.
2	tu avois			thou hadst	
3	il avoit			he had	

Plurall.

1	Nous avions	} aimé	{	we	} had loved.
2	Vous aviez			ye	
3	ils avoient			they	

The redoubled definite *Præterperfect tense*, commonly used, Sing.

1	j'eu	} aimé	{	I have	} loved.
2	tu eus			thou hast	
3	il eut			he hath	

Plurall.

1	Nous eûmes	} aimé	{	we have	} loved
2	Vous eûtes			ye have	
3	ils eurent			they have	

The

The redoubled definite Preterpluperfect tense

		Sing.		
1	<i>I' ay eu</i>	} <i>aimè</i>	I had	} loved.
2	<i>Tu as eu</i>		thou hadst	
3	<i>Il a eu</i>		he had	
Plurall.				

1	<i>Nous avons eu</i>	} <i>aymé,</i>	wee	} had loved.
2	<i>Vous avez eu</i>		yeec	
3	<i>Ils ont eu</i>		they	

The Future tense.

		Singular.			
1	<i>eray</i>	} <i>as</i>	<i>j' aimeray,</i>	} I shall love,	
2	<i>eras</i>		<i>tu aimeras,</i>		thou shalt
3	<i>era</i>		<i>il aimera,</i>		he shall
Plurall.					

1	<i>erons</i>	} <i>as</i>	<i>Nous aimerons,</i>	} we shall love.	
2	<i>erez</i>		<i>Vous aimerez,</i>		yeec
3	<i>eront</i>		<i>ils aimeront,</i>		they

The Imperative.

		Sing.	
2	<i>e</i>	} <i>as</i>	<i> aime, love thou.</i>
3	<i>e</i>		<i> qu' il aime, let him love.</i>
Plurall.			
1	<i>ous</i>	} <i>as</i>	<i> aimons, let vs love.</i>
2	<i>ez</i>		<i> aimez, love yeec.</i>
3	<i>ent</i>		<i> qu' ils aiment, let them love.</i>

The

The Optative Mood.

Present and Future tense, *à la miéne volons é qu'e*

God grant. Singular.

1 e } I aime, I love
 es } as Tu aimes, thou louest,
 e } Il ayme, he loveth,
 Plurall.

1 ions } Nous aimions, wee }
 2 lez } as Vous aimiez, yee } love.
 3 ent } Ils aiment they }

The first Preterimperf. tense, *Pleust à Dieu que,*

I would God. Singular.

1 asse } I' aimasse, I did }
 2 asses } as Tu aimasses, thou didst } love.
 3 ast } Il aimast he did }

Plurall.

1 assions } Nous aimassions, wee }
 2 assiez } as Vous aimassiez, yee } did love.
 3 assent } Ils aimassent, they }

The second Preterimperfect tense, *Volontiers, I*

would God:

Singular.

1 eroiy } I' aimeroiy, I would or should love.
 2 erois } Tu aimerois, thou wouldst or shouldst i.
 3 eroit } Il aimeroit, he would or should love.

Plurall.

1 erions } Nous aimerions, wee would or sh. lo.
 2 eriez } Vous aimeriez, Yee w. or should lov.
 3 eroyent } Ils aimeroient, they would or sh. love

S

The

The Preter-perfect tense, à la mienne volonté que,

I pray God.

Singular.

1 <i>J'aye</i>	} <i>aimé</i> ,	I haue	} loued.
2 <i>Tu ayes</i>		thou hast	
3 <i>il aye.</i>		he hath	

Plurall.

1 <i>Nous ayons</i>	} <i>aimé</i> ,	wee	} haue loued.
2 <i>Vous ayez.</i>		ye	
3 <i>ils ayent</i>		they	

The first Preterpluperfect tense, *Plust à Dieu*
que, I would God.

Singular.

1 <i>J'eusse</i>	} <i>aimé</i> ,	I had	} loued.
2 <i>Tu eusses</i>		thou hadst	
3 <i>il eust</i>		he had.	

Plurall.

1 <i>Nous eussions,</i>	} <i>aimé</i> ,	wee	} had loued.
2 <i>Vous eussiez,</i>		ye	
3 <i>Ils eussent,</i>		they	

The second Preterpluperf. tense, *Volontiers.*

I would God,

Singular.

1 <i>J'auroye</i>	} <i>aimé</i>	I should	} haue loued
2 <i>Tu aurois</i>		thou shouldst	
3 <i>il auroit</i>		he should	

Plur.

1 <i>Nous aurions</i>	} <i>aimé</i> ,	wee should haue loued.
2 <i>Vous auriez,</i>		ye should haue loued:
3 <i>ils auroient,</i>		they should haue loued.

The

The Subiunctive Mood

The *Subiunctive* Mood is altogether like the *Optat*: onely ioyned those *coniunctive Phrases* to the *Optative*, which are proper to the *Subiunctive*, and you haue it.

The Future tense, *Quand when.*

		Sing.	
1 I' auray	}	I shall	} haue loved.
2 Tu auras		thou shalt	
3 il aura		he shall	
		Plur.	
1 Nous aurons,	}	wee	} shall haue loved
2 vous aurez,		ye	
3 ils auront,		they	

The Infinitive.

Present and Preterimp. tense, *aimer*, to love.

Preterperfect and } *avoir aimé*,

Preterplup. tense } to haue loved.

The Participle of the Active voice

Present	}	<i>aimant</i> , Masc.Sing.	} loving
& Pre-		<i>aimants</i> , Masc.Plur.	
terimp.		<i>aimante</i> , Fem.Sing.	
tense.		<i>aimantes</i> , Fem.Plur.	

Preterperf. and
Preterpluperf. } *ayant aimé*, haue loved.
tense.

The Participle of the Passive voice.

Preterperf.	} aimé Masc. singular aimez Masc. Plurall aimée Fem. singular aimées Fem. Plurall }	} loved.
tense which		
I call also		
Common.		

For the Participle of the Future tense *amaturus*, about to love, we say *qui aimera*, *qui doit aimer*, *qui est pour aimer*, *qui va aimer*, *prest d'aimer*, *voulant aimer*, *allant aimer*: *Vous croyiez que j'aimerois*, *que je devois aimer*, *que j'estois pour aimer*, *que j'allois*, *que je voulois aimer*, *que j'estois pres d'aimer*, You beleived that I would, I should, or was about to love. There is some difference in these Phrases, and therefore discretion is to be vsed in the choise of the fittest.

Amaturus eram, I was about to love ; *il enesse aimé*, *le devois aimer* &c.

Digne d'estre aimé, worthy to be loved; *amatu dignus* in Latine. *Plaisant à aimer*, sweete in the loving; *jucundus amatu* in Latine. *L'art d'aimer*, the art of loving.

Aimant, *en aimant*, in loving; *Chantant*, or *en as chantant*; *en chantant la couleur se rompt*; or *rompt la couleur*, or *la couleur est rompue*, by charming the Adder bursteth in sunder.

Amandum to be loved, *pour aimer*; *il faut aimer*, *Amendus*, *da*, *dum*, [being a Participle of the Future tense] to be loved, *à aimer*, *que lon doit aimer*, *qui doit estre aimé*, *qui est à aimer*, *qui sera aimé* or *aimée*, *prest d'estre aimé*, or *aimée*.

Some

Some give this rule: that *all Verbes*, that have in their *Theme*, a *Vowell* or a *Diphthong* before *e*, as *I' envoye* I send, *je prie* I pray, *je joue* I play, *j'agrée* I am pleased with, and such like, have the *first* and *second person Plurall*, of the *Present* and *Preterimp.* tense, both alike. For my part, I am not of that opinion: but thinke rather, that *all Preterimp.* tenses whether they be of the *Indicative*, *Optative*, or *Subiunctive* Mood, as also that *all Verbes* of the *Present* tense, of the *Optat.* and *Subiunct.* Mood, have in these persons an *i*, *vowell* or *y*, before their last syllable; as *envoyons*, wee did send; *Pres Optat.* wee may send; *envoyez*, yee did send; *Pres Opt.* yee may send; *joignons*, wee did play; *Optat Pres.* wee may play; *joignez*, yee did play; *Opt Pres.* yee may play; *louons*, wee did prayse; *Optat Pres.* wee may praise; *louez*, yee did praite; *Pres Opt.* yee may praise; Thus wee use to Pronounce all *France* over. And if it soe fall out that *two i*, meet together,* then we drag the syllable and make it long, as we doe in those syllables, where two other vowels come together; as *Roole* a catalogue, *aage* age, *guser* to wade; and soe likewise *priions*, wee did pray; *Pres Optat.* wee may pray; *criions*, wee did cry; *Pres Opt.* wee may cry; *niions*, wee did deny; *Pres Optat.* wee may deny, *riions*, wee did laugh; *Pres Optat.* wee may laugh.

* or i, and y,

The *first* and *second persons Plurall*, of the *first Preterimp.* tense of the *Optative* Mood, are doubled only in this Coniugation.

Of a Reciprocall or Reflected Verbe.

A Verbe is made *Reciprocall*, when it hath before it a *Pronoun* of the *'Dat.* or the *Accusative* case, of the *same person*, with the *Nominat.* case to the Verbe. And because this manner of vying of Verbes, doth not onely change the *sense* and the *Syntaxe*, but the *Coniugation* also, I thought meet to set downe here a patterne of that kind.

Indicative Mood.

Present tense.

Singular.

- | | | | |
|---|---------------------|---|------------------------|
| 1 | <i>Je m' aime,</i> | } | I love my selfe, |
| 2 | <i>Tu t' aimes,</i> | | thou lovest thy selfe. |
| 3 | <i>Il s' aime,</i> | | he loveth himselfe. |

Plurall.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 | <i>Nous nous aimons,</i> | wee love our selves, |
| 2 | <i>Vous vous aimez,</i> | yeec love your selves. |
| 3 | <i>Ils s' aiment,</i> | they love themselves. |

Preterimperfect tense.

Sing.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 | <i>Je m' amoy,</i> | I did love my selfe. |
| 2 | <i>Tu t' amois,</i> | thou didst love thy selfe. |
| 3 | <i>Il s' amoit,</i> | he did love himselfe, |

Plur.

- Plurall. 1 *Nous nous aimions*, wee did love our selves.
 2 *Vous vous aimiez*, yee did love your selves.
 3 *Ils s'aimoyent*, they did love themselves.

The Præterperfect tense definite, and vncompounded. Singular.

- 1 *Je m'aimay*, I have loved my selfe.
 2 *Tu t'aimas*, thou hast loved thy selfe.
 3 *Il s'aima*, he hath loved himselfe.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous nous aimâmes*, we have loved our selves.
 2 *Vous vous aimâtes*, ye have loved your selves.
 3 *Ils s'aimèrent*, they have loved themselves.

The Præterperfect tense indefinite, and compounded. Singular.

- 1 *Je me suis* } *aimé* I have loved my selfe.
 2 *Tu t'es* } thou hast loved thy selfe.
 3 *Il s'est* } he hath loved himselfe.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous nous sommes* } *aimés* (our selves. we have loved
 2 *Vous vous êtes* } ye have &c.
 3 *Ils se sont* } they have loved (themselves.

The redoubled definite, usuall Præterperfect tense. Singular.

- 1 *Je me fus* } *aimé* I haue loved my selfe.
 2 *Tu te fus* } thou hast loved thy selfe.
 3 *Il se fut* } he hath loved himselfe.

Plur.

- 1 *Nous nous fûmes* } *aimés* (our selves. wee haue loved
 2 *Vous vous fûtes* } ye haue &c.
 3 *Ils se furent* } they haue loved (themselves.

Note here, that in *all* the *Compounded Tenses*, we change the *auxiliary Verbe*, and for the *Active j' ay*, we use the *Passive je suis*.

The Future Tense.

Singular.

1	<i>je m'aimeray</i>	I shall	} love	my selfe	} &c.
2	<i>tu t'aimeras</i>	thou shalt		thy selfe	
3	<i>il s'aimera</i>	he shall		himselfe	

Plurall.

1	<i>nous nous aimerons</i>	we	} shall love	our selves,
2	<i>vous vous aimerez</i>	ye		your selves,
3	<i>ils s'aimeront</i>	they		themselves.

The Imperative Mood.

Singular.

- 1
- 2 *aime toy*, love thou thy selfe.
- 3 *Qu' il s' aime*, let him love himselfe.

Plurall.

- 1 *nous aimons nous*, let us love our selves,
- 2 *Vous aimez vous*, love yee your selves,
- 3 *qu' ils s' aiment*, let the love themselves

Our Imperatives never have a *Nominative* case, in the *first* or *second Person*: But the *Reciprocall Verbes* have.

The

*The Optative Mood ; the Present
and Future tense.*

à la même volonté que, God grant.

Sing.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------|------|-----------|------|
| 1 je m' aime, | I | love | my selfe | } &c |
| 2 tu t' aimes, | thou | love | thy selfe | |
| 3 Il s' aime, | he | | himselfe | |

The first Præterimperfect Tense :

Pleust à Dieu que, I would God,

Singular.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------|------|
| 1 je m' aimasse, | I did love | my selfe, | } &c |
| 2 tu t' aimasses, | thou didst love | thy selfe. | |
| 3 Il s' aimast, | he did love | himselfe. | |

The second Præterimperfect Tense.

Plenst à Dieu que, I would God.

Singular.

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------|
| 1 je m' aimerois, | I should or would love | my selfe, |
| 2 tu t' aimerois, | thou would'st or should'st love | (thy selfe. |
| 3 il s' aimerois, | he would or should love | himself. &c |

The Præterperfect Tense.

A la même volonté que, God grant.

Singular.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1 je me suis | } aime | I have | } loved | my selfe |
| 2 tu te suis | | thou hast | | thy selfe |
| 3 Il se suis | | he hath | | himself. |

Plur.

Plurall.

1 nous nous soyons	} aimez	we have	our selves.
2 vous vous soyez		ye have	loved yourf.
3 ils se soyent		they have	thē selves,

The Præterpluperfect tense,
Pleust à Dieu que, I would God.

Singular.

1 je me fusse	} aimē	I had	my self.
2 tu te fusses		thou hadst	loved thy self
3 il se fust		he had	himself.

Plur.

1 nous nous fussions	} aimez	wee had	our sel
2 vous vous fussiez		ye had	loved your f.
3 ils se fussent		they had	themselves

The second Præterpluperfect tense,
Volontiers I would God.

Singular.

1 je me serois	} aimē	I should	my self.
2 tu te serois		thou sh.	have loved thy self
3 il se seroit		he shou.	himself

Plurall.

1 nous nous serions	} aimez	wee should	our selves
2 vous vous seriez		ye have	your selv.
3 ils se seroyent		they loved	thē selves.

The

The Subiunctive Mood.

The Future tense, *Quand, when.*

Singul.

1 je me seray	}	I shall	have	my
2 tu te seras		aimé thou shalt	lo-	thy selfe.
3 Il se sera		he shall	ved	him

Plur.

1 nous nous serons	}	wee	shall	our
2 vous vous serez		aimés yee	have	your self
3 Ils se seront		they	loved	them

The Infinitive.

The Present and Præterimperfect tense.

Singular.

1 m' aimer	}	to love	my	}	selfe.
2 t' aimer			thy		
3 s' aimer			him		

Plurall.

1 nous aimer	}	to love	our	}	selves.
2 vous aimer			your		
3 s' aimer			them		

The

The Participle of the Active voyce.

The Present, and Præterimperfect Tense,
Sing.

1 <i>m'</i>	} <i>aimant</i>	} loving	} my thy him	} selfe.
2 <i>t'</i>				
3 <i>s'</i>				

Plurall.

1 <i>nous</i>	} <i>aimans</i>	} loving	} our your them	} selves.
2 <i>vous</i>				
3 <i>s'</i>				

The Præterperfect and Præterpluperfect Tense,
Sing.

1 <i>m' estant</i>	} <i>aimé</i>	} having loved	} my thy him	} selfe.
2 <i>t' estant</i>				
3 <i>s' estant</i>				

Plurall.

1 <i>nous</i>	} <i>estants</i>	} having loved	} our your them	} selves.
2 <i>vous</i>				
3 <i>s'</i>				

For the use of *these Infinitives* we are to note,
that when *they are used*, the *action*, of the *Person*
mentioned, reflecteth on himselfe: as *Je pense*
m' aimer, I intend to love my selfe; *Tu penses*
t' aimer, thou intendest to love thy selfe; *Jeau*
promet de s' apprester, Iohn promisseth to make
ready himselfe. On *dis* *Roland s' estre porté vail-*
lant

lent à la Bataile. They say that Orlando carryed himselfe stoutly in the battaile. For if in the sentence *two persons* be mentioned, it is *not* a *Reciprocall Verbe*: as *le te prie m'aimer*, I pray thee to love me; *Tu me pries t'aimer*, thou intreatest me to love thee; *Iean promet de me suivre*, Iohn promiseth to follow me. *Il delibere de nous enseigner*, he deliberateth about teaching us. *Ces astroñteurs essayent a nous tromper*, these Cheaters try to deceive us.

To conclude, you are to note that *Reciprocation* maketh *two differences*, in the *Coniugation* of a *Verbe*.

First, we must take *Je suis* for the *Auxiliary Verbe*: and the *same Tenses* of it, which wee would take of *j'ay*, if it were *not* a *Reciprocall Verbe*: yet we doe *not* use the *Cōpounded Tenses* of *le suis*, because in *those Tenses*, *le suis* hath *j'ay* for an *Auxiliar*, which in a *Reciprocall Verbe* can *never* be used.

The *second* alteration or difference is, that the *Participle common* agreeth, with the *Substantive* or *agent*, in *Gender* and *Number*: as *Cette Femme-cy s'est fardée*, this woman hath painted herselfe; *ses amoureux s'y sont abusez*, her lovers have abused themselves wick it.

You may well see, that all *Active Verbes* may be *reciprocated*; but we have *some Verbes* which are used onely in *this manner*: as *le me sovien*, I remember my selfe: or *Impersonally*: as *Il me sovient*, it commeth to my mind; *le me repen*, I repent my selfe; *le m'abstien*, I refraine my selfe;

selfe, *Je me comporte*, I demeane my selfe; *Je m' esbahy*, I wonder in my heart; *Je m' esmerveille*, I marvell; which Verbes are used in the same sense, though they be in a *Passive* forme: as *Je suis esbahy*, *je suis esmerveillé*, I am astonished; *Je me moequé de leur folie*, I laugh at their folly: which Verbe serveth also for a *Passive*; *Je suis moqué*, I am derided.

The Verbes of the *first Conjugation* are almost infinite in number, and are all *Conjugated* in the same manner, without any variation or Irregularity. Except onely the Verbe *Garder* to save or keepe; which, in the *third person Singular* of the *Imperative*, and *Optative Mood*, may be *Apostrophated* in such saluting Phrases, as these which follow. *Dieu gard' la compagnie*, God save the company. *Dieu vous gard' de mal*, God preserve you from ill.

In the same Person, *doint* is put for *donne*; *pardoint* for *pardonne*: as *Dieu vous doint heureuse et longue vie*, God give you happy and long life. And in the *Future Tense* of the *Indicative Mood*, *donray* I shall give, for *donneray*; Also in the *second Præterimperfect Tense* of the *Optative Mood*, *Donrois* for *donnerois*, I should give.

So likewise the Verbe *Laisser* to leave, in the afore-mentioned *Future*, and *Præterimperfect Tense*, hath *lairray* I shall leave, for *laisseray*; *lairrois* I should leave or permit, for *laisserois*.

So likewise, but very seldome, *amerray* I will bring, for *ameneray*; *amerrois* I would bring, for *amenerois*; [like *porre* and *tradurre*, for *ponere* and *traducere*, in the Italian.]

Aller, to goe.

THis Verbe *Aller*, is both *Neuter* and *Irregular*: and therefore I will here set it downe at large, both because it is *Irregular*, as also because it will serve as an *Example* for the *Conjugating* of Verbes *Neuter*.

The Indicative Mood.

The Present Tense,
Singular.

- 1 *je vay, vais*, or *vois*, I goe.
- 2 *tu vas*, thou goest.
- 3 *il va*, he gaeth.

Plur.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|------|
| 1 <i>nous allons</i> , wee | } | goe. |
| 2 <i>vous allez</i> , yee | | |
| 3 <i>ils vont</i> , they | | |

The Praeterimperfect tense,
Singular.

- | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|---|-------|---|------|---|------------|
| 1 <i>j'allois</i> | } | I did | } | goe. | | |
| 2 <i>tu allois</i> | | | | | } | thou didst |
| 3 <i>il alloit</i> | | | | | | |

Plur.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous allons*, wee }
 2 *Vous allez* yee }
 3 *Ils vont*, they } *gone.*

The first Preterperfect tense.
 Singular.

- 1 *J'allas*, I went.
 2 *Tu allas*, thou wentst
 3 *Il alla*, he went.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous allasmes*, wee }
 2 *Vous allastes*, yee } *went.*
 3 *Ils allerent*, they }

The second Preterperfect tense.
 Singular.

- 1 *Je suis* } *allé*, I have }
 2 *Tu es* } *allé*, thou hast } *gone.*
 3 *Il est* } *allé*, he hath }

Plurall.

- Nous sommes* } *allés*, wee }
 2 *Vous êtes* } *allés*, yee } *have gone.*
 3 *Ils sont* } *allés*, they }

The Preterpluperfect tense.

Singular.

- 1 *J'étois* } *allé*, I had }
 2 *Tu étois* } *allé*, thou hadst } *gone.*
 3 *Il étoit* } *allé*, he had }

Plurall,

- Nous étions*, } *allés*, wee }
Vous étiez, } *allés*, yee } *had gone.*
 3 *Ils étoient*, } *allés*, they }

The

The redoubled Definite, and usuall
Præterperfect Tense.

Sing.

1	<i>Je fu</i>	} <i>allé</i>	} I have thou hast he hath	} gone.
2	<i>tu fus</i>			
3	<i>il fut</i>			

Plurall.

1	<i>Nous fusmes</i>	} <i>allez</i>	} wee yee they	} have gone.
2	<i>Vous fustes</i>			
3	<i>Ils furent</i>			

The redoubled, indefinite Præterperfect
tense, and sometimes used.

Singular.

1	<i>J'ay esté</i>	} <i>allé</i>	} I had thou hast he had	} bin gone.
2	<i>tu as esté</i>			
3	<i>il a esté</i>			

Plur.

1	<i>Nous avons esté</i>	} <i>allez</i>	} wee yee they	} had bin gone
2	<i>Vous avez esté</i>			
3	<i>Ils ont esté</i>			

The Future Tense,

Sing.

1	<i>J'iray</i>	} I shall thou shalt he shall	} goe.
2	<i>tu iras</i>		
3	<i>il ira</i>		

Plurall.

1	<i>Nous irons</i>	} wee yee they	} shall goe.
2	<i>Vous irez</i>		
3	<i>Ils iront</i>		

*Imperative Mood.**Singular.*

- 1
- 2 *Va*, goe thou.
- 3 *Qu' il aille, & voise*, let him goe.

Plurall.

- 1 *Allons*, let us goe.
- 2 *Allez* goe yee.
- 3 *Qu' ils aillent & voisent*, let them goe.

Optative Mood.

The Present and Future Tense,
a la miéne volonté que, God grant,

Sing.

- 1 *j' aille & voise*, I goe.
- 2 *tu ailles & voisès*, thou goest.
- 3 *il aille & voise*, he goeth.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous aillions & voisions*, we
- 2 *Vous ailliez & voisieç*, yee
- 3 *Ils aillent & voisent*, they

} goe.

The first Præterimperfect Tense,
Pleust a Dieu que, I would God.

Singular.

- 1 *j' allasse*, I did
- 2 *tu allasses*, thou didst
- 3 *il allast, or allasse*, he did

} goe.

Plur.

Plurall.

- 1 *Nous allassions*, we }
 2 *Vous allassiez*, yee } did goe.
 3 *Ils allassent*, they }

The second Præterimperfect Tense,
Volontiers, I would God.

Sing.

- 1 *j'irois*, I should }
 2 *tu irois*, thou should'st } goe.
 3 *Il iroit*, he should }

Plur.

- 1 *Nous irions*, we }
 2 *Vous iriez*, yee } should goe.
 3 *Ils iroyent*, they }

The Præterperfect tense,
à la miéne volonté que, I pray God.

Singular.

- 1 *je soye* } *allé* { I have }
 2 *tu soyes* } } thou hast } gone.
 3 *Il soit* } } he hath }

Plur.

- 1 *Nous soyons* } *allez* { wee }
 2 *Vous soyez* } } yee } have gone.
 3 *Ils soyent*, } } they }

The first Præterpluperfect Tense,
à la miéne volonté que, God grant.

Singular.

- 1 *je fusse* } *allé* { I had }
 2 *tu fusses* } } thou hadst } gone,
 3 *Il fust*, } } he had }

Plurall.

1	Nous faisions		wee	
2	Vous fussiez	} allez	ye	} had gone.
3	Ils fussent		they	

The second Præterpluperfect Tense,

Volontiers, I would God.

Singular.

1 je serois	} allé	I should	} be gone,	
2 tu serois		thou should'st		or
3 il seroit		he should		have gone.

Plurall.

1	Nous serions	} allez	wee	} should be,	
2	Vous seriez		ye		or
3	Ils seroyent		they		should have gone.

The *subjunctive* Mood being alwayes like the
Optative, there remaineth onely

The Future Tense. *Quand*, when.

1	je seray	} allé	I shall	} be	
2	tu seras		thou shalt		or
3	il sera		he shall		have gone.

Plurall.

1	Nous serons	} allez	} wee ye. they	} should be, or should have gone.
2	Vous serez			
3	Ils seront			

The Infinitive Mood.

THe Present and Preterimperfect Tense, *aller*
to goe.

The

The Præterperfect and Præterpluperf. tense,
estre allé to have gone.

The Participle of the Active voyce.

The Present and Præterimperfect Tense, *allant* going.

The Præterperf. and the Præterpluperf. Tense,
estant allé having gone.

The Participle of the Passive Voice, other-
wise called common.

The Præterperf.

Sing.	}	Masc. <i>Allé;</i>	}	gone.
		Fem. <i>allée,</i>		
Plur.	}	Masc. <i>allez,</i>	}	gone.
		Fem. <i>allées,</i>		

The *Fut. tenses*, *Gerunds* and *supines* are to be
expressed like the *Futures*, *Gerunds* and *Supins* of
other Verbes, as I have showne before.

This Verbe also is reciprocated, by putting there-
to the Syllable *en*, as I have already showne in
the Rules of the Pronounes Relative: as *je m'en*
vay, I goe my way; *tu t'en vas*, thou goest thy
wayes, *il s'en va*, he goeth his wayes.

A Verbe Neuter may have *j'ay* for its *auxili-*
ary, as Reciprocall Verbes have: So that I
might have set downe more *Tenses*, by *varying*
the *Auxiliary Verbe*: but as *these onely* are neces-
sary for our Language, so withall they are suf-
ficient.

Plurall.

- | | | | | |
|---|---------------|---------|------|-------------|
| 1 | Nous fussions | } aller | wee | } had gone. |
| 2 | Vous fussiez | | ye | |
| 3 | Ils fussent | | they | |

The second Præterpluperfect Tense,
Volontiers, I would God.

Singular.

- | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|---------|----------------|------------|------------|
| 1 | je serois | } aller | I should | } be gone, | |
| 2 | tu serois | | thou should'st | | or |
| 3 | il seroit | | he should | | have gone. |

Plurall.

- | | | | | | |
|---|--------------|---------|------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1 | Nous serions | } aller | wee | } should be, | |
| 2 | Vous seriez | | ye | | or |
| 3 | Ils seroyent | | they | | should have gone. |

The *subjunctive* Mood being alwayes like the
Optative, there remaineth onely

The Future Tense. *Quand*, when.

- | | | | | | |
|---|----------|---------|------------|------|------------|
| 1 | je seray | } aller | I shall | } be | |
| 2 | tu seras | | thou shalt | | or |
| 3 | il sera | | he shall | | have gone. |

Plurall.

- | | | | | | |
|---|-------------|---------|------|--------------|------------|
| 1 | Nous serons | } aller | wee | } should be, | |
| 2 | Vous serez | | ye | | or should |
| 3 | Ils seront | | they | | have gone. |

The Infinitive Mood.

The Present and Preterimperfect Tense, *aller*
to goe.

The

The Præterperfect and Præterpluperf. tense,
estre allé to have gone.

The Participle of the Active voyce.

The Present and Præterimperfect Tense, *al-
lant* going.

The Præterperf. and the Præterpluperf. Tense,
estant allé having gone.

The Participle of the Passive Voice, other-
wise called common.

The Preterperf.

Sing.	}	Masc. <i>Allé;</i>	}	gone.
		Fem. <i>allée,</i>		
Plur.	}	Masc. <i>allez,</i>	}	gone.
		Fem. <i>allées,</i>		

The *Fut. tenses*, *Gerunds* and *supines* are to be
expressed like the *Futures*, *Gerunds* and *Supins* of
other Verbes, as I have shewne before.

This Verbe also is reciprocated, by putting there-
to the Syllable *en*, as I have already shewne in
the Rules of the Pronounes Relative: as *je m'en*
vay, I goe my way; *tu t'en vas*, thou goest thy
wayes, *il s'en va*, he goeth his wayes.

A Verbe Neuter may have *j'ay* for its *auxili-
ary*, as Reciprocall Verbes have: So that I
might have set downe more Tenses, by varying
the Auxiliary Verbe: but as these only are neces-
sary for our Language, so withall they are suf-
ficient.

I thinke I shall not much need to tell you that, which every one of himselfe may know well enough : viz. That when the *Nominative Case* is of the *Fem. Gender*, *elle* and *elles* are to be used in the *third Person*, instead of *il* and *ils* ; as if I should speake of a *Towne* [which in French is *Ville*, and of the *Feminine Gender*] I would say, *elle est belle*, *elle est bien policée*, it is faire, it is well governed. If I speake of *Lawes* [which in French is, *la Loy* and of the *Fem. Gender* also] I will say, *elles sont bien equitables*, *mais mal observées*, they are very just, but ill kept and observed.

Those who have skill in Languages, know well enough, that *those Verbes* are called *Neuters*, which signifie an *effect* produced *only within the agent*, and not terminated in any thing without it. The Grammarians reckon up *divers kinds* of them : but those divisions I passe by, as being of *small importance*. This onely I will adde : viz. that some are onely like *Verbes Active* in their *Conjugating* and signification; as *je dors* I sleepe, *j'ay dormi* I have slept; *je vi* I live, *j'ay vescu* I have lived; So also *je sue* I sweate, *je tremble* I tremble, *je frissonne* I shudder with cold, *je gele* I freeze, and such like. And these we will not reckon upon, but put them in the number of the *Verbes Active*.

We have another sort which have a *double use* and *signification*: and when they have their *Active* signification, they are without doubt to be conjugated like *Actives*: and when their signification

nification is Neuter, it is best to conjugate them like Neuters; as *Je croy* I increase, *J'ay creu* I have increased, when they signifie giving of increase to any thing, are Active: but when we say, *Je suis creu*, I have increased, or have received increase and augmentation in my selfe, it is Neuter. You shall have hereafter, a sufficient Catalogue of this kind of Verbes, in the Chapter of the use of the Verbes.

We have besides another sort of Neuters, which have onely a Neutrall signification: such are those Verbes which signifie locall motion: as *aller* to goe, *choir*, *tomber* to fall, *retourner* to returne, *issir* to goe forth, *naistre* to be borne, *courir* to runne, *mourir* to dye. Some of these have sometimes a Transitive signification, that is to say, they signifie an Action which passeth from one subiect to another: and then their Coniugation is Active: as if I say, *nous avons toute la matinée couru le lievre*, we have hunted the Hare all the Morning, here *Courir* is an Active. But if I say, *Si tost que nous avons oui l'alarme, nous y sommes courus*, as soone as we heard the alarm we ran thither, Here *Courir* is a Verbe Neuter. We may use, in this same manner, these Verbes following. *Arriver* to arrive, *aborder* to accost, *descender* to descend, *entrer* to enter, *evader*, *eschaper*, *escamper*, to escape or retyre, *Fuir* to flye, *monter* to goe up, *Passer* to passe by, *sortir* to goe forth, *Partir* to depart, or remove from one place to another; and others perhaps beside these; If these Verbes have an Accusative

Case after them, they be *Actives*: if they governe *no Case after them*, they be *Neuters*, because their *effect endeth in themselves*. In the use of these Verbes, discretion and judgement is to be used.

Of the second Coniugation.

YOU may remember that I accounted *those Verbes* of the *second Coniugation*, which have *i*, before *r*, or *re* in the *Infinitive Mood* and *last Syllable*; And take notice I pray from hence forward, that I purpose onely to set downe the *five chiefe Tenses* of Verbes: from which, by the method before set downe, you may derive all the rest of the Verbe.

But before I goe further, *note these two points*: First, that all Verbes of the 3. *following Coniugations*, make their *third person Singul.* of the Present, and first *Præterperfect* tense of their *Indicative Mood*, end in *t*, or *d*: whereas Verbes of the *first Conjug*, have *that person*, ending in *e* & *a*: for though generally all Verbes having *a* or *e* for *ÿ* last vowel in the 3. *pers.* of any Tense whatsoever, *never* have a *Consonant* after *a*, or *e*. Yet other Verbes have a *Consonant* in the 3d. *person, sing.* of the Tenses aforementioned; as wee may see by these Examples. *Je gueris* I heale, *tu gueris* thou healest, *il guerit* he healeth, or he healed; *Je voy* I see, *tu vois* thou seest, *il void* or *voit*; he seeth; *Je pren* I take, *tu prens* thou takest, *il prend* he taketh; *Je Romp* I breake, *tu Romps* thou

thou breakest, *il Rompt* he breaketh.

The *other point* is, that notwithstanding naturally the *first person* doth not end in *s*, yet in the 3. following Conjugations, custome hath so much prevayled, that we may lawfully use the *second Person* for the *first*, both in the Present, and in the *Definite* Preterperfect Tense of the *Indicative Mood*. So we say *je gueri* or *gueris*, I heale; *je voy* or *vois* I see, *je pren* or *prends* I take, &c. Except from these two Rules afore-sayd, the *Themes* of these foure Verbes. *s'ouvre* I open, *je couvre* I cover, *j'offre* I offer, *je souffre* I suffer, and those Verbes which are compounded of these 4: all which, in their *Themes* end in *e*, like Verbes of the 1. Conjugation: Adde hereto *je cueille* I gather, of *cueiller*.

This being praxmised, I will from henceforward set downe the 5. Master Tenses afore-sayd, in the Order which followeth: but note by the way, that I make the *second Indefinite* Preterperfect Tense, serve for the *Common Participle*.

The Theme.

je gueri, I heale.
je basti, I build.
je choisi, I choose.

The Preterperf. Definite.

je gueri, I healed.
je basti, I built.
je choisi, I choosed.

The

The Præterperf. Indefinite.

j' ay gueri, I have healed.

j' ay basti, I have built.

j' ay choisi, I have chosen.

The Infinitive.

Guerir, to heale.

Bastir, to build.

Choisir, to choose.

The Participle.

Guerissant, healing.

Bastissant, building.

Choissant, choosing.

So likewise *Abastardir* to adulterate or degenerate; *abestir* to make a Beast of; *abolir* to abolish or antiquate. *Aboutir* to rise to a head, to border upon; *accomplir* to accomplish or perfect; *claircir* to cleare or to illustrate; *Acourcir* to shorten or Contract; *acroupir* to crouch; *Adoucir* to sweeten or assuage; *affermir* to strengthen, confirme, or establish; *affoiblir* to weaken; *afadir* *afolir*, to foole or infatuate; *afranchir* to make free; *agir* to sue or implead, to operate; *agreslir* to make slender; *agrandir* to make great; *aigrir* to exasperate; *aguerrir* to make warlike or fit for warre; *alangourir* to make to languish; *alentir* to make gentle, or plyable; *alourdir* to dull or make blockish; *alourvir* to make one wolvisch; *amaigrir* to make leane; *amoinrir* to lessen; *amollir* to mollifie;

amoi-

amoitir to make wet; *aneantir*, to annihilate or cast downe; *anochalir* to grow carelesse; *apauvir* to impoverish; *apallir* to daunt; *apesantir* to make clownish; *aplanir* to make plaine or smooth; *apointir* to point or sharpen; *Aplaudir* to applaud; *aprofondir* to make deeper; *apiétrir* to make worle; *arondir* to round; *aquarrir* to square; *aspirer* to make sower; *assopir* to cast into a sleepe; *assortir*, to sort or divide into sorts; *assouplir* to supple; *assotir* to besot; *asservir* to inslave; *assagir* to make wise; *assujetter*, to make subject; *assouvir* to replenish; *atendrir* to make tender; *atiédrir*, to make warm; *atenuir*, to make thin; *atomir*, or *atombir* to make into Atomes; *amortir*, to mortify or extinguish; *advertir* to advertise; *avilir*, to vilify; *avachir* to poltronise.

Bannir to banish, *bastir* to build, *blandir* to flatter; *blanchir* to whiten; *Blondir* to yellow; *bondir* to bound; *boufir* to blow vp, or make bloughly; *brandir* to brandish; *brunir* to darken; *blotir*, *bluir*, *blesmir* to waxe pale; *basir*.

B.

Chanfir to grow musty, *charpir* to cose wooll, *cherir* to cherish, *chevir* to enjoy, *choisir* to choose, *chouir*, or *choüir* to hollow, *claquir* to creak, *convertir* to convert, *cotir* to Butte like a Ramme, *craquir* to cracke, or make a noyse; *croupir* to crouch, *créspir* to crispe.

C.

Devenir to waxe, to become; *déguerpir* to quit, forsake, abandon; *demolir* to demolish;

D.

dur-

durcir to harden, *deperir* to be in love with, *depolir* to unpolish, *desaffortir* to untort, *desaffopir* to waken, and others which are compounded of the inseperable Preposition *de*, and *des*, and such like; as *debastir* to unbuild, or throw down, *desemplir* to empty, &c.

- E. *Emplir* to fill, *empuantir* to bestinke, *empuaiser* to annoy with an ill smell; *endurcir* to harden; *enforcir* to enforce; *engrossir* to ingrosse, or make thicke; *encherir* to inhault the price, or make deare; *enlaidir* to make deformed, *envahir* to invade, *ensevelir* to bury, *enrichir* to enrich, *engloutir* to swallow up, *engourdir* to make lazie, *enhardir* to harden, or to make hardy; *esbahir* to wonder, *esjoüir* to make merry, *eslargir* to enlarge, *estreoir* to straighten, or to make narrow; *esbloüir* to dazle, *esquarrir* to square, *establis* to establish, *espanouir* to display it selfe, *esvanouir* to vanish, *espaisser* to thicken, *eslourdir* to blunten, *essourdir* to make deafe, *estourdir* to astonish, *esbardir* to make merry, *esclaircir* to cleare; *esmeuir* to mute like a Hawke, or other Bird; with all those Verbes which are compounded of the Preposition *es*, and such like.

- F. *Fannir* (which also may be put among Verbes of the first Conjug. for *Fanner* and *fener* signifie the same) to fade, *farcir* to stuffe, *flechir* to bend, *flestrir* to fade or dwindle; *finir* to finish, *fleurir* or *florir* to flourish, *foüir* to digge, *fourbir* to forbish, or polish; *fournir* to furnish, *frenir* to gnash like a Bore, *franchir* to unthrall, *froidir* waxe cold; *flacbir* to waxe flaggy.

Garnir to garnish; *garantir* to warrant, *gaudir* to be joviall, *gauchir* to turne on one side; *gemir* to groane, *guérir, guarir* to heale; *greslir* to make slender, *grossir* to grow thicke, *grandir* to make great, *gravir* to climbe; or to creepe; *glapir, glatir* to howle like a dog, *guerpir* to relinquish.

G.

Hannir to neigh like a Horse, *haver* to scortch; *honnir* to disgrace; *hair* to hate, doth vary.

H.

Isir to spurt up, as water from a spout; *jannir* to make yellow, *joüir* to enjoy, *investir* to invest.

I.

Languir to languish, *lotir* to allot.

L.

Meurdir, or meurtrir to murder; *matir* to mate or vanquish, [a Verbe used in Chesse-play] *se moisir* to waxe mouldy, *moisir* to wet, *mollir* to soften, *meurir* to ripen, *maigrir* to macerate; *maudir* or *maudire* to speake ill of a man, doe vary a little.

M.

Nantir to give a Seissin, *se nantir* to take possession of; *noircir* to make black, *nourrir* to nourish.

N.

Obeir to obey, *obscurcir* to darken, *ordir* or *ourdir* to beginne.

O.

Pallir to wax pale, *patir* to suffer, *partir* to divide into parts, *perir* to perish, *pestrir, poistrir* to knead, *polir* to polish; *pourrir* to rot; *punir* to punish, *pleuvir* to raine; you may say *pleuvier*, and then it is of the first Conjugation.

P.

Rajeunir to grow yong againe, *Ravir* to ravish, *Regir* to governe, *remplir* to fill, *roidir* to stretch and stiffen, *Rostir* to rost, *rougir* to waxe red, *ressortir* to go forth again, *roussir* to grow red, *rugir* to low like an ox; *reüssir* to succeed, *reünir* to reunite

R.

reunite, *reverdir* to grow green again, *ramollir* to soften againe, *resplendir* to shine or glitter; *resalir* to fowle againe; and others compounded of the Præposition *re*, and such like: as *repolir* to repolish, *regarnir* to garnish againe.

salir to fowle, *saisir* to lay hold on, *subir* to undergoe, *subvertir* to subvert, *surgir* to arrive, *sortir* to allot.

Tapir to hide, *tarir* to dry, *ternir* to fade in coulour, *se ternir* to waxe pale or ill couloured, *trahir* to betray, *transir* to fall into a Trance, *taudir* to cover booths in a faire with canvas or any thing else; *treblir*.

Vermir to be griped with wormes; *verdir* to wax green, *viellir* to wax old, *vomir* to vomit up; *vestir* to cloath, doth vary, as you shall see hereafter.

These are *all* the *Regular Verbes* of *this second Coniugation*, which I could remember. If you meete with any that have *i*, before the *last r*, never make any scruple, but reckon them for regular Verbes, unlesse they be among those which I intend to except: as you shall see below.

And now I thinke I have playd my first part, in setting downe these *Regulars*: for *all* those Verbes which follow are *Irregulars*: viz. such as have a way of Coniugating peculiar to themselves, and cannot bee contrayned under a Generall Rule.

I will then set them down one by one; which I thinke I may doe without offending against the Law of method; Note alwayes that Verbes

compounded, are conjugated like the Verbes of which they are compounded ;

[How the severall persons, of every tense of these Regular Verbes, doe end, is not set downe by Mons. Maupas : for supply of that defect observe what followeth.]

The first persons of the principall Tenses being knowne, by the three examples already set downe, follow this Table, for the rest.

Sing. Present Tense,			Indicative Mood.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>i</i> , or <i>is</i> , <i>is</i>		<i>it</i> .	Plurall. <i>issons</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>issent</i> .

Sing.

1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>issoy</i>	<i>issoys</i>	<i>issoit</i> .	Plur. <i>issions</i>	<i>issent</i>	<i>issent</i> .

This Tense is formed of the first Person plur. of the Present Tense, by changing *ons* into *oi*, *ois*, *oit*, &c.

The Præterperfect Tense, definite.

Singular.

1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>y</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>it</i>	Plur. <i>imes</i>	<i>istes</i>	<i>irent</i> .

For the Compounded Tenses, see before in the forming of the Verbes.

Future Tense.

Singular.

1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>iray</i>	<i>iras</i>	<i>ira</i> .	Plur. <i>irons</i>	<i>irez</i>	<i>iront</i> .

It is formed of the first person sing. of the Theme, by putting to *ray*, *ras*, *ra*, &c.

Pre-

Imp. Mood.

Present tense.

Singular.

²	³	¹	²	³
I or is	isse.	Plur. issions	isses	issent.

Optat. and
Subjunctive
Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.

¹	²	³	¹	²	³
isse	isses	isse.	Plur. issions	isses	issent.

The first Præterimperfect tense.

Sing.

¹	²	³	¹	²	³
isse	isses	ist.	Plur. issions	isses	issoient.

These three last Tenses, may be sayd to be formed of the *Theme*, which is the 1. Person Sing. of the *Indicative* Mood, by taking *sse* after *i*, as you may see in the Terminations: and note that all the Persons of the *Plural* number, of the *Pres.* of the *Imp. Optative* and *Subjunct.* do not differ, from the same Persons of the *Present* tense of the *Indicative* Mood: and the 3. Persons *Plu.* of the *Præterimp.* of the *Optat.* and *Subjunct.* are the same with the *Præterimp.* of the *Indic.*

Second Præterimperfect tense,

Singular.

¹	²	³	¹	²	³
iroy	iroys	iroit.	Plur. irions	iriez	iroient.

It is formed of the *Fut.* tense of the *Indicar.* Mood by changing *ay*, *as*, *a*, into *oy*, *ois*, *oit*, &c.

The

Irregular Verbes of the Second
Coniugation.

Present. Indic. *j' assaule* I assault, *ouls, ault.* *Assaillir*, to
Plur. *assions, aillez, aillent.* The Def- set upon, or
inite Preterp. *j' assailli* I assaulted, 2. Preterp. assault.
J' ay assailli I have assaulted; Future *assailliray*
and *assaillray*, I will assault; Participle, *assaill-*
ant assaulting. So *ressaillir* to sparkle; *sursail-*
lir to leape upon, or over: *assaillir* indeed is
compounded: but I put it heere because *sail-*
which is the simple, ~~master~~ the Pres. tense Sing.
of the 1st. Mood, and so by consequence, hath no
second Person Sing. in the Imp. Mood; in the
other Tenses it is not defective.

Pres. indic. *Je beni* I blesse, Preterperf. Defin. *Benir, benire*
Je beni I blessed; Second Preterperf. *J' ay benir* or *Benistre*, to
beni I have blessed: Participle *benissant* bles- blesse.
sing, the 3^d. person Plur. of the Pres. of the Indit.
Mood is *benissent* or *benient*, the same then by
consequence must be the third Person Plur. of the
Imp. So also in the Present tense Sing. and Plur.
of the Optat. and Subjunct. Mood, as in the Imp.
Beni blesse thou; *qu' il benisse* and *benir* let him
blesse, *benissent* let us blesse, *benissent* blesse ye,
benissent or *benient* let the blesse. *Benoit* blessed,
is not a Part. but eyther a proper name of a man,
or a meere Adjective, as *la benoiste Vierge Ma-*
rie, the blessed Virgin Mary.

Pres. indic. *Je bouls* I boyle, Preterperf. Def. *Boyllir*, to
Je bouilli, or *boillu* (as some say) I boyled. 2, boyle.
Preterperf. *J' ay bouilli* I have boyled; Particp.
boüil-

boüillant boyling. Future *le boüilliray*, or *boudray* I will boyle. So *esboüillir*, *resboüiller* to boyle againe.

Bruir and
bruire, to
bustle or
make a
noyse.

Cueillir, to
gather.

Pres. indic. *je brui*, I bustle or make a noyse; 1, preterp. *je brui* I made a noyse; 2, pret. *j' ay bruit* I have made a noyse; part. *bruyant* making a noyse: This Verbe is owely Neuter, and never Active or Reciprocall.

Present ind. *le cueult* I gather, *tu cueult* thou gatherest, *il cueult* he gathereth; *je cueille*, *tu cueilles*, *il cueille*, is more usuall; preterp, Def. *je cueilli* I gathered; 2, preterp. *j' ay cueilli* I have gathered; part. *cueillant* gathering; Future *je cueilliray* *cueilleray*, or *coudray* (which is less in use) I have gathered: So *accueillir* to receive embracingly; *recueillir* to gather againe.

Courir, to
runne.

Present indic. *Je cours* I runne; 1, preterp. *Je couru* I ranne, 2, preterp. *j' ay couru* I have run; Future, *je courray* I will runne, partic. *courant* running. So *accourir* to runne to, *recourir* to runne backe; but *secourir* to succour, *discourir* to discourse, cannot be taken Neutrally; *Recourir* when it signifyeth to Recover or Rescue, it hath some Tenses peculiar to it selfe: the Present Tense singular of the Ind. Mood, is *je recours* I recover, *tu recours* thou recoverest, *il recourt* he recovereth; the 2, preterp, *j' ay recoux* I have recovered, *tu as recoux* thou hast recovered, &c. the Feminine is *recouffe*.

Couvrir, to
cover.

Present of the indic. *le couvre* I cover; 1, preterp, *le couvri* I covered, 2, preterperf. *l' ay couvert* I have covered; part. *couvrant* covering. So

So likewise in the Compounde, *descouvrir* to discover, *recouvrir* to cover againe; (which many mistake for *recouurer*, which is of the first Coniugation, and signifieth to Recover) *offrir* to offer, *ouvrir* to open, *souffrir* to suffer, are of the same nature with *courir*.

Cuire to boyle, *Sec daire* to fashion.

Present of the indic. *Je circonci* I circumsise; 1, pret. *Je circonci* I circumsised; 2, pret. *J'ay circonci* I have circumsised; partic. *circonciſant* and *circonciſant* circumsising.

Pres, ind. *Je conſi* I preserve or season, 1, pret. *Je conſi* I preserved; 2, preterperſ, *J'ay conſit* I have preserved; part, *conſiſant* or *conſiſſant* preserving. So *déconſir* in ruine or undoe.

Present indic. *Je di* I say, 1, pret. *Je di* I sayd; 2, pret. *J'ay dit* I have sayd; part. *diſant* saying; the second person Plurall of the Pres. of Indicative Mood, is *dites* yee say, the third person plurall, *diſent* and *dient* they say: the Imp. Mood, is *di* say thou, *qu'il diſe* let him say: Plurall, *diſons* let us say, *dites* say yee, *qu'ils diſent* or *dient* let them say: And from thence commeth the Present tense of the Opt. and Subjunctive Mood, *que je diſe* or *die* that I may say, *que tu diſes* or *dies* that thou mayſt say; Plurall *diſions* we may say, *diſiez* ye may say, *diſent* and *dient* they may say: So likewise the compounds *deſdire* to unſay, *meſdire* to ſpeak ill, *redire* to ſay again, *predire* to foretell, *contredire* to contradict, *maudir* or *maudire* to ſpeak ill, have ſſ in the partic. like a Regular; in all other tenſes, it is like the ſimple.

V 2

Cuire, to boyle.

Circonciſe & *circonciſe* to circumsise.

Conſir, *conſir* to preſerve or ſeaſon.

Dire, to ſay.

Pres.

Duire to fashion.

Pres. indic. *Je dui* I fashion. 1, Preterperf. *Je duiſ* I fashioned. 2, Preterperf. *J'ay duiſ* I have fashioned. Particip. *duiſant* fashioning. So also the compounds, *conduire* to conduct, *deduire* to deduce, *induire*, to induce: *produire* to produce, *reduire* to reduce, *introduire* to introduce: Like to *duire*, you must Conjugate *uire* to boyle, *deuire* to boyle downe, *Reuire* to boyle againe, So likewise *conſtruire* to build, *deſtruire* to throw downe, *iſtruire* to instruct.

Note here by the way, that the Plurall Numb. of the Definite Preterperf. of these Verbes is often Synocopated; and therefore we say *duiſmes*, for *duiſſimes* we fashioned, and *duirent* for *duiſſirent* they fashioned.

Eſcrire, to write.

Pres. indic. *J'eſcri* I write. 1. Preterperf. *J'ecriu* I wrote. 2. Preterperf. *J'ay eſcrit* I have written. Participle *eſcrivant* writing. So likewise *deſcrire* to write or Copy out, *Reſcrire* to write againe, *preſcrire* to prescribe, *proſcrire* to proscribe, *tranſcrire* to transcribe, *inſcrire* to inscribe, &c.

Fuir *fuite*, to flye.

Pres. indic. *Je fui* I flye. 1. Preterperf. *Je fuiſ* I fled. 2. Preterperf. *Je ſuiſ* and *Je m'en fuiſ* I have fled away. Particip. *fuyant* flying. So likewise *Reſſuir* to flye backe: but *deſſuir* to avoyd, is used onely Actively and Passively, and not Reciprocally.

Faillir, to fayle.

Pres. indic. *Je fauk* I fayle. 1, Preterperf. *Je failli* I fayled. 2, pret. *J'ay failli* I have fayled. Future, *Je failliray*, and *faudray* I shall fayle, Particip.

Particip. *faillant*. So likewise *defaillir* to be wanting or defective.

Pres. indic. *Je fers* I strike. 1. Preterp. *Je feris* or *fers* I strake, 2. pret. *l'ay fers* I have strooke.

Ferre, to strike.

Particip. *ferant* striking. The Compoundd Tenses of this Verbe, are more in use then the uncompounded: it cometh from the Latin word *Ferire* to strike.

Pres. indic. *Je frys* I fry: 1. Preterperf. *je frys* I fryed, (which is out of use) 2. Preterp. *l'ay frys* I have fryed. Part. *Fyant* is of little use, and those Tenses which have analogy with the Participle: the rest are usuall enough: *friand* Masc.

Frire, to fry.

friande Fem. when it signifyeth savcy or liquorous, is an Adjective much used: but we use the Verbe *fricasser* to fry, most commonly.

Pres. indic. *Je gis* I cast. 1. Preterp. *Je gess* I cast. 2. Preterp. *l'ay gess* I have cast or thrown;

Gesser to cast or throw downe.

Fut. *Je gesseray* and *gerray* of the old Verbe *gerre*, I will throw. Particip. *Gisant* casting. Heretofore for the two Preterperfect Tenses, they were wont to say, *Je geu*, and *j'ay geu*, which are now out of use, *Gesant*, is not used for a Participle, but for a Noun Substant. of the Fem. Gender, as *la gesant* a woman in Childbed, or *l'acouchée*, or *une femme en gese*, or *en couche*.

Pres. indic. *Je hay* I hate; 1. preterperf. *Je hais* I hated: 2. preterperf. *j'ay hais* I have hated:

Hair, to hate.

Particip. *hoyant* and *haisant* hating, Fut. of the indic. *hattray* and *hattray* I hate.

Iſſir, and **iſſire** to goe forth. Present indic. *J' iſ* I goe forth ; 1, pret. *j' iſſi* I went forth ; 2, pret. *je ſais iſſu* I have gone forth ; Future ind. *j' iſſiray* & *iſtray*, I will goe forth ;

Induire to induce, &c. **induire** to induce, **iſſruire** to inſtruſt, **introduire** to bring in ; are conjugated like **duire**.

Lire, to read. Present ind. *le li* I read ; 1, pret. *le leu* I read ; 2, pret. *j' ay leu* I have read ; part. *Liſant* reading : So **reſlire** to chooſe, **reſlire** to read againe, **deſlire** to chooſe out of a company : Our common people forme **deſlire** in this manner, *je deſi* I chooſe, *je deſi* and *deſiſe* I choſe, *j' ay deſit* I have choſen, **deſlire** to chooſe, *deſiſant* chooſing : and this way it is uſuall enough.

Luire, to ſhine. Present ind. *le luy* I ſhine : 1, pret. *je luiſi* I ſhined ; 2, pret. *j' ay luy* I have ſhined ; Part. *luiſant* ſhining : So **reſlire** to ſhine cleerely, or to ſhine againe ; **entreluire**, to ſhine betweene :

Nuire to hurt. **Nuire** to hurt.

Dormir, to ſleepe. Present ind. *le dors* I ſleepe ; 1, pret. *je dormi* I ſlept ; 2, pret. *j' ay dormi* I have ſlept ; partici. *dormant* ſleeping.

Mourir, to dye. Present ind. *le meur* I dye ; 1, pret. *je mouru* I dyed ; 2, pret. *je ſuis mouru* I have dyed ; Fur. ind. *je mourray* I will dye ; part. *mourant* dying ; or you may uſe it Reciprocally and ſay ; *le me meurs*, *tu te meurs*, &c. Remember to keepe the **Diphthong** of the **Theme** in the third **perſon Plurall**, of the **Preſent** tenſe of the **Indicative Mood**, *meurent* they dye, and in **all Perſons** that are **derived** from it, as I ſayd in the **Rules of forming the Tenſes**.

Preſent

Pres. ind. *Je mens* I lye; 1, pret. *je menty* I lye; 2, pret. *j'ay menti* I have lye; participle, *mentant* lying. So *dementir* to accuse one of lying.

Present indic. *J'oy* I heare; 1, pret. *j'ouï* I heard; 2, pret. *j'ay ouï* I have heard; Participle *oyant* hearing; Future indic. *j'orray* and *j'oïray* I will heare: So *s'entrouïr* to heare one another; *ouvrir* to open, *offrir* to offer, are coniugated like *couvrir* to cover.

Present indic. *J'occi* I kill; 1, pret. *j'occi* I killed; 2, pret. *j'ay occi* I have killed; participle *occiant* and *occisant* killing.

Present indic. *Je pars* I depart; 1, pret. *je parti* I departed; 2, pret. *j'ay* or *je suis parti*, I have departed; Part. *partant* departing; *Partir* to divide, is coniugated according to the general Rule. *Repartir* to depart againe, *departir* to goe forth, are coniugated like the simple Verbe *Partir* to depart; *compartir* signifyeth onely to divide or share with another, *mipartir* to divide in the midst, and *not* remooving from a place.

Present ind. *Je pu* I stincke; 1, pret. *je pui*, I stinke; 2, pret. *j'ay pui* I have stincke; Fut. ind. *puray* I will stincke; Participle, *puant* stinking.

Predire to foretell, is coniugated like *dire* to tell, and *produire* to produce, like *duire*.

Pres. ind. *Je quier* I seeke; 1, pret. *je quis*, I sought; 1, pret. *j'ay quis* I have sought; Fut. ind. *queray* I will keepe; Part. *querrant* seeking.

feeling, remember to keepe the *Diphthong* of the Theme in the 3^d. person *Plu.* of the *Pres.* of the *Indic.* So *acquérir* to obtaine or get; *conquérir* to conquer; *enquerir* to enquire; *requérir* to require.

Rire, to
laugh;

Pres. indic. *Je ri* I laugh; 1, *Preterp.* *Je ri* I laughed; 2, *Pret. j' I have laughed; *Part. riant* laughing.*

Redire to repeat, *Relire* to read againe, *Reluire*, to shine cleerely; *Retenir*, to hold backe, *Revenir* to come backe, are like theyr *Simples*.

Saillir, to
leape up.

Saillir to leape up, wanteth the *Pres.* Tense of the *Indic.* Mood, and so consequently the second person *Sing.* of the *Imp.* Mood; in the other tenses it is like *Affaillir* to set upon; Some say *Je saille*, *tu sailles*, in the *Pres.* of the *Indic.* Mood, and in the *Opt.* also, and the *Subjunctive*, which I doe not allow or like of. Some say, *Je sau*, *tu saus*, which yet is *unusuall*. From hence is derived *Sauter* to leape, which is a Regular Verbe of the first Conjugation.

Sentir to
feele, or per-
ceive.

Pres. ind. *Je sen* I feele. 1, *preterp.* *Je senti* I felt; 2, *preterp. j' I have felt; *particip. sentant* feeling. So *dissentir* to dissent; *ressentir* to resent, *consentir* to consent.*

Servir to
serve.

Pres. ind. *Je sers* I serve; 1, *preterp.* *Je servi* I served; 2, *preterp. j' I have served; *Inf. Servir* to serve; *part. servant* keeping. So also *Reservir* to serve againe, *deservir* to unsupplish or take away. But *asservir* to make a Slave of,*

is containd under the Generall Rule of Regulars.

Pres. Ind. *Je me repen* I repent, 1. preterp. *je Repentir*, to me repenti I repented. 2. preterp. *je me suis re- repenti* I have repented : part. *Repentant* repenting.

This Verbe is onely Reciprocall.

Pres. Ind. *Je sors* I goe forth ; 1. preterp. *Sortir*, to goe *je sorti* I went forth ; 2. preterp. *j' ay* or *je suis* forth. *forti* I have gone forth ; particip. *Sortant* going forth. When it is thus Conjugated, it differeth from *Sortir* which signifyeth the same with *escheoir*, *advenir*, viz. to happen ; and *obtenir* to obtaine by loe or hap ; from whence *Resortir* to belong to jurisdiction, *assortir* to provide for every one his share ; both which follow the generall Rule.

Pres. indic. *Je suffi* I am sufficient ; 1. preterp. *suffir*, to *je suffi* I sufficed ; 2. preterp. *j' ay suffi* I have sufficed. sufficed ; part. *suffisant* sufficing ; this Verbe cannot have an Active voyce.

Pres. indic. *Je tien* I hold, 1. preterp. *je tins* *Tenir* to I held ; 2. preterp. *j' ay tins* and *tenu* I have held ; hold. part. *tenant* holding ; Fut. indic. *je tiendray* I will hold, and the third *Plur.* of the first preterp. of the indie. *tindrent* they held. So likewise *determinir* to deraine ; *contenir* to containe, *obtenir* to obtaine, *maintenir* to maintaine, or uphold ; *Retenir* to retaine or with hold ; *soustenir* to sustaine, *apartenir* to belong to.

Pres. indic. *Je tolli* I take away ; 1. preterp. *je tolli* or *tollu* I tooke away ; 2. preterp. *j' ay tollu* take away. or *tollis* I have taken away : part. *tollisant* taking away

away. *Oster* hath the same signification, save onely that *tolir* signifieth an *outragious* or *disgracefull* taking away.

Tisser and *Tire* to weave, are to be looked for in the 4th Coniugation.

Venir, to come.

Present ind. *Je vien* I come; 1, preter. *je vins* I came; 2, pret. *je suis venu* I have come; part. *venant* coming, Future indic *je viendray* I will come; the third person Plurall of the 1, preterp. *vinrent* they came: So *advenir* to happen, *devenir* to waxe or become, *revenir* to come againe, *provenir* to proceed, *parvenir* to come to, *survenir* to come upon, *intervenir* to come betweene: But *prevenir* to prevent, is both of the Active and Passive voyce: *subvenir* to helpe: and *convenir* to meet, be eyther *Actives* or *Neuters*.

Vestir to cloath.

Present ind. *Je vests* and *vestis* I cloath: 1, pret. *je vesti* I cloathed: 2, pret. *j'ay vestu* or *vesti* I have cloathed: part. *vestant* and *vestissant* cloathing. So *devestir* to uncloath: *revestir* to cloath againe, *investir* to invest, which followeth the generall Rule, and in which the *s*, is pronounced.

Of the third Coniugation.

YOU may remember that to this Coniugation I allotted the Diphthong *oi* before *r* and *re*; but I must crave leave to put in some, that have not *oi* immediately before *r* and *re*, which, eyther in regard their *Preterperfect* Tenses

Tenses are *so like* to the *Pret.* of Verbes that have *oi* before *r* and *re*, or else because of their extraordinary irregularity, cannot conveniently be put among the Verbes of any other Coniugat.

Present indic. *J'ay* I have : 1, pret. *j'en* I had : 2, *j'ay eu* I have had : Future indic. *j'auray* I shall have : part. *ayant* having : which is the Auxiliary Verbe of the Active voyce, and hath bin wholly Coniugated before. Avoir to have.

Present ind. *j'apperceoy* I perceive : 1, pret. *j'apperceu* I perceived : 2, pret. *j'ay apperceu* I have perceived : part. *appercevant* perceiving : Future ind. *j'apperceuray* I will perceive : So *concevoir* to conceive, *decevoir* to deceive, *recevoir* to receive. Appercevoir, to perceive.

Present ind. *Je boy* I drinke : 1, pret. *je beu* I dranke : 2, pret. *J'ay beu* I have druncke : part. *beuvant* drinking : Future indic. *je beuray* and *boiray* I will drinke : Forget not the Rule concerning the *Diphthong* of the Theme. Boire, to drinke.

Note by the way, that this Verbe is ioyned with *pers. Postpositive Pronounes* : as *je boy a vous*, I drinke to you : *beuver a moy*, drinke to me.

Pref. ind. *Je croy* I beleive : 1, pret. *je creu* I beleived : 2, pret. *j'ay creu* I have beleived : part. *croyant* beleiving. So *meſcroire* to misbeleive, *descroire* to discredit; as for *accroire* to give credit to, I know no Mood of it in use but the *Inf.* & that must be ioyned to the Verbe *faire* to doe, but it is used in a *bad* or *ironicall* sense: as *il me la fait accroire*, he maketh me beleive so; meaning that he hath perswaded him to beleive an incredible thing. Croire, to believe.
Heere

Heere I will put in the Verbs following, because it is so like *croire* in the 1. preterp. though indeed by the Infinit. Mood, it seemeth to be of the fourth Coniugation.

Croistre, to grow.

Pres. ind. *je crois* I grow; 1. preterp. *je creu* I grew; 2. preterp. *j' ay or je suis creu*, I have growne; part. *croissant* growing. So like *accroistre* to increase, *decroistre* to decrease, *parcroistre* to ripen; *surecroistre* to overgrow.

Heere also I will put in *Connoistre* to know, both in regard of its preterperf. and the Diphthong *oi*.

Connoistre to know.

Pres. indic. *je connoy* I know, 1. preterp. *je connus* I knew; 2. preterp. *j' ay connu* I have knowne; part. *connoissant* knowing. So also *desconnoistre* to forget, *mesconnoistre* to mistake; *reconnoistre* to mistake.

Devoir to owe.

Pres. indic. *je doy* I owe, 1. preterp. *je deu* I ow'd; 2. pret. *j' ay deu* I have owed; particip. *deuant* owing. Future indicative, *devray* I will owe;

Decevoir to deceive, *desmouvoir* to displace, follow the Rules of their Simples.

Towards the end of the Verbes of this Coniugation, you shall have *douloir* to grieve.

Falloir to behoove, and *faire* to doe, I will set downe below.

Mouvoir, & *mouvoir*, to move.

Pres. ind. *je meus* I move, 1. pret. *je meu* I moved, 2. pret. *j' ay meu* I have mooved; particip. *mouvant* & *mouvant* mooving; Future indic. *mouueray* & *mouueray* I will move. So likewise *esmouvoir* to stirre up; *desmouvoir* to displace; *Mouuer* to move

moove, is of the first Conjugation, but it differeth from *Mouvoir* in the use; for *mouvoir* is used in Metaphors, as *mouvoir une question, une sedition*, to moove a question or a sedition; and *mouvoir* is used to signifie corporall motions; as *mouvoir un potage qui boult*, to stirre broth that boyleth,

Pres. indic. *je paroy* I appeare; 1. pret. *je parus* I appeared; 2. pret. *j'ay paru* I have appeared; part. *paraissant* appearing: Future indic. *parotray* I will appeare; and *perroy*, which is out of use. So also *apparoir* to appeare, *comparoir* to present a mans selfe, *disparoir* to dis appeare; *Apparoir* and *paroir* are used impersonally, but with some variation: as *il pers, il appert, il paroist, il apparoit*, it appeareth *il parut, il apparut*, it appeared; *il perra, il apperra, il paroistra, il apparottra*, it shall appeare. *Apparoir* to appeare; *apparissant* appearing, &c. *Apparent* eminent, is an Adjective: some write it *apparent*, in regard of the Verbe from whence it is derived, it is a word proper to persons of quality.

Paroir, and *paroistre* to appeare.

Pres. indic. *Je puis* and *peux*, I am able; *tu peux* thou canst or art able; *il peut* he can or is able; 1. pret. *je pus* I was able; 2. pret. *j'ai pu* I have bin able; Fut. ind. *je pourray* I shall be able; part. *pouvant* being able; The 3d. person plur. of the pres. of the 1st. Mood, but not of the Imp. is *peuvent* they are able: The present of the Opt. and Subjunct. Mood, *je puisse* I may bee able. *Puissant*, powerfull is a mere Adjective, as *un puissant*

Pouvoir, to be able.

puissant Prince, a potent Prince; *une puissante nation*, a potent Nation; *Pouvant* is a meere participle.

Ramenter, to call to mind; Pres. ind. *Je Ramentoy* I call to mind; 1. pret. *Je Ramentu* I called to mind; 2. pret. *J'ay Ramentu* I have called to mind; Future ind. *Ramentevray* I will call to mind: part. *Ramentevant* calling to mind. Forget not the *Diphthong* of the *Theme* which maketh the third person plur. of the Present tense of the indic. *Ramentoyent*.

Sçavoir, to know, Pres. indic. *Je sçay* I know; 1. preterp. *Je sçeu* I knew; 2. preterp. *J'ay sçeu* I have knowne; part. *sçachant* knowing: the plur. of the *Theme* is *Sçavons*, *sçavez*, *sçavent*, we know, ye know, they know: the Imp. is *Sçache* know thou, *qu'il sçache* let him know. Plur. *Sçachons*, *sçachez*, *qu'ils sçachent*, &c. *Sçachant* is a meere Participle: as *Sçachant* *vostre volonté*, knowing your will. *Sçavant* is a pure Adiect. as *un sçavant homme*, *une sçavante personne*, a knowing man, or persō.

Sesoir and *soir*, to sit. Pres. indic. *Je sieds* I sit; 1. pret. *Je sis* I sate; 2. preterp. *J'ay sis* I have sitten: Part. *séant* and *sésant* sitting: Future ind. *serray* and *siéray* and *siéseray* I will sit: So also *asseoir* to sit downe, *Rassoir* to sit downe againe, *Sursoir* to surcease, *seoir*, *assoir* and *rassoir* are used Reciprocally. From hence is deriv'd the *Impersonall* so much in use: *Il sied* it is handsome or comely, *il sie soit* or *il seoit* it was comely, the preterp. tenses of *seoir*, [when it is taken impersonally] are not used, but instead of them we say, *Il fust seant* it was comely, *il a esté seant*, it hath bin comely, *Il siera* it will sit or be

be comely : The *Inf. estre seant* to be comely rather then *seoir*, &c. It signifieth to becomee, to be fit, or to be comly: as *Garder la bien seance*, to keep a decorum: *le droit de bien seance*, the law of comlineffe.

Pres. indic. *Je pleu* I raine ; 1, pret. *je pleu* I rained ; 2, pret. *j'ay pleu* I have rained ; Fut. ind. *pleuvray* I will raine ; Part. *pleuvant* raining. It may be used *Impersonally*, *il pleut* it raineth ; *il plut* it rayned, *il a plu* it hath rayned.

Pleuvor, to raine.

Souloir to be wont, is very defective : it hath onely the preterimp. of the Ind. *je soulois* I was wont ; and the infinitive *souloir*.

Souloir, to be wont.

Pres. ind. *Je vueil* and *veux* (which is more usual) I will ; 1. Pret. *je voulu* I willed ; 2. Pret. *j'ay voulu* I have bin willing : Part. *voulant* willing : Fut. ind. *je vaudray* I shall be willing. The *Imp.* is little used, viz. *veux* be thou willing ; *qu' il veule* or *vueille* let him be willing. Plur. *Voulons* let us be willing, *voulez* be yee willing, *qu' ils veulent* or *vueillent* let them be willing. The Pres. of the Opt. *je vtule* or *vueille* though the 3 d. person plur. of the Indic. be *veulent*. The 1, preterimp. of the Opt. Mood is *voulasse* and *vouisse*.

Vouloir, to be willing.

Pres. indic. *Je vaulx* I am worth ; 1, pret. *je val* I was worth : 2, pret. *j'ay valu* I have bin worth : Particip. *valant* being worth. Fut. ind. *je vaudray* I shall be worth. The 3 d. person Pl. of the Theme, is *valent* they are worth. The imp. *vaulx* be thou worth ; *qu' il vale* or *vaille* let him be worth. Pl. *valons*, *valez*, *valent*, or *vailent* let us be worth, be yee worth, let them be worth :

Valoir, to be worth.

Valant

puissant Prince, a potent Prince; *une puissante nation*, a potent Nation; *Pouvant* is a meere participle.

Ramenter
voir, to call
to mind;

Pres. ind. *Je Ramentoy* I call to mind; 1. pret. *J'ay Ramentu* I called to mind; 2. pret. *J'ay Ramentu* I have called to mind; Future ind. *Ramenteray* I will call to mind: part. *Ramenterant* calling to mind. Forget not the *Diphthong* of the *Theme* which maketh the third person plur. of the Present tense of the indic. *Ramentoyent*.

Sçavoir, to
know,

Pres. indic. *Je sçay* I know; 1. preterp. *Je sçeu* I knew; 2. preterp. *J'ay sçeu* I have knowne; part. *sçachant* knowing: the plur. of the *Theme* is *Sçavons*, *sçavez*, *sçavent*, we know, ye know, they know: the Imp. is *Sçache* know thou, *qu'il sçache* let him know. Plur. *Sçachons*, *sçachez*, *qu'ils sçachent*, &c. *sçachant* is a meere Participle: as *sçachant vostre volonté*, knowing your will. *sçavant* is a pure Adiect. as *un sçavant homme*, *une sçavante personne*, a knowing man, or persō.

Sesoir and
soir, to sit.

Pres. indic. *Je sieds* I sit; 1. pret. *Je sis* I sate; 2. preterp. *J'ay sis* I have sitten: Part. *séant* and *sésant* sitting: Future ind. *serray* and *siéray* and *siéseray* I will sit: So also *asseoir* to sit downe, *Rassoir* to sit downe againe, *Sursoir* to surcease, *soir*, *asseoir* and *rassoir* are used Reciprocally. From hence is deriv'd the *Impersonall* so much in use: *Il sied* it is handsome or comely, *il siésoit* or *il seoit* it was comely, the preterp. tenses of *seoir*, [when it is taken impersonally] are not used, but instead of them we say, *Il fust seant* it was comely, *il a esté seant*, it hath bin comely, *Il siéra* it will sit or be

be comely : The *Inf. estre seant* to be comely rather then *seoir*, &c. It signifieth to become, to be fit, or to be comly: as *Garder la bien-seance*, to keep a decorum: *le droit de bien-seance*, the law of comlineffe.

Pres. indic. *Je pleu* I raine; 1, pret. *je pleu* I rained; 2, pret. *j'ay pleu* I have rained; Fut. ind. *pleuvray* I will raine; Part. *pleuvant* raining. It may be used *Impersonally*, *il pleut* it raineth; *il plut* it rayned, *il a plu* it hath rayned.

Souloir to be wont, is very defective: it hath onely the preterimp. of the Ind. *je soulois* I was wont; and the infinitive *souloir*. *Souloir*, to be wont.

Pres. ind. *Je vueil* and *veux* (which is more usual) I will; 1, Pret. *je voulu* I willed; 2, Pret. *j'ay voulu* I have bin willing: Part. *voulant* willing: Fut. ind. *je vaudray* I shall be willing. The *Imp.* is little used, viz. *veux* be thou willing; *qu'il veule* or *vueille* let him be willing. Plur. *Voulons* let us be willing, *voulez* be yee willing, *qu'ils veulent* or *vueillent* let them be willing. The Pres. of the Opt. *je veule* or *vueille* though the 3d. person plur. of the Indic. be *veulent*. The 1, preterimp. of the Opt. Mood is *voulasse* and *voufisse*. *Vouloir*, to be willing.

Pres. indic. *Je vaulx* I am worth; 1, pret. *je valu* I was worth: 2, pret. *j'ay valu* I have bin worth: Particip. *valant* being worth. Fut. ind. *je vaudray* I shall be worth. The 3d. person Pl. of the Theme, is *valent* they are worth. The Imp. *vaulx* be thou worth; *qu'il vale* or *vaille* let him be worth. Pl. *valons*, *valez*, *valent*, or *vailent* let us be worth, be yee worth, let them be worth.

Valant

Valant is a meere participle ; as *une piece d'or valant dix livres*, a piece of gold worth tenne pound. *Vaillant* is a meere Adjective : as *un vaillant homme* a valliant man, *une vaillante vefve* a valliant Widdow.

Cheoir, to fall.

Pres. ind. *Je ché*, I fall ; 1, preterp. *Je cheu* I fell ; 2, pret. *j'ay cheut* I have fallen. particip. *cheant* and *chesant* falling : Future indic. *ch. rray* I will fall. So also *Recheoir* to fall againe, but *decheoir* to fall from, hath for its participle *decheu*, *decheuë* fallen, or *decheut*, *decheute*, indifferently as well one as the other. *Eschoir* to happen or fall out, hath *escheu*, *escheuë* fallen out,

Douloir, to grieve,

Pres. indic. *je deuls*, I grieve ; 1, pres. *je doulu* I grieved ; 2, preterp. *j'ay doulu*, I have grieved ; part. *deulant* and *deuillant* grieving. Fur. indic. *deuilleray*, I will grieve : it is most usuall when it is Reciprocated : as *je me deuls*, I grieve my selfe : it is used likewise impersonally, *il deult* and *il me deult*, I am sorry, it grieveth me.

Chaloir and *Falloir*, are meere Impersonals.

Chaloir to passe or take thought for.

Pres. ind. *il chaud* ; 1, preterp. *il chalut* ; 2, preterp. *il a chalu* ; part. *chalant* and *chailant* ; Future ind. *chaudra* ; the Pres. of the Imp. and the Optat. Mood, *il chaille* ; This Verbe is but seldome used : For it is not usefull, but in a Negation, or in Sentences which follow the Syntax of Negatives, viz. Interrogative, Conditional and doubting Sentences ; it is used also in some Ironies in which a Negation is included ;

Pres.

Pres. ind. *Il faut* it behooveth; 1, pret. *Il fa-* *Faire*, to
lut I was behoovefull; *Il a fait* it hath bin be- behoove:
 hoovefull. Part. *Fallant* and *faillant* being be-
 hoovefull. Future ind. *Il faudra* it shall be be-
 hoovefull: the Imperative and the Present of
 the Opt. and Subjunctive Moods *qu' il fale* and
faille.

I will put in here also, *Faire* to doe, *plaire*
 to please, *taire* to be silent, *paître* to feed, *traire*
 to draw, *braire* to bray, or bawle: *raire* to
 shave.

Pres. ind. *Je fay* I doe; 1, pret. *Je fi* I did; 1, *Faire*, to
 pret. *j' ay fait* I have done; Fut. ind. *je feray* I doe.
 shall doe; Part. *faisant* doing. The Ind. Mood
 Present Tense, *je fai, tu fais, il fait*, Plur. *Nous*
faisons, vous faites, ils font. I doe, thou
 doest, he doth. Plur. We doe, yee doe, they doe.
 The 3d person plurall of the Imp. *Qu' ils fa-*
cent let them doe. The Present tense of the Opt.
 Mood. *que je face* that I may doe. All the rest
 of this Verbe is Regular. The Compounds of it
 are *defaire* to undoe, *forfaire* to offend, to for-
 feite, *meifaire* to doe amisse, *surfaire* to overprise,
refaire to doe againe, *contrefaire* to imitate or
 make one thing like another.

Pres. ind. *Je plains* I please; 1, pret. *Je pleu* I *Plaire*, to
 pleased; 2, pret. *j' ay pleu* I have pleased; Part. please.
plaisant pleasing.

Pres. ind. *Je tays* I am silent; 1, pret. *Je teu* I *Taire*, to be
 held my peace; 2, pret. *j' ay teu* I have bin silent, silent.
 Part. *taisant* being silent. We use it as an absolute
 Reciprocall, as *je me tays* I am silent.

Traire, to draw. Present indic. *Je tray* I draw; 1, pret. *je trahi* I drew; which is out of use. 2, pret. *J'ay trait* I have drawn; Partic. *trayant* drawing. The Verbes compound, have the first *Definite Pret.* more used, then the simple hath: as *Attirer* to attract, *j'attrahi*; *fortraire* to lurch, *poutraire* to pourtray.

Braire, to bray like an Ass. Present ind. *Je bray* I bray; 1, pret. *je brahi* I brayed (a word little used) 2, pret. *j'ay brai* I have brayed. Part. *brayant* braying.

Pastret to feed, shall be put in the fourth Conjugation.

Raire, to shave.

Raire to shave is very Defective: for it hath onely the Sing. Number of the Present tense in the Indic. Mood commonly used: as *Je Ray*, *tu Rais*, *il Rait*, I shave, thou shavest, he shaveth. And it may be the 2. d. person sing. of the Imperat. Mood: *Ray* shave thou. The Infinit. *Raire*, and so consequently the Fut. of the Indic. Mood, *Rairay* I will shave. The common Part. *Rais* Masc. *raise* fem. shaved, &c. The rest are out of use. *Ras* masc. *rase* fem. shaved, and *rez*, *rese*, are Adjectives. This Verbe *Raire*, signifyeth the same that *Raser* doth, which is a Regular Verbe of the first Conjugation.

I must intreat you to *Practise*, in this third Conjugation, the Rule which I gave you in the Chapter of the *Diphthongs*: viz. that the *Preterperfect* Tenses in *eu*, are pronounced like single *u*, but the *Present* Tenses have a mixt sound of *e*, and *u*. For in the Present tense, you must say *je veux* I am willing, *je peux* I am able, *je meurs* I

move

move : but in the Preterp. *Je pu* I was able, *je mu* I mooved, *j' ay pu, mu, vu, fu, bu* : I have mooved, seene, knowne and drunke. So shall you Pronounce all the Tenses of the Verbe *Boire* to drinke, though they be written with the *Diphthong eu*, as *Buvant* drinking, *buvoys* let us drink, *buvoay* I will drinke, &c.

Of the fourth Coniugation.

YOU have not forget (I hope) that in *this Coniugation* are conteyned all Verbes that have *c, d, p, r, t, v*, before *re* in the *Infinitive Mood*; I will here set you downe *all* of them, *not in order*, but as they come to my memory. They are very Irregular, and the *Compound Verbes follow* the *Simple*, of which they are compounded.

Pres. indic. *Je vainc* I overcome; 1. pret. *je Vaincre*, to *vainqui* I overcame; *j' ay vaincu* I have overcome; overcome. Part. *vainquant* overcoming. So likewise *survaincre* to get the upper hand.

Pres. ind. *Je crain* I feare; 1. Pret. *je craigni* I *Craindre*, to feared; 2. pret. *j' ay craint* I have feared; Partic. *feare. craignant* fearing. This Verbe may serve for an example for *all* Verbes, which in their *Inf. Mood*, end in *aindre, eindre* and *oindre*. Such are *Contraindre* to constrain; *enfreindre* to infringe; *plaindre* to complaine; *aveindre* to draw forth; *geindre* to groan; *astreindre* to tye to, or to streighten; *esteindre* to extinguish; *estreindre* to ty; *seindre*

to girt, *seindre* to seigne, *teindre* to dip in colour, or to dye; *pleindre* to complaine, *peindre* to paint, *reſtreindre* to reſtraine, *oindre* to annoynt, *joindre* to joyne, *poindre* to prick. Yet theſe 3. *aveindre*, *teindre*, *eſteindre*, have alſo *aveindant*, *teindant*, *eſteindant*, for their Participles; with thoſe Tenses that are derived from them: they have alſo two Definite Preterperfect Tenses, and *aveindre* hath two ſecond Preterperfect Tenses.

Aveindre to draw forth; Pref. ind. *J'avein* I draw forth; 1, pret. *j'aveigni* or *aveindi* I drew forth; 2, pret. *j'ayaveint* and *aveindu* I have drawne: Part. *aveindant* and *aveignant* drawing forth.

Teindre, to dye. Pref. ind. *letein* I dye; 1, pret. *jetaigni* and *teindi* I dyed; 2, pret. *j'ayteint* I have dyed: Part. *teignant* and *teindant* dying. So likewiſe *eſteindre*.

Respondre, to answer. Pref. ind. *le respon* I answer; 1, preterp. *le respondi* I answered; 2, pret. *j'ayrespondu* I have answered; Part. *respondant* answering. So likewiſe *tendre* to stretch, *pendre* to hang, *es-pandre* to ſpread abroad, *vendre* to ſell, *ſeindre* to cleave, *rendre* to reſtore, *Batre* to beate, *fondre* to melt, *tondre* to clip, *Perdre* to looſe, *Rompre* to breake, and theyr Compounds.

Descendre, to deſcend. Prefent indic. *le deſcen* I deſcend; 1, pret. *le deſcendi* I deſcended; 2, pret. *j'ay* and *je ſuis deſcendu* I have deſcended. Participle *deſcendant* deſcending.

Prendre, to take. Prefent ind. *le preu* I take; 1, pret. *le prin* or *pri* I tooke; 2, pret. *J'ay prins* and *priu* I have taken: part. *prenant* taking. The 3 d. perſon plu-

of the 1, præterp. *prindrent* and *prireut* they have taken. So likewise *apprendre* to learne, *esprendre* to take; *comprendre* to comprehend; *entreprendre* to undertake, *reprendre* to reprehend, *meprendre* to my mistake, *surprendre* to surprise.

Present indie. *Je pais* I feed; 1, præt. *Je peu* I fed; 2, præt. *J'ay peu* I have fed: Part. *paissant* feeding. So also *repaisire* to feed, or take Repast.

Present indie. *Je nais* I am borne; 1, præterp. *Je nais* I was borne; 2, præt. *Je suis né* or *naï* I have bin borne; Part. *Naissant* being borne. Future indic. *naistray* and *naistray* I shall bee borne: But *naquir* and *naquiray* are little in use.

Præf. ind. *Je sui* I follow; 1, præt. *Je suis* I followed; 2, præt. *J'ay suivi* I have followed; Part. *Suivant* following. So likewise *ensuire* to imitate, *s'entre suivre* to follow one another, *poursuivre* to pursue, *acconsuivre* to overtake.

Præf. indie. *Je vi* I live; 1, præt. *Je vis* & *vescu*, I lived; 2, præt. *J'ay vécu* I have lived; Part. *Vivant* living; So *revivre* to live againe, *survivre* to survive.

Present indie. *Je mor*, I bite; 1, præt. *Je mord* I bit; 2, præt. *J'ay mors* and *mordu* I have bitten; Particip. *Mordant* biting: So likewise *demordre* to let goe ones hold, *Remordre* to bite, *Tordre* to wreath, *destordre* to wreath aside, *Retordre* to put backe againe.

Present indie. *Je tis* I weave; 1, præt. *Je tiss* I weaved; 2, præt. *J'ay tissû*, I have weaved: Part. *Tissant* weaving. Future indic. *Tistray* weave.

and *tieray* I shall weave; So likewise *desire* to unweave, and *retire* to weave againe.

Moudre and **meudre**, to grind. Pres. indic. *Je mouds* and *je meuds* I grinde; 1. pret. *je moulu* I ground; 2. Pret. *j'ay moulu* I have ground; Partic. *Moulant* and *meulant* grinding. So likewise *esmoudre* to grind or sharpen with a Grindstone;

Coudre; to sew. Pres. ind. *Je couds* I sew; 1. pret. *Je coud* and *cousu* I sewed; 2. pret. *j'ay coud* I have sewed; Part. *cousant* sewing. So likewise *decoudre* to unsew; *Recoudre* to sew againe.

Soudre, to loosen. Pres. indic. *Je souds* I loosen; 1. preterp. *je solu* I loosed; 2. pret. *j'ay solu* I have loosened; Part. *solvant* loosening It is used in Metaphors; as *soudre un argument, une question, une difficulté*, to solve an argument, a question, or difficulty. The Indefinite or 2d. Preterp. is also *j'ay souls* and the Fem. Gender of *souls* is *soulte*; but this Preterp. is not so usuall in the simple, as in the Compounds. *J'assouds* I absolve; *j'absolu* I absolved; *j'ay absolu*, and *absoult* I have absolved; *absouldre* to absolve, *absolvant* absolving; *Dissoudre* to dissolve, is conjugated in the same manner; but that *dissolu* masc. *dissoluë* fem. are taken in a bad sence, for things disordered and unruly; as *un homme dissolu en propos*, a dissolute man in his words; *une femme, or une vie dissoluë* a dissolute woman or life, that is a shamelesse; *souder* to sowder, is of the first Conjugation, and is not derived from this *Soudre*.

Mettre, to put. Pres. ind. *Je mets* I put; 1. preterp. *je mis* I put; 2. pret. *j'ay mis* I have put. Part. *mettant* putting.

putting. So also *admettre* to admit, *commettre* to commit, *démettre* to dismiss, *entremettre* to interpose, *maître* to put amiss; *permettre* to permit, *remettre* to remit, *sousmettre* to submit, *promettre* to promise.

Pres. ind. *Je ponds* I lay an Egge; 1. pret. *Je ponds*, *ponni* and *ponnu* I layd an Egge; 2. pret. *j'ay ponds*, *pondu* and *ponnu* I have layd an Egge; Part. *pondant* and *pouuant* laying an Egge. *La ponte* is a Subst. of the fem. Gen. signifying *laying of eggs*.

Pres. indic. *Je clos* I shut; 1. pret. *Je clos* I shut; 2. Pret. *j'ay clos* I have shut; Part. *clostant* shutting. Thus I thinke it best to forme it; yet in *Ronsard* you read *esclouit* in the 3d. person Sing. of the 1. pret. of the Verb *esclorre* to shut out; *enclorre* to shut in, *forclorre* to shut forth, *renclorre* to shut in againe. Some of the Compounds change *o*, in *u*.

Pres. ind. *J'exclus* I exclude; 1. Pret. *J'exclus* I excluded; 2. Pret. *J'ay exclus* I have excluded; Part. *Excluant* excluding. So *conclurre* to conclude, *forclurre* to shut out; From whence cometh the Law word *Forclusion* a debarring from. *Reclurre* to shut againe, or shut up, hath only the 2. Pret. of the Ind. the Infinitive and the Fut. of the Indicative Mood in use.

Pres. ind. *J'ards* I burne; 1. preterp. *J'ardi* I burnt; 2. Pret. *J'ay ars* I have burned; Part. *ardant* burning. Fut. indic. *J'ardray* I will burne.

Pres. ind. *J'espars* I scatter; 1. Pret. *J'espardi* I scattered; 2. Pret. *J'ay espars* I have scattered; Part. *Espardant* scattering.

Clorre, to shut.

Exclurre, to exclude or shut out.

Ardre and *ardoir*, to burne.

Espardre, to spread abroad or scatter.

Semondre, Present indic. *je semmon*, I summon ; 1, pret. to summon, *je semmonai* and *semmondi* : I summoned : 2, pret. *j'ay semmons*, I have summoned ; Part. *Semonnant* and *semmondant* summoning.

Sourdre, to spring from. Pres. ind. *le sourds* I arise ; 1, pret. *je sourdi* I arose or sprang from : 2, pret. *j'ay sours* I have sprung from : Partic. *Sourdant* springing from. We use this Verbe commonly Impersonally : *Il sourdit* it springeth, *Il sourdit* it sprang, *il est sours* it hath sprung, *il sourdra* it will spring. From hence commeth the Substantive *source* a Spring, head, or originall of a thing ; and *Ressource* a re-covering or rayning againe.

Escourre, to shake off. *Escourre* to shake off, *secourre* to joulte, are defective, and little used. The Pres. tense of the Indie. Mood, is *j'escou* I shake off, *tu escou* thou shakest off, *il escout* he shaketh off. The second Preterp. *j'ay escoux* I have shooke off. The 3^d of this Verbe is wanting. So likewise *secourre* which signifieth to shake, toasse or joulte, like *secouer* which is a Verbe of the first Coniugation : from whence it is derived. *Secousse* a shaking or tossing, is a Nouns substantive ordinary enough. *Benistre* to blesse, or wish well to *querre* to seek, *cognoistre* to know, *paroistre* to appeare eminent, were spoken of before [viz. in the third Coniugation.

And thus I thinke I have made an end of the second sort of Verbes, viz. the Irregulars. So that now I make account ; I have conteyned all the Verbes of our Language in this Booke. The Regulars are contayned under Generall Rules :

and

and the *Irregulars* are so exactly set downe in the Exception, that no man shall be left in any doubt.

Of Verbes Passive and Impersonals.

THe whole Conjugation of the *Verbe Passive*, you know well enough: for it is coneyned under the *Verbe Je suis*; which, by this time I suppose you have learned without Booke; There I told you that by joyning the *Common Participle*, of any *Verbe* whatsoever, to all the *Tenses*, *Numb.* and *Persons* of *je suis*, you have any *Verbe Passive* you can desire. So that I shall now need to say no more: especially being, that in *this*, we differ not from any of the *Vulgar Languages* of the *Westerne* parts of the World.

Of the *Impersonals* little also shall need to be spoken: for it is nothing, but having recourse to the 3d. *Persons Sing.* of the *Verbes Personals*, & so you have the whole Coniugation of any *Impersonall Verbe*: just as it is in other Languages.

But we have *Impersonals* of two sorts; The first sort hath a *Passive signification*, and is made of the Particle *on* or *lon* put before the 3d. *person sing.* of any *Verbe* whatsoever, whether it be *transitive*, *Reciprocall*, *Neuter* or *Passive*. The Latines expresse it by the third persons of their *Passive*

five voyce, and the Dutch by the word *Mann*: as *Mann sagt* or *mann list*: as *on dit* it is sayd, or men say; *on lit* men read, *on aime* men love. So also *on est aimé* men are loved; *on sera aimé* men shall be loved; *on va* they goe, or men goe; *on court* they run, &c.

The Second sort of Impersonals, have an *Active signification*: and it is made of the 3d. *person Sing.* of many Verbes, by putting the Particle *il* before it. And here you are to Note, that *il* cannot be put before all Verbes whatsoever: but *on* and *lon* may, excepting onely some few, which will have onely *il* before them. As *il faut* it must, not *on faut*: *il chaut* it is cared for, *il reste* it remayneth: not *on chaut*, *on reste*: So likewise, *il convient* it is fitting.

Now because (as I sayd) *all* Verbes cannot be made Impersonals *this way*: I think it will not be amisse, to set downe a Catalogue of those which are most in use, according to the Rancke or Order of the Conjugations.

As,

Il Reste it remayneth, *il va* it goeth, *il ennuie* it is tedious; *il fauche* it troubleth, *il tarde* it hindreth, *il soucie* it vexeth, *il confesse* it is manifest, *il couste* it costeth, *il grieve* it is grievous, *il poise* or *pese* it loadeth, *il importe* it is of importance, *il manque* it fayleth, *il Regne* it ruleth, *il profite* it profiteth, *il tombe* it falleth, *il arrive* it happeneth, *il semble* it seemeth, *il demange* it itcheth, *il gele* it freezeth, *il tonne* it Thundereth, *il gresle* it hayleth, *il esclaire*

esclaire it Lightneth, *il niege* it Snoweth, *il se trouue* it is found, *il se controuue* it is devised, *il s' inuente* it is invented, *il se forge* it is forged, *il se mesle* it is mixt, *il se range* it is ranked, &c.

Il cuit it boyleth, it smarterh; *Il duit* it conduceth, *il nuit* it hurteth, *il vient* it commeth, *il conuient* it is convenient, *il aduient* it happeneth in the meane time, *il prouient* it proceedeth, *il souvient* it remembreth, *il tient* it holdeth, *il appartient* it belongeth, *il sert* it serveth, *il suffit* it is sufficient, *il fait* it doth, *il se fait* it is done, *il court* it runneth, *il sort* it goeth forth; *il se nourrit* it is nourished, *il se pourrit* it is rotted, *il se ravit* it is taken away violently, &c.

Il fuit it becommeth, *il chet* it falleth, *il eschet* it falleth out or happeneth, *il vaut* it is worth, *il faut* it must, *il chaud* it is cared for, *il deut* it aketh, *il pert*, *il appert*, *il apparoit* it belongeth, *il plaist* it pleaseeth, *il croist* it increaseth, *il pleut* it raineth, *il y a* there is, *il se void* it is seene, *il se recoit* it is receiued, *il s' apperçoit* it is perceived, *il se croit* it is believed.

Il est it is, *il sourd* it ariseth, *il naist* it is derived from, *il se prend* it is taken, *il pend* it hangerh, *il se met* it is put, *il se permet* it is permitted, *il s' ensuit* it followeth, *il se commet* it is committed, *il se rompt* it is broken, *il se perd* it is lost, &c.

Many more Verbes you may meet with, which have an Impersonall signification: the number will have

be almost infinite, if you adde hereto for Impersonals (as in reason you may) all those which are used, in the 3d. person Sing. like Impersonals, with the Prepositive Pronoun *se* before them: as *il se prouve* it is proved, *il se traite* it is handled, *il se Rencontre* it is met with, *il se sème* it is sowne, *il se cueille* it is gathered, *il se convertit* it is converted, *il se divertit* it is diverted, *il s'esclaircit* it is cleared, &c. For in my opinion, all Verbes Active and Passive may be used in this manner, as they are also in the Italian. They have commonly after them a Noun, cyther of the Nominat. or Accusat. (which are both one) and of either Numb. as *il se dit infinies paroles vaines*, the vaine words that are spoken are infinite; *il se sème plusieurs fauces nouvelles par le Monde*, Many false reports are scattered all the World over: *il se trouve de gens de bien par tout, et de meschans aussi*, There are every where honest men to be found, and bad men too: *Il se fait de grands magnificences au couronnement du Roy*, There is great State at the Kings Coronation, &c.

Il loist for *il est loisible* or *licite*, it is lawfull; is frequent in our vulgar Bookes. I find no other Tenses of it, but *il loist* it is lawfull; *il loisoit* it was lawfull, and in the Present tense of the Opat. Mood, *Qu' il loise* that it be lawfull; it hath no more: or at least I know no more of it.

The like I may say, of the old impersonall *il afferit*, it belongeth to a mans duty; which is all one

one with the Latine impersonals *Pertinet, convenit, spectat*, or *il appartient, il touche, il est du droit or devoir*: I know no other Tenses of it but the Pres. *il afferit*, Preterimp. *il affererois*, Fut. indic. *il afferera*. Pres. Opt. *qu' il afferere*. It may be it is derived from the Latine Verbe *affert*, with a little variation of the signification of it.

Of the Use of Verbes.

IN the handling of the Parts of Speech, my Iayme hath alwayes bin, to touch *only* (as neere as my skill and memory would give me leave) those things which were of *speciall note*, without spending of Paper in setting downe those Rules, which are eyther to be found in *other vulgar Languages*, as well as ours, or else may be supplied by a mans owne judgment; The like will I here observe in the Verbs. For it would be a long businesse, and would take up a great deale of Paper, to set downe every particular Rule, concerning the Syntaxe of the Verbes: which would be a fitter Subject for a *Thesaurus* or Store-house of words, then a Grammar: and therefore I will not make that my pretence: I will only set downe *in generall*, such Observations, as are peculiar to our Language, or where, in strangers sayle and mistake oftenest. Besides, you may remember, that in the Rules for the Construction of the *other Parts of Speech*, I have

have *intermixt* every where, Rules concerning the Verbes; for such is the affinity, that one part hath with another, in all Languages, that the Construction of one, cannot be set downe, without some mention of the other.

Our Language, in the *placing* of words, loveth to follow the *Naturall order* of the *understanding*: which is, that the word which *governeth*, should come *before* the word *governed*: as *Clement Marot* (a French Poet of good esteeme in his time) sayth in these Verses.

Enfans, oyez cette Leçon :
Nostre langue a cette façon,
Que le terme qui va devant,
Volontiers regit le suivant.

Listen Children unto me,
 And let this your Lesson be,
 That words which *governe*, evermore
 In our Language goe *before*.

And this is the reason, why in our Language, there is no such interposing and interlacing of words, *between* the word *governing*, and the word *governed*, as in other Languages there is.

We do therefore ordinarily begin with the *Nom.* case, which commeth *before* the *Verbe*, the *Accus.* or *Dat.* commeth *next*, or *both*, if the sentence require them: then the *Adverbe*, if it come not *next* after the *Verbe*: and *last* of all the *Accus. & Dat.* Cases, which are governed by the *Verbe*: as *Les*
dis-

disputes de la Religion ont apporté de merveil-
lement grands remuëmens en France, Disputes a-
 bout Religion, have caused wonderfull great
 Commotions in France. *La vertu rend l'homme*
grandement recommandable à tous, Vertue recom-
 mendeth a man very much to all companies. In
 those *Tenses* which are *Compounded*, the *auxilia-*
ry Verbe, commeth best next after its *Nomina-*
tive Case: and *betweene it*, and the *common Par-*
ticiple, you may interpose many words, and parti-
 cularly the *Adverbe*, when it *expresseth* the signi-
 fication of the Verb, by any circumstance: (for the
Adverbe must alwayes be joyned to the word *ſ*
 it explicateth) but take heed of interposing the
Accus. case, *ſ* is governed by the Verb; for *ſ* must
 come after the common Partic. as *Les disputes de*
la Religion ont de nostre temps grandement es-
clarci la verité, *ſ* disputes which have bin about
 religion in our times, have much cleered the truth.
 Above all things take heed of putting the *Verbe* at
ſ end of the period, as the Latins and Dutch doe.

We seldome put any word that *belongeth* to the
 Verb, *between it* and the *Nom. case*: for when two
 Substant. are joyned together with any of these
 Articles, *viz. de, du, des*, they cannot be disjoyned,
 but must be reckoned for one *Nom. case*, as *la clem-*
ence de Cesar a tousjours esté prisee, The clem-
 eney of Cesar was alwayes esteemed; *L'au-*
thorité du peuple Romain est beaucoup decheu-
te, The authority of the people of Rome
 is much decayed; Besides, when any *whole*
clause, in any kind of *Parenthesis*, commeth
betweene

betweene the Nomin. and the Verbe, this doth not concerne the Verbe; because the *sense* for that while is in a manner *suspended*: as *Le Roy, apres avoir connu ma fidelité et diligence en plusieurs importants affaires, m'a amplement remuneré, et depuis tousjours bien aimé*, The King, after he knew my fidelity and diligence in many important businesses, hath amply rewarded me, and loved me ever hereafter. *Les Embassadeurs, ayans en plein conseil exposé leur charge ont reçu favorable Responce*, The Embassadors having delivered their business in a full Assembly of the Councill, have received a favourable Answer.

Of the *Personall Pronounes* of the *Nominat. Case*, we have spoken before; but other *Nominatives* sometimes admit an *Adverbe* which belongeth to the Verbe, *betweene* them and it: as *Mon Precepteur souvent me Reprend*, my Master doth often reprehend me. Yet it were better to say, *me Reprend souvent*. So likewise, *Mons. Volontiers et ordinairement employe la matinée aux exercices*, The Gentleman, ordinarily and with his good will, spendeth the Morning in Exercise. *Mons. employe volontiers*, &c. would sound better. *Cela grandement me plaist*, This pleaseth me exceedingly; but *me plaist grandement* is better.

Donc when it is the 2d. or 3d. word in the sentence standeth well; *Cesar donc estant arrivé*, *Cesar* then being arrived; *qui donc vous croira*, or *qui vous croira donc*? Who then will believe you. Some-

Sometimes we put the *Nom.* Case *after* the Verbe: which, if it be done handsomely, is no Novices trick, but may well become a Master in our Language. This we doe, when the period beginneth with an *Adverbe*, a *Conjunction*, or any part of Speech which is undeclined: as *Si parla le Roy à eux*, So the King spake to them. *Lors se leua Monsieur le President*. Then up stept the President: *Soudain s' esmeut un grand bruit*, Whereupon there was a great noyse. *Tost apres vindrent les Embassadeurs*, presently upon it came the Embassadors.

With the *Verbes Passive*, these Prepositions *de*, *du*, *des*, are used instead of *a*, *ab*, *abs*, in the Latine; as *Les enfans sont plus aimez du pere*, *que le pere des enfans*, Children are more beloved of the Father, then the Father of the Children: or else we may say, *par le pere*. Of this I have given a touch in the Articles.

In any thing else, our Verbes whither *Active* and *Transitive*, *Reciprocall*, or *Neuter*, doe scarce differ from the Latine.

But we have many Verbes, which serve not only as *Actives Transitive*, but also may be *Reciprocated*, or have a *Neuter signification*, according to their different Conjugating, and the diversity of the Construction that is used with them: which, many studyers of our Language perceiving, they have desired a List or Catalogue of them. These then which follow (in my opinion) may be reckoned for such.

A. *Aborder* to board or come vp to, *abaisser* to let or put downe, *aboutir* to grow to a head, *abreger* to make short, *accourcir* to curtall or make shorter, *adoucir* to mollifie, *afoblir* to weaken, *asfermir* to settle, *asadir* to foole, *agrandir* to enlarge, *agreslir* to make slender, *aigrir* to make sowre, *aleuir* to make limber, *alonger* to lengthen, *allegger* to lighten, *aleunir* to make young, *amaigrir* to macerate or make leane, *amender* to amend, *amenuiser* to lessen, *amollir* to mollifie, *amoindrir* to diminish, *anéantir* to annihilate, *anonchalir* to grow idle or make idle, *amoitir* to wet, *apetisser* to make little, *ardre* or *ardoir* to burne, *arondir* to make round, *asprir* to make rough, *atiedir* to make warme, *atendrir* to make tender, *assagir* to make wise, *augmenter* to increase, *avachir* to make slack, *assecher* to dry, *appauvrir* to impouerish, *apesantir* to poltronise, *apriuoiser* to make tame.

B. *Baisser* to let downe, *bandir* to bend, *blanchir* to whiten, *bouger* to stirre from ones place, *bransler* to shake, *brusler* to burne, *brunir* to make browne, *blondir* to grow yellow.

C. *Changer* to change, *charger* to load, *croistre* to encrease, *chanzir* to mold, *crouler* to wagg or shake.

D. *Diminuer* to diminish, *degeler* to thaw, *delogger* to dislodge, *decliner* to decline, *deuoler* to fly away, *durcir* to harden.

E. *Embellir* to embellish, *ensaidir* to make deformed, *encherir* to make deare, *encliner* to encline, *endurcir* to harden, *enorgueillir* to grow proude, *enforcir*

enforcir to enforce, *engourdir* to benum or stupifie, *engrossir* to engrosse, *enhardir* to encourage, *engraisir* to make leane, *enrichir* to enrich, *envenimer* to venomie or impoison, *empireir* to make worse, *enviellir* to grow old, *esclairer* to lighten, *esclaircir* to cleare, *espaisir* to thicken, *eslargir* to enlarge, *estreicir* to streighten, *esloingner* to remooue farre of, *evanoüir* to vanish.

Fener, *fanir*, or *faner*, to fade; *flestrir* to grow staggie, *flechir* to bend, *finir* to finish. F.

Gresir or *graisler* to grow slender, *grossir* to grow big, *grister* to broyle, *grôuler* to scorch or parch, *guerir* to heale, or waxe well. G.

Hauser, to hoist or grow high. H.

Jaunir, to yellow. I.

Lâschir to loosen, *lôger* to lodge. L.

Meurir to ripen, *moirir* to wette, *moisir* to mould, *multiplier* to multiply, *monter* to mount, or rise vp, *mouvoir*, *mouuer*, *muër*, to moue. M.

Noircir to make blacke, *nicher* to build a nest. N.

Piler to peale, pound, or stamp, *Plomber* to put lead vpon, *pourrir* to rot, *profiter* to profit, *panchir* to warpe on one side. P.

Rabaisser to abate, *ravaler* to sup vp againe, *rancir* to grow musty, *reboucher* to stoppe vp againe, *remuër* to remove, *rencherir* to make dearer, *renforcer* to reinforce, *restreicir* to streighten or bring into streights againe, *reverdir* to grow greene againe, *rajeunir* to grow young againe, *roir* to be stiffe, *roisir* to rost, *rougir* to blush, *roussir* to grow R.

grow red haired ; *Reculer* to recoyle, when it is joyned with the Pronoun *se* ; otherwise, it signifyeth to remove out of the way.

S. *Saigner* to bleed, *sonner* to sound, *seicher* to drye.

T. *Trainer* to drag, *tromper* to deceive, *tarir* to dry.

V. *Verdir* to waxe greene, *vieillir* to grow old, *venter* to famie.

All these Verbes, and perhaps divers others, in severall sences may serve for *Transitive Actives*, *Reciprocals*, or *Neuters* : as *Le Soleil* mollit *la cire*, et durcit *la fange*, the Sunne softeneth the Waxe, and hardeneth the Dyr; *La cire* mollit or s' amollit *au Soleil*, et *la fange* y durcit or s'y durcit, The Waxe groweth soft, or softeneth it selfe at the Sunne, and Dyr groweth hard, or hardeneth it selfe at it. *La rosée du Ciel* blanchit *à fleur* *la toille*, The dew of Heaven whiteneth the Linnen cloath ; *La toille* blanchit, or se blanchit *par la rosée*, The web of linnen cloath whiteneth, or maketh it selfe white with the dew. *La fertilité de cette année* ravalera beaucoup le *prix de viures*, This fruitfull yeare, will bate much in the price of Victuals : *Le prix de viures* ravalera, or se ravalera *par la fertilité de cette année*, The price of Victuals will abate, or will abate it selfe, in regard of this fruitfull yeare ; and so of other. These examples, may put you in mind of the Construction of the *Reciprocal* Verbes, which have sometimes a *Passive sense* in regard of the *Action*, reflecting upon the agent him-

himselfe, maketh it *Passive*: as *Si je ne me trompe*, if I be not deceived; *Vous vous abusez*, you are abused; *Nous nous tourmentons*, we are vexed or troubled; This *Passive* sense, is most frequent in the 3d. person both *Sing.* and *Plurall*: to which, if we put the Pronoun *se*, we make or may make, all *Phrases*, wherein the third person is, *Passive*: as *Ami certain se connoist au besoin*, A certaine and sure friend, is knowne in time of need; *Les richesses au temps present se prisent plus que la vertu*, Riches are prized in these dayes above vertue: *Le bonnes Lettres s'acquièrent à grand travail d'esprit et longue estude*, Good literature is gotten by great paines taking and long study; These *Phrases*, are exceeding frequent in our language, whensoever the *agent*, or *Substantive* working, is not expressed: and they are so often met with, that I shall not need here to set downe any examples. They are very much in use also among the *Italians*, who use no way to expresse a *Passive Impersonall*, so much as they doe this.

This way of Construction, doth often change both the *sense* and *signification* of a *Verbe*, as well as the *Conjugation*: As *J' aime Dieu*, I aime *bonnes Lettres*, I love God; I love good Literature. *Je m' aime aux champs*, *je ne m' aime point à la Cour*, I am pleased in the Country, I am not pleased at Court. *Passer quelq; chose*, to passe by any thing; *se passer de quelq; chose*, Not to care for a thing. *se passer à quelq; chose*, to be contented, or make a shift with any thing;

as *Il a des biens pour se passer*, He hath goods enough to rub on, or make a shift with; *Garder quelcun*, To keepe or preserve any one; *Se garder de quelcun* to take heede of any one. These will serve for examples: use and observation must teach you the rest.

Many Tenses of the Verbe *Sçavoir* to know, are used to signifie the same with *Pouvoir* to be able. Those which are most used in this sense, are the 2. *Preterp.* and *Preterplup.* of the *Indic.* all the *Subjunct.* Mood, and the *Preterplup.* of the *Infinit.* There is no Phrase more common, then *je ne sçauois* I cannot, for *je ne puis*: & it is rather used *Negatively*, & without the expletive *en*, then affirmatively; and yet it is used *affirmatively* also.

We use also very often the Verbe *Devoir*, with the *Infinitive* Moodes of Verbes, to expresse the *Future* tenses of divers Verbes, by way of *Periphrasis*, which is like the *Dutch* manner: but we use this in *affirmation*, rather then in negation; and yet we use it in *Negation* too. Now, (in my opinion) the Tenses which wee ofteneft use in this manner, are the *Pres.* and *Preterimp.* of the *Indic.* Mood. The *Pres.* and 1. *Preterimp.* and the 1. *Preterplup.* of the *Subjunct.* and the *Pres.* of the *Infinitive* Mood. Looke backe to the *Periphrasing* of the *Latine* gerunds, and *Future* tenses of the *Infinitive* Mood.

These Verbes following *accuser* to accuse, *prevenir* put for *accuser* to accuse, *blâmer* to discommend, *taxer* to carpe at, *soupponner* to suspect, *atteindre* to ataine, *convaincre* to conuince; and such like: or of a *contrary* signification: as, *absoudre*

dre to absolue, *afranchir* to set at liberty, *deliurer* to deliuer, *excuser* to excuse, *acquitter* to acquit, *louër* to praise, *priser* to esteeme, *estimer* to value, will haue the person *accused*, in the *Accusat.* case, and the *vice* whereof he is accused, in the *Genit.* *Ne blâmez point mon maistre d'avarice*, Blame not my Master of covetousnesse; *Vous m'accusez de negligence*, You accuse me of negligence; *On vous charge de faux crimes*, Men accuse you falsely; *Un tel est fort loüé de sa diligence*, Such a one is much commended for his diligence, *acquitez vous de vostre promesse*, Performe your promise.

I have heard many strangers aske, *pour combien voulez vous vendre ce bas de soye*, For how much will you sell these silke stockings; *J'ay acheté ce chappeau pour six escus*, I bought this hat for six crownes; *pour combien vous a coûté cette épée*, How much did this sword cost you? But this is neither a good Latine, nor a good French Phrase: and therefore let them know, that *acheter* to buy, *vendre* to sell, *loër* to hire, or let to hire, *marchander* to trade, *taxer* to taxe or inioyne payment to any one, *priser* to value, *estimer* to esteeme, *évaluër* to rate, will have both the thing and the price of it, in the *Accusat.* case; as, *J'ay acheté mon cheval dix escus*, I bought my horse for ten crownes; *et l'ay revendu quinze*, and I sold him againe at fifteene; *Cette épée me coûta quatre escus*, This sword cost me foure crownes; *Combien, or que faites vous cette ceinture*, What sell you this girdle for? *Combien, or que vendez vous cette paire de gants*, What is y price of these gloves?

gloves? Yet *avoir* to have, and *bailler* to give, adde to the *price*, these Preposit. *à* or *pour*: as *j'ay eulx chapeau à deux*, or *pour deux escus à Paris*, I had had this Hat at *Paris* for two Crownes. The like may bee sayd of *adjuger* to judge or value; *Livrer* to bestow; and sometimes of *évaluër* to rate: as *cet anneau a esté évaluë trente escus*, or *à trente escus par le priseur*, This Ring hath bin valued at 30. Crownes by the Priser.

We adde sometimes, these *Adverbes* following, to these kind of Verbes: *viç. cher, cherement*, deare; *à bon marché* good cheape; *trop* too much; *peu* a little, or at a low price, &c. As *on vend le vin trop cher à Paris*, They sell the Wine at *Paris* too deare: *Il est icy à meilleur marché*, it is cheaper here. *Que vaut le vin en cette ville?* What price beares wine in this Towne? *Dix escus le tonneau*, Ten Crownes the Tunne. *C'est trop* that is too deare; *C'est bon marché* that is cheape indeed.

Strangers sayle very often, in the use of these Verbes *aller* and *Venir*: I will therefore set downe the different use of them, as plaine as I can.

Aller to goe, implyeth motion to a place, farre off the party that speaketh: *Venir* to come, on the contrary, is used when we would signifie motion to a place, which is neere the party that speaketh: as if a mans hostesse, being in the hall where they are to dine, should call a Gentleman to dinner, she will say to him *venez disner* come to dinner, because she herselfe is the dinning roome: but the

the answer must be, *J'y vais*. I goe thither, and not *je vien* I come: because the party called, is at some distance from the hall whither he is to goe.

Of Impersonals.

Passive Impersonals [viz. those which have *on* and *lon* before them] follow the use and construction of the Verbes, of which they are made: an example of a Verbe transitive followeth: viz. *on prise assez la vertu, mais on la laisse morfondre*, men doe prise vertue at a good rate, but yet they let it catch cold (or goe barefoote (as wee say) See an example of a Reciprocall verbe: viz. *on se passe bien de richesses, pourveu que l'on se contente de mediocrité*, a man may doe well enough for wealth, if a competency will serve his turne. See an example of a verbe passive viz. *on n'est pas de tous hai, ny de tous aimé*. A man is neither loued nor hated by euery man. The reason is plaine: viz. because *on* serueth for an Indefinite Nominatiue, without changing the nature of the Verbe.

The Verbes Impersonall of the Active voyce, for the most part, have the person in the Dative case, and the thing in the Gen. or the Ablative, as *Il ennuie à Monsieur de vostre importunité*, The Gentleman is wearie of your importunity. *Il ne luy chaut de vostre dommage*, He careeth not for your losse; *Il vous coustera cher de vostre imprudence,*

dence, Your indiscretion will cost you deare. 2. It hath also ioyned with it an *Infinit.* Mood with the Preposition *de*, as *il me desplaist de vous* importuner, It is an vnpleasing to mee to importune you. 3. It hath also the Coniunct. *que*, and a verbe of the *Indicat.* or *Subiunct.* Mood ioyned wth it; as *Vous fâchera-il que je me serve de vos livres?* Will it be troublesome to you if I vse your books.

These Verbes which follow may be construed these 3. wayes *Il ennuye* it is troublesome, *Il coûte* It costeth, *Il fâche* It is troublesome, *Il desplaist* It is displeasing, *Il tarde* It hindereth, *Il soncie* It putteth a man to thinking, *Il grieve* It is a troublesome thing, *Il importe* It araueth, *Il poise* It is burthensome, *Il demange* It itcheth, *Il cuis* It stingeth, *Il souvient* It commeth to mind, *Il suffit* It sufficeth, *Il chaut* It is cared for, *Il prend bien ou mal* it taketh well or ill. A man may vse these Verbes in *Interrogations*, with *que* what, and *Dequoy* Of what, *Que vous chaut il?* What doe you take care for? or *Dequoy vous chaut il*, Resp. *Il eschet, il arriue, il vient bien ou mal*, I happeneth well or ill.

These which follow next, are vsed the 1. and 3^d. way, viz. *Il coûte* it costeth, *Il pert, il appert* it apparist It is manifest; as, *Il vous coûte de l'honneur*, or *Il vous y va de l'honneur*, or *Il y va de vostre honneur*, It costeth you some honour, You wil loose some honour by it, So goeth your honor away; *Il y va de vostre vie*, There goeth your life; These Phrases, may be vsed to a heady man, y^e careth neither

neither for honour nor life] *Qu'y va-il ?* What goeeth away ? What is loſt by it ?

An example of Verbes vſed in the 2d. and 3d. manner followeth, with the Verbes that are ſo vſed ; *Il me profite d'eſtudier* or *que j'eſtudie*, Study is profitable for mee. Soe likewiſe wee vſe *Il diſt* It conduceth, *Il nuist* It is hurtfull, *Il vient a point*, and *a propos*, It happeneth pate ; *Il ſert* It is vſfull ; *Il appartient* It belongeth, *Il plaiſt* It pleaſeth, as *que vous plaiſt il faire*, What will you pleaſe to doe, *Que vous plaiſt il que nous facions*, What will you have vs doe ?

Il vaut, *Il faut*, *Il conuient*, are ioyned with an *Inſinit.* Mood, but without the Prepoſit. *de* ; as *Il vaut mieux eſtre pauvre que larron*, It is better to be poore then a thiefe ; or elſe with the conjunction *que* and a Verbe of the *Subjunct.* Mood ; as *Il vaut mieux que vous ſoyez*, &c.

Il s'enſuit, is vſed in the manner following : *Il s'enſuivra que vous endurerez*, or *enduriez*, or elſe *Il s'enſuivra q'vous d'endurer*, The iſſue will be that you muſt endure.

Il manque It is wanting, *Il reſte* it remaineth, are vſed with the Conjunction *que*, & Verbs of the *Subjunctive* Mood ; or elſe with *de*, and an *Inſinitive* Mood ; as *Il reſte que vous faciez*, or *Il vous reſte de faire voſtre devoir*, It remaineth that you doe your duty.

Il ſemble it ſeemeth, is ioyned onely with the Coniunction *que* and Verbes of the *Indicative*

or the *Subiunctive Mood* ; as *Il vous semble que je suis*, or *soye si peu advisé*, it seemeth to you that I am so inconsiderate. Wee vse this verb sometimes, as a *Personall*: viz when it stands for the Latine Verb *videor*, I seeme ; as, *Il semble*, he seemeth ; *tu sembles*, thou seemest ; and then it requireth a *Prepositive Dative*, and an *Infinitive Mood* without a Preposition, or else a *Noun* signifying some *quality* : as, *Vous lui semblez rêver*, You seeme to him to dote ; *Nous leur semblons estrangers*, we seeme strangers to them. Likewise wee say, *Que Vous semble cette espée*, or *de cette espée*, What seemeth this sword to you ? or what doe you thinke of this sword ? Resp. *Bonne*, good ; or *qu' elle est bonne*, or *qu' elle soit bonne*, That it is good.

Il tient, when it signifieth to hinder, will not have *Prepositive Datives*, but *Postpositives* ; as *Il tient à vous que vous n' estes sçauant*, You are your owne hinderance in learning and knowledge ; *Il ne tiendra pas à moy que ne gagniez*, I will not hinder your gaine ; But when it importeth *desire* and *will*, it hath *Preposit. Datives*, & ordinarily the Preposit. *de* after it, w^{an} *Infinitive Mood* : & it is vsed *negatively*, rather then *affirmatively*, if the Sentence haue the same Syntaxe, which was mentioned before, viz. if it haue after it an *Infinitive Mood* with *de* ; as *Il ne me tient pas d' estre marié*, I haue noe desire to marry ; *Il ne leur tiendra plus désormais d' aller à la guerre*, Hence-foreward, they will haue noe desire to goe to warre.

Some

Some of the Verbes aforesaid, and others, have after them a Nominative case: which Nom. if it went before the Verbe, would make it Personall; as, *Il reste des points d'importance à vider sur cest affaire*, or *des points d'importance restent*, Some points of importance, concerning this businesse, are to be determined; *Il vient de grands maux de la negligence*, or *de grands maux viennent*, Great inconveniences come of negligence; *Il interuient maintes choses entre la bouche et la verre*, or *maintes choses tombent*, &c. Many things happen betweene the lip and the glasse; *Il a regné six Roys depuis que je suis né*, or *six Roys ont regné*, &c. Sixe Kings have reigned since I was borne. Soe likewise wee vse *il suruiuent*, it comimeth over and aboue; *il provient*, it proceedeth; *il couste*, it costeth; *il part*, it goeth away; *il sourd*, it springeth; *il naît*, it ariseth; *il meurt* it dyeth; *il manque*, it faileth; *il appert*, *il apparoit*, it is manifest; *il appartient*, it belongeth; *il sort*, it goeth forth; *il court*, it runneth; *il chet*, it falleth; *il eschet*, it happeneth; *il tombe*, it falleth; *il croist*, it groweth; *il est*, it is; *il arrive*, it happeneth; *il pleut des pierres*, it raineth stones; *il gresle des acquebuses*, mulker bullets, or calliuer bullets raine downe; And soe likewise, *il se met*, it is put; *il se commet*, it is committed; *Il se fait des maux infinis par la malice des hommes*, Infinite offences are committed through the malice of men; *Il se dit*, *il s'escrit*, *maintes choses fausses*, Many false things are spoken and written; and in a word, all those

Verbes

Verbes which have an Impersonall forme by taking the Preposition *se* to them, after the Italian manner, (which as I said before are innumerable) are equivalent to *Verbes Passive*: which will appeare, by the turning of them into *Passives*; as *Il s' apporte beaucoup de marchandises du Levant*, or *beaucoup de marchandises s' apportent*, or *on apporte beaucoup de marchandises*, or *beaucoup de marchandises sont apportées du Levant*. They bring many commodities, or many commodities are brought from the East; *Il s' escrit plusieurs choses vaines*; or *Plusieurs choses vaines s' écrivent*, or *on escrit plusieurs choses*, &c. or *Plusieurs choses sont écrites*. Many vayne things are written; Observe these examples and make them your patterne.

Il pleuit It raineth, *il gresle* it haileth, *il tonne* it thundereth; *Il esclaire* it lighteneth; are either absolute and make a full sence, as they doe in *Latine*, or else are vsed in the manner last mentioned: as *Il pleut des sauterelles*, Locusts are rained downe; *Il gresle de bales*, or *des bales gresient*. Bullets are rained downe, or It raineth bullets.

These *Verbes*, *Il fait bon* It is good, *il fait mauvais*, *beau*, *seur*, *dangereux*, *froid*, *chaud*, *sec*, *humide*, It is ill, faire, sure, dangerous, cold, hot, dry, moyst, have after them an Infinitive Mood: as *Il fait beau se pourmener*. It is pleasant walking; *Il fait dangereux naviger en hyver*. It is dangerous to goe to Sea in winter; or else wee may use them absolutely, and say *il fait beau*, *froid*, *sec*,
trouble,

trouble, nebuleux, it is faire, cold, dry, thicke, cloudy; *Il fait iour*, It is day; *il fait nuit*, it is night; *il fait vent*, There is a wind; &c.

Il y a, there is; is an Impersonall among vs, as I have sufficiently shovne, in the Rules of y; and therefore I shall not need to make any repetitions. When wee speake of *quantity*, we vse it, viz. in these three cales, 1. when with the *quantity* of the thing, the *position & situation* is mentioned; as *Combien y a il de perils en la vie humaine* How many dangers are there in mans life; *T a il de l' argent en vostre bourse*, Is there any money in your purse? *T a il de la Constance en vous*? Is there any constancy in you? 2. when some *continuance of time* is mentioned in the sentence; as, *Combien y a il que vous estes en France*, How long is it since you came into France; *Il y a trois mois que j' estude en la langue Françoisse*, I have studied the French tongue this three Months.

3. When some quantity of *measure*, or *distance of place* is expressed: as *T a il loin d' icy a Paris*? Is it farre from hence to Paris: *Il y a cinquante lieues*, I is fifty miles.

In a word, this Phrase is vsed when we speake of *quantity* and *place*: and in those Sentences where neither *quantity* nor *place* is expressed, the world and all nature is supposed to be the *Place* wee meane: viz. if wee make mention of a thing, which we would have thought, to be in some *place*; but if wee speak of a *quantity* of something, & not mentionything, then we must be thought to mean *men or persons* as I said in the same rules of y.

But

But for want of expressing what thing we mean, wee must put in the particle *en*, that the *Relative following*, may haue something to haue relation to: as, *Il y en a qui sont enuieux de l'heur d'autrui*, Some there are [*viz.* some persons] that eunie another mans happinesse. These Phrases, are expressed in Latine, by the 3^{d.} person Singular or Plur. of the Verbe Substantive, *Sunt quos curriculo pulverem olympicum collegisse iu. vat*, Some haue a delight to stirre vp the Olympian dust with their chariots: And so through all tenses of the said Verbe.

Il est goeth sometime for *Il y a*, *viz.* when wee speake of such things, which in theyr quantity may be *increased* or *diminished*, yet haue not theyr quantity *expressly* set downe by any word of *num. ber*, whereby it may be certainly knowne how much is meant: but onely in generall, by these adverbs of quantity, *Peu* little, *beaucoup* much, *assez* enough, *gueres* scarce, *plus* more, *moins* lesse, *tant* *autant* so much and such like; as, *Il est* or *il y a trop de faineans par le monde*, There are too many idle people all the world over. *Il est* or *il y a bien du vin cette année*, There is good store of Wine this yeare; *Il fut peu de bleds l'an passé en Beaulse*, There was little bread-corne in Beaulse the last yeare; when wee speake of other things, which are not *materiall* Substances, wee vse *il est*, but there it standeth not for *il y a* as *Il est du profit*, *Il est du danger à traffiquer sur la mer*, There is profit, there is danger in trading vpon the Sea: but in these sentences, wee never say

say *il y a*. Nor doe wee vse *il y a* when wee speak of distance of Place, or length of Time, but *il est*: as *Il est quinze lieues d'icy à Orleans*, From hence to Orleans is fifty miles; *Il est long temps que je suis en France*, I have beene in France a long time; *Il sera demain trois mois que j'arriveray en cette ville*, It will be three moneths to morrow, since I came to this Towne; not *il y aura*: and soe throughout all the Tenses of this verBE.

We say likewise *Il est heure, il est temps, il est saison, il est à propos de bien faire*, It is time, it is seasonable, and to purpose to doe good; *Il me fut hier force de patienter*, I was forced yesterday to vse patience; *Il est jour, il est nuit, il est mi-dy, Il est jour, il est nuit, il est floone day*, are absolute sentences; *Il sera tard* It will be late; *Il estoit nuit quand nous arrivâmes au gîte*, It was night when wee came to our lodging.

Wee vse it likewise in Interrogations: as *Quelle heure est il?* What houre is it? *Il est une heure, deux, trois, &c.* It is one, two, three, &c. *Quel jour est il?* What day is it? *Il est Lundy, Mardy, Mercredi, leudy, Vendredy, samedi, Dimanche*, It is Munday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Fryday, Saturday, Sunday.

We vse it also with the Common Participles, according to the Latine Phrase: as *il est écrit* It is written, *il est porté* it is carried, *il est jugé* it is judged, *il a esté debatu, conclu, resolu, arrêté*.

It hath bin debated, concluded, resolved, decreed.

It is vsed likewise with Adjectives put Substantively; as *Il est expedient, licite, raisonnable*, It is expedient, lawfull, reasonable; all which Phrases or formes of speaking, have after them the Conjunction *que* and some finite Verbe, especially if in the sentence the person be changed; or else the Preposition *de*, with a Verbe of the Infinitive Mood if the person be not changed.

To conclude, looke back to the Rules of the Demonstrative Pronounce *ce*: *Qui a escrit ce?* Who wrote this? Resp. *C'est moy, c'est luy, &c.* It is I, it is he. The first and third person Plur, are expressed two wayes: as *C'est nous*, and *ce sommes nous*, It is wee. Soe also may the Them, be expressed: as *ce suis je*, It is I: for *c'est moy*, Which is more vsuall.

*Of the Vse of the Tenses, and first
of the Tenses of the Indicative
Mood.*

THe Indicative Mood is soe called, because, as every man may see, it doth shew, and teach a thing directly and expressly, which is indeed the onely vse of it. The Grecians call it the *Dessein* Mood. For when wee speake of a thing which is indeed, wee vse the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

The

The *Present*, *Preterimp.* *Preterplap.* and the *Future* differ not in signification and use, from the Greeke and Latine, and therefore wee need not to take any further notice of them.

Yet, because many strangers mistake in the use of the *Preterimperfect* tense, being scarce able to distinguish wherein it differeth from the *Preterperfect*, I will say something of it.

Wee know that there is a great difference, betweene an action perfectly ended, and an action that is but begunn and in doing: and a man would wonder, that men should mistake where there is so plaine a difference: and yet some strangers use to say *J'allois hier voir Monsieur, lequel me faisoit bien gracieux accueil, et me prioit de demeurer avec luy*, I went yesterday to see the gentleman; and he entertained me very graciously, and intreated mee to tarry with him; instead of *J'allay hier voir Monsieur qui me fit, &c. et me pria.* The Preterimperf. and Preterperf. tense.

I know not whether I shall be able perfectly to distinguish the one from the other: but I will try what I can doe;

The difference then is this; The *Preterimp.* is used to expresse some continuance of time, that passed while an act was a *doing*, but not *done*; The *Preterp.* significeth at once both the act *fully ended*, and the *time already past*: for indeed, this tense is used, to expresse the *perfect* and *final* accomplishment; of the thing already done and ended, without any reference to the time, when

in it was in doing. In a word, the *Preterimp.* speaketh of an act while it is *in doing*, and the *Preterperfect* tense speaketh of it as *done* and *past*.

And this is the reason, why the Greekes called the *Preterim* the *Extensive Tense*: the Latines, & wee to imitate them, call it *Imp.* And to say the truth, the *Preterimp.* signifieth a *time past*, but the act, *W* this tense implyeth, was *not done in that time*. And note well this poynt: *viz.* that, though it may be the thing was ended, and past a good while agoe, yet this Tense, *bringeth back* the vnderstanding of the hearer, to *the time* when it was but in doing, and *not done*. And from this speculation I draw all my rules, for the vse of this Tense.

For in three cases especially this tense must be vsed. 1. when there was any *lett, stop* or *change*, that *hindered* the thing *begunne* from being ended; then euery one seeth plainely, that the *Preterimperfect* tense is proper to be vsed in that place, as *Cesar dressoit bien la Republique Romaine*, et alloit bien mettre les affaires en bon ordre, s'il n'eust esté assassiné, *Cesar* ordered the Commonwealth of the Romans very well, and was in a good way to set businesse in a forwardnesse, if he had not bene murdered; *I' allois hier voir Monsieur, mais je rencontray un gentilhomme qui m'emmena ailleurs*, I went yesterday to see the Monsieur, but I met a Gentleman that carried me to another place; *I' escrivois des lettres, mais la nuit est suruenüe*, et je n'avois point de chandelle,

chandelle, I was writing of letters, but the night came vpon me, and I had no candle: here you may plainly see that the man had not done writing.

2. When *two actions* fall out to be in doing, at *the same time*, (whether the one were as long a doing as the other, the one ended a little before the other, it matters not) then *both* those actions shall be expressed, by the *Preterimp.* tense; as *Tandis que vous dormiez, j' estois*, While you slept I studied; *Comme je pleurois, vous riez et vous moquez de moy*, As I cryed, you laughed and mocked me. When you speake in this manner, the things done seeme to be of equall continuance, or somewhat neere. In stead of one of these Verbes, you may vse the *Participle* of the *Present* and *Preterimp.* tense: as *Moy pleurant, vous riez*, &c. and so it commeth all to one end; It may so fall out, that the actions mentioned, may *differ in the length of time* wherein they are a doing, the one *lasting some while longer* then the other, and so consequently the shorter time is contained in the longer; And in that case, the thing soonest ended, shall be expressed by the *Preterperf.* tense, and that which *lasted longest*, in the *Preterimperfect* tense; as *Lors que j' arrivay à Paris, le Roy y estoit*, When I came to Paris, the King was there; *J' estois à Paris quand le pont de meusniers cheut*, I was at Paris when the Millers bridge fell downe; *Comme un tel fuyoit, il tomba et se rompit la jambe*, When such a one fled away, he fell and brake his legge.

3. The 3d. case wherein the Preterimp. is to be vsed, is when wee will signifie a *common continuing*, or *often reiterating* of an action, or a whole course and continuance of a thing; as, *Estant a Paris*, I allois tous les jours me promener en la sale du Palais, When I was at Paris, I went every day to walke in the Palace Hall; *Vn temps fut que vous faiziez cas de moy*, There was a time when you made some account of mee; *Cesar vsoit modement de ses victoires*, Caesar vsed [that is, it was his continuall custome] his victories moderately; *Iustin* the Historian beginneth with some Preterimp. tenses of this nature, according to the old custome.

The Preterperf. tense. Now the Preterperf. tenses, onely point out to vs the thing done, and not the time while it was doing, and therefore we cannot suppose any letr, or disturbance in the doing: for *when the thing is done*, (as they say) *the counsell is taken*; nor doe they imply any *reiteration*, *continuation*, or *custome* of doing, but signifie an action perfected and ended, without any more adoe.

We have two Preterperfect tenses, and they redoubled tenses (which are theyr Preterplup. tenses in a manner) and these differ in theyr vs: we must therefore note, that the *Definite* Preterperf. tenses alwayes imply an action past a good while agoe, and so perfectly ended, & noe part remaineth to doe: and therefore they require that a *certain* time should be mentioned, wherein the thing happened to be done: for which cause they are called *Definite*.

(The

The *Indefinite* Preter perfect tenses signifie indeede an *act fully ended and past*, but *the time*, wherein it is said to haue bin done, is not quite past; [as if I should say, *this morning I went to the Church*; here, though my going to Church be past, yet the day of which this morning is a part, is not yet supposed to be past; for if the whole day were past, I might not say this morning, but *yesterday morning*: and in this case, I must not say *I' allay a l'eglise*, but *je suis allé*] or if the *time be past* wherein the thing is said to be done, yet if *noe set time* be mentioned in the Sentence, wee must use the *Indefinite* tenses: And for *this cause* they are called *Indefinite*.

For the better vnderstanding of this, wee must note that the words which signifie part of time, are these which follow: viz. *an age, a yeare, a month, a weeke, a day, an houre*, & such like. Now, when we speak of things done, either we mention the time wherein it was done, or wee doe not. If *noe terme* of time be mentioned, then wee use the *Indefinite* Preterperf.: as *Le Roy a obtenu victoire de ses ennemis, puis leur a pardonné*, The King obteyned a victorie over his enemies, and then pardoned them. But if wee mention, a *time quite past* as well as the action, then wee use the *Definite* Preterp. as *L' an mille cinq cens quatre vingts et dix, le Roy obtint victoire de ses ennemis, gagna la bataille d'Yvri, peu d' temps apres, la ville de Paris se mit en son obeissance*, In the yeare 1590, the King obteyned a victorie over his

his enemies, and got the day at *Xoré*; a little after, *Paris* was yielded vp to him. And for this reason, all *Histories, Fables, and narrations* of ancient things, are expressed by this *Definite* Preterp. tense.

But if any part of the time, mentioned for the doing of an action, be yet to passe (as if wee should tell a story of a thing done *this present age, yeare, month, day, or houre, part of which is past, and the rest to come,*) wee must vse the *Indefinite* Preterp. tense: as *De nostre siècle sont aduenüs choses memorables*, Memorable things have happened in this age of ours; *Il fait beau voir les histoires qu'on a écrites de nostre temps*, It is a pleasing thing to see the histories written since our times; *Cette année les vignes n'ont gueres rapporté*, This yeare the vines have scarce borne any grapes; *Ces deux derniers mois, j'ay estudié en la langue Françoisse*, I have studied French this 2. months last past; *Ce Printemps icy, or le printemps de cette année a esté fort chaud*, This spring hath bin bin very hot; *A matin j'ay esté à l'Eglise*, In the morning I was at Church; *A dix heures j'ay dîné*, I dyed at ten of the clocke; *Enuiron midi, un mien amy m'est venu voir*, About noone, a friend of mine came to see mee.

If wee vse in a sentence such words, as imply a thing past, but name noe part of time, wee may indifferently vse the *Definite* or *Indefinite* tenses; as *Au commencement que je m'appliquay, or que je me suis appliqué à composer cet ouure*, When I first

I first began to compose this work; *Moy estant der-
nierement à Paris, je vis, or j'ay veu le Roy*, When
I was last at Paris I saw the King; *Revenant d'Ita-
lie je passay, or je suis passé par Lion*, In my returne
from Italy I passed by Lions. Soe likewise when
we vse *jadis* of old, *auparauant* before, *Il y a long
temps* It is a good while since, *oncques* euer, *ja-
mais* never.

But when wee vse *au temps passé* In times past,
quelquesfois sometimes, *autresfois* otherwhile,
heretofore, *pieça* long since: or when wee *spe-
cifie* the doing of a thing, by the severall parts of
our owne age, the *Indefinite* Preterperf. tense see-
meth to fit better: as *En ma jeunesse, durant mon
enfance*, While I was a child; *Moy estant aagé de
vingt ans*, When I was twenty yeare old; *j'ay
fait, j'ay dit, j'ay escrit*, I did, I said, I wrote, &c.
And yet it is noe greate matter, if in
these Phrases the *Definite* Preterp. tenses were
vled.

Many that haue studyed our language, haue
bin curious to know of mee, *when it is* that wee
may *indifferently* vse the *Preterimperfect* or the
Preterperfect tense, for so we may sometimes:
I haue alwayes thought it a hard matter, to give
a certaine rule for it: But the best that I could
find is this: That, when it is noe matter to the
sense, whether we expresse *time* with the action,
or the action *without the time*, then wee may in-
differently vse the *Preterimp.* or the *Preterperfect*
tense: as *le vous aimoy d'ouie de vostre vertu,
avant, que de vous cognoistre plus avant, et main-
tenant*

tenant je vous prise et honore infiniment, I loved you out of the fame of your virtue, without any further knowledge of you: and now I esteeme and honour you infinitely. This sentence hath respect to the time and continuance of the friendship: *Je vous ay aimé du renom de vos merites*, I haue loved you for the good report of your worth. Here the action of *louing* is insinuated, but the time is of little importance in the sentence; *Vous haranguastes mieux hier en l'assemblée ou vous fustes, que je ne vous oüy oncques haranguer*, You made a better speech yesterday, in the company where you were, then euer I heard you make: Here the *action* is onely considered: *Vous haranguiez mieux hier au conseil ou vous estiez, que je vous auois jamais oüy faire*, You made a better oration, &c. This last manner of speaking, *representeth* to the vnderstanding, the time when the oration was made, which is but a *by businesse* in the sentence, *je logeois à Paris chez un honneste bourgeois*, I lodged at the house of an honest citizen; Here the time is of cheifest importance: we say also *je logeay*, or *j'ay logé*; here we have cheifly respect to the *act*, and little to the time, without any prejudice to the sense.

The Redoubled tenses.

The Redoubled tenses, forasmuch as concerneth the *Definitenes* or *Indefinitenes* of the time, follow the rules of the *Preterperf.* tenses, because they ate in a manner theyr *Preterplup.* tenses: and are vsed to signify an action, ended before the beginning of another, which must necessarily be expressed

pressed after it : and therefore these *Redoubled* tenses, are chiefly used after some *Adverbiall Phrases*, which imply something to follow ; as *quand* when, *Lors-que* then when, *apres que*, *depuis que* after that, *si tost que*, *incontinent que*, *soudain que* as soone as, and such like : as *quand Iesus fut né*, after that Iesus was borne ; *apres qu' Herodes fut mort*, After Herod was dead ; *Comme Il eut jeusné quarante jours*, After he had fasted fortie dayes ; examples of the *Indefinite* redoubled tense are these which follow ; *Si tost que j'ay eu dîné*, *Je vous suis venu voir*, Soe soone as I had dined, I came to see you ; *Je n'ay pas eu plus tost achevé de composer mon livre, que plusieurs me l'ont demandé*, I had noe sooner made an end of my booke, but many asked mee for it.

You may see by these examples, that something else in the sentence is expected to follow, which must have a *Definite* Preterperfect tense, if the *Redoubled* tense be *Definite*, or an *Indefinite* Preterperfect if the tense *Redoubled* tense be *Indefinite*.

The same sense may be expressed by the *Participle* of the *Passive* voice : as *Iesus étant né*, After Iesus was borne, *Herodes étant mort*, When Herod was dead ; *Luy ayant*, When he had ; *ayant jeusné*, after he had fasted ; *ayant eu dîné*, after he had dined ; *ayant eu congé*, after he had had leave.

Wee use also these *Adverbiall Phrases* following, with the *Redoubled* tenses ; *Premier que*, *avant*

uant que before that, *Plustost que*, Sooner then; as
 Il a eu *plustost* appris la langue *Françoise* que je
 n' eusse pensé, He had learned the French tongue
 sooner then I had thought he could; *Avant que*
vous fussiez levé, il a eu escrit trois *missives*, Be-
 fore you were risen he had written three letters;
 Il a eu dit *premier que* pensé, he had
 spoken before he had thought what to
 speake.

We use these *Redoubled* tenses, and so wee may
all others which are compounded of the *Auxiliars*,
 in this manner following: 1. we put the *common*
Participle: then the conjunction *que*: next the
 auxiliary and the *Nominat.* case either after it, or
 before it if it be a *Noune*, but if it be a *Pronoune* it
 must goe before & Auxiliary Verb. as *Arrivé que*
Cesar fut, or *que Cesar fut*, When Cesar was arri-
 ved; *Finie qu' il eut sa harangue*, When he had en-
 ded his speeth; *Receûs qu' ils eurent ces nouvel-*
les, When they had received this newes; *Haus-*
sées qu' ils eurent les voiles, When they had hois-
 sed sayle; The *Latines* render these Phrases, by
 the *Preterpluperfect* tense of the *Subiunct.* Mood,
 & the conjunction *cum* or *postquam*: as *Cum ad-*
venisset Cesar: or else by the *Ablat.* case absolute:
 as *Audit his nuntijs*, *Herode mortuo* &c.

There is noe *Particular* rule concerning the
 use of our *Preterplup.* tense, but that wee must
 use it like the *Latines* and the *Greekes*. The one-
 ly difficulty, is to distinguish it from the *Redoub-*
led tenses, which are a kind of *Preterplup.* tenses
 serving

serving to signifie an action fully past, and ended before the beginning of an other action. Now this difference is easie to be understood in the use of them : [For it is noe hard matter, to see when either of them are used amisse] but it is a very hard matter, to expresse it to another : and therefore I leave it to you to gather the difference of them, out of what hath already bin said. And you are to note, that the *Preterplup*. tense doth borrow the *Preterimp*. tense of the *Auxiliar*, to be compounded of, and soe consequently, that it doth signify extent of time past, without limitation or intimation how long since it is past ; as I' avois des-jà composé mon livre quand vous estes arrivé en cette ville, I had already composed my booke when you came to this towne. Where you see, by the composition of the booke was ended, before the others comming to towne, but not what time before. And in this case, it had not bin good to have used the Redoubled tense, which, because it borroweth the *Preterp*. of the *Auxiliar*, must be used, when in the sentence it is implied more punctually, when the action was ended : as I' ay eu composé mon livre si tost que vous estes arrivé, I had made an end of my boooke, as soone as you were arrived ; Here you see, that the time when the booke was ended, was about the time when the party spoken to, arrived at the place supposed. I' avois dîné, quand je vous vi, I had dined when I saw you : where it is noe implied in the sentence, how long he had dined before he saw you. But if you say I' ay eu dîné quand je vous vy, You imply
 that

Note.

that you had made an end of dinner, or meant to eat no more, iust then when you saw him : J'avois appris la langue Latine des ma jeunesse, puis on me poussa à la Philosophie, I had learned the Latine tongue from my youth, and then they put me vpon Philosophie.

In this sentence the Redoubled tense could not have bin put, because it is then onely vfed, when one action is said to follow suddainely vpon another : and then it hath these words following after it : viz. *des que* since that, *premier que*, & *avant que* before that, *quand* when, *si tost que*, as soone as. For if these wordes should come before and beginne the sentence, it appeareth plainly by the signification of the Auxiliary verbe, that the *Preterpluperfect* tense will serve, in sentences where the continuation, iteration, or common v-
sing of actions is insinuated ; as *Estant à Paris quand j'avois employé la matinée aux exercices, le surplus du jour, je le donnoye à entretenir mes amis*, When I was at Paris, after I had spent all the morning in exercises, the rest of the day I spent in entertaining my friends ; *Si tost que j'avois dîné, j'allois faire des visites*, &c. as soone as I had dined, I went on visiting.

In like manner, if we begin with the common *Participle*, (which I said before hath the same signification) we must still vse the *Preterpluperfect* tense, as I told you when I spake of Redoub-
tenses ; *Visté que j'avois mes amis, je me retirois tout
doux au logis, pour vacquer quelques heures aux
estudes*, After I had visited my friends, I went fair-

ly to

ly to my lodging, to spend some houres in study.

You may note in these examples, that when we begin the sentence with the *Preterpluperfect*, we end with the *preterimp.* tense: and when we beginne with the *Redoubled* tenses, we end with the *Preterp.* tense: and I must not forget to tell you, that *avant que*, *premier que*, must be ioyned with the *Preterpluperfect* tense of the *Subjunctive* Mood, and not of the *Indicative*: as *Premier que vous m'eussiez adverty de cela, il m'avoit esté escrit de Paris*, Before you had given mee notice of that businesse, it was written to mee from Paris; *Cesar avoit desja passé le Rubicon, avant que Pompée eust pourueu à ses affaires*, Cesar had already past the Rubicon, before Pompey had contrived his businesse. Note here, that in *affirmative* sentences *desja* is vsed, and *encor* in *Negative*, as *Je n'avois pas encor achevé de composer cest ouvrage, que chacun me le demandoit*, I had no sooner ended this worke, but every one asked me for it.

The *Preterplap.* tense is oftentimes vsed, when some disturbance, or change of an action is implied in the Sentence; as *J'avois délibéré d'estudier en Theologie, mais on me l'a dissuadé*, I had intended to study Divinity, but they dissuaded me from it; *J'avois exécuté mon entreprise, si la Sentinelle ne m'eust découvert*, I had executed my designe, if the Sentinell had not discovered mee; *J'avois bien gagné la bonne grace de mon Maître, sans la flatterie des envieux, et n'eust esté les médisans*, Had it not bin for y flattering tongues of envious

of envious people, and the calumny of the malicious, I had gained my masters good favour And thus much for the *Indicative Mood*.

There are no speciall observations to be made concerning the *Imperative Mood*, but those which I have already mentioned.

Of the Optative Mood.

THe *Optat.* and the *Subjunctive Mood* being alike in all Tenses, but onely the *Future*, which the *Subjunctive Mood* hath peculiar to it selfe, theyr vse also is much alike.

The first thing you have to note, is the use of the *wishing Phrases*: for, *à la mienne volonté que, à mon vouloir que*, I would God, are ioyned to the *Pres.* and *Future* tense, and to the 1. *Preterimp.* and the 2. *Preterplup.* tense.

Ploust à Dieu que, voulust Dieu que, I would God, are ioyned to the 1. *Preterimp.* and the 1. *Preterplup.* tense.

Dieu vueille que, Dieu face que, plaise à Dieu que, are ioyned to the *Present* and *Future* tense, and to the *Preterperfect* tense.

Volontiers I would faine, & *que volontiers* & how faine would I; *De bon cœur, du bon du cœur*, gladly, very gladly: & *à bon escient* in good earnest are ioyned to the 2. *preterimp.* & both the *preterplup.* tenses.

Besides

Besides these adverbiall Phrases, wee have other earneſt formes of wiſhing: which wee expreſſe 1. by the Verbes *Pouvoir* to be able, and *estre* to be, which wee uſe in the *Preſent*, the 1. *Preterimperfet* and 1. *Preterplup.* ſenſes of the *Optat.* Mood, as wee doe alſo all other Verbes, when wee uſe them in the ſame ſenſe. 2. after *pouvoir*, wee put a verbe of the *Infinit.* Mood, and ſome other words as the ſenſe requirerh. And in this manner of ſpeaking, we put the *Prepoſitive* Pronounes ordinarily, after the ſaid Verbes, as I ſaid before, in the *Chapter* of the *Prepoſitive* Pronounes of the *Nom.* caſe: as *Puisse je mourir s'il n'est vray.* May I dye if it be not true; *Puisse je devenir auffi riche que vous.* May I be, or would I might be ſo rich as you; *Honni ſoie je ſi mal j'y penſe.* Shame light on me if I thinke ill of it; *Qu'eusse je auffi bien de quoy, comme on m'a donne le bruit,* I would to god I had where-withall as men report of me; *Que gagn'eussiez vous tant de biens, que vous en fuſſiez content et raffaſie,* I would you had gotten as much wealth as could content and ſatiſſie your deſire.

The *first* of our 2. *Preterimp.* ſenſes, which I deriue from the *Definite* *Preterp.* of the *Indic.* Mood, hath a *mixt* ſenſe, betwene *preſent* and *paſt*: in theſe next following examples, it ſeemeth to wiſh the thing deſired to be *preſent*; as *fuisse je auffi riche que vous.* I would I were as rich as you; *Aussi bon François paſſaſt il des à preſent qu'il pourra faire d'icy à deux ans, voire quatre*

A 2

I would

-I would he could speake as good French now as this present, as he can within this two, I or foure yeares.

But the 2. *Preterimperfect* tense, which I derive from the *Future* tense of the *Indic.* Mood, seemeth to wish both for the *Present* and *Future*, and standeth indeed for the *Future*, after verbes of opinion, doubt, suspition, thought, and deliberation, or such like: of which I have given a touch, in the *Periphrasing* of the *Geronds*, and *Future* tenses of the *Infinitive* Mood of *Latine* Verbes; as *Je pensois que me creussiez*, I thought you did beleive mee: *Je pensois que vous me croiriez*, I thought you would beleive mee, viz. afterward, *Je faisois estat que vous me seriez ami*, I thought you would be my friend; *Vous aviez dit que vous reviendriez bien tost*, You said that you would come back againe presently; *L'eichanson demandoit combien il bailleroit de vin à un chacun*, The cupbearer asked how much wine he would give every one.

If the Verbe of the *Infinitive* Mood in *Latine*, following a verbe of the *Preterp.* or *Preterpl.* tense, be of the *Pres.* tense, we may use either the *Preterimp.* of the *Optat.* or *Indic.* Mood; as I'ay creu que vous amendiez, or amendissiez vos complexions, I thought that you mended your manners; in *Latine* it is, *Credidi te emendare mores tuos*. So likewise, *existimaui etiam te prospere rem gerere, or gesturum*, I thought you did, or you would manage your busines well. *J'avois estimé que vous fassiez, or fissiez, or que vous seriez bien vos besognes*.

Soe likewise those Verbes, which in their signification imply a thing to come; as *esperer* to hope, *promettre* to promise, *deliberer* to deliberate, *prevoir* to foresee, *predire* to foretell, *presager* to presage, *deviner* to ghesse, when they are of *Preterp.* tense, they will haue after them the 2. *Preterp.* and sometimes the 2. *Preterplup.* tense of the Operative.

The like oftentimes may be obserued, in these Verbes following: viz. *ordonner* to ordaine, *enjoindre* to enioyne, *decreter* to decree, *arrester* to make stay of, *resoudre* to resolute, *iuger* to iudge: all which Verbes, may haue after them the first *Preterimp.* also. And take it once for all, that Conjunctions ioyned like Tenses together: that is to say, a *Present* to a *present*, or a *Future*, if the sense requireth it: Soe likewise a *Preterperfect* tense, to a *Preterp.* tense. And yet it may so fall out some times, that the *Present* tense, which hath a kind of sympathy with all other tenses, may haue any tense ioined to it by a Coniunction, if the sense requires it.

I must tell you besides, that the 2. *Preterimp.* tense seemeth to haue a signification like to the *Present*, when it cometh * after the conditionall Coniunction *si*; and this manner of speaking is very frequent among vs; as *Vous seriez n'present plus a vostre aise que vous n'estes, si vous m'eussiez voulu croire*. If you would haue believed mee; you would now be in a better plight then you are; *Et me seroit a certé heur un grand contentement, si j'eusse reçu, or que j'eusse reçu, bonnes nouvelles de la prospérité de mes amis*. It

* Viz. in
Tense, though
in place it
come before.

would now be a great contentment to mee, if I had receiued good newes, of the welfare of my freinds.

This second *Preterimp.* tense serueth also for the *Potentiall* Mood; for when wee would intimate an *inclination, will, wish, desire, or aptitude* to any thing, or *power* to effect it, we beginne the sentence with it sometimes, and continue it with the first *preterimp.* by the helpe of the Coniunction *que*, when the sentence *requireth* another Verbe; as *Je voudrais que fussiez sage*, I would youd you were wise; *Il souhaiterois que je creuss son conseil*, He would desire that I did beleive his counsell; *Seriez vous d'advis, que l'advocat mist en avant une telle raison?* Would you advise if the Advocate should produce such a reason? The consideration of *this kind* of Phrase, hath induced some that haue written French Grammars, to make *that* the first *Preterimp.* which I call the second, and *that* the second, which I call the first. For my part, I thought *not* this reason *strong enough*, to make any alteration in my ordering of the tenses. Adde hereto, that this 2. *Preterimp.* tense, may haue after it a *Prieterp.* tense; as *Penseriez vous bien que j'aye, or que j'eusse fait un si lasche tour?* Would you thinke that I haue, or had plaid such an idle trick?

If both the Verbes, signifie actions done by the same person, it is best to put the last Verbe in the *Infinit.* Mood; as *I'aimerois bien faire service au Roy*, I should loue to doe the King service; *Voudriez vous pas bien sçavoir la langue Francoise?* Would

Would you not faine learne the french tongue ;
Leonard se plairoit à estudier, *Leonard* would ve-
 ry faine studie ; But of this in the rules of the In-
 finitive Mood.

When the sense requireth *some Relative* viz.
qui, que, lequel, dont, &c. instead of the Con-
 iunction *que*, then, after the Relative, you shall
 put a Verbe of the Indic. Mood, if wee speake af-
 firmatively of a thing, that it is ; as *le voudrois a-
 voir un livre qui est imprimé à Paris* ; I would
 haue a booke that is printed at *Paris* ; *le boirois
 volontiers du vin que j'ay cueilli, & dont j'ay
 foulé la vendange*, I would willingly drinke of
 the wine that I haue gathered, and trode my selfe.
 But if we speake of a thing which is not, but
 that *should* be, *may* be, or *were* would haue to be,
 then, after the Relatives, we must vse either one of
 the two *Preterimp.* tenses, or else one of the
Preterplup. tenses, as the sense shall require ; as
le voudrois un livre qui fust imprimé à Paris ; I
 would haue a booke which should be printed at
Paris ; *le recevrois en bonne part, tout ce qui
 viendrait de vous*, I would take in good part, all
 that should come from you ; *le boirois à cœur d'
 un vin dont j'eusse, or j'auois foulé la vendange*,
 I would very gladly drinke of a wine that I had,
 or should haue trode my selfe ; *I aimerois un
 cheval qui allaist, or qui jroit l'amble*, I
 would like a horse that should am-
 ble.

Strangers faile often, in vsing the Indic. Mood
 for the Optat. Marke therefore these examples ;

would now be a great contentment to mee, if I had receiued good newes, of the welfare of my freinds.

This second *Preterimp.* tense serueth also for the *Potentiall* Mood; for when wee would intimate an inclination, *wil*, *wish*, *desire*, or *aptitude* to any thing, or *power* to effect it, we beginne the sentence *with* it sometimes, and *continue* it with the first *preterimp.* by the helpe of the Coniunction *que*, when the sentence *requireth* another Verbe; as *Je voudrais que fussiez sage*, I would you were wise; *Il souhaiteroit que je creuss son conseil*, He would desire that I did beleive his counsell; *Seriez vous d'advis, que l'advocat mist en avant une telle raison?* Would you advise if the Advocate should produce such a reason? The consideration of *this* kind of Phrase, hath induced some that haue written French Grammars, to make *that* the first *Preterimp.* which I call the *second*, and *that* the *second*, which I call the *first*. For my part, I thought not this reason *strong enough*, to make any alteration in my ordering of the tenses. Adde hereto, that this 2. *Preterimp.* tense, may haue after it a *Preterp.* tense; as *Penseriez vous bien que j'aye, or que j'eusse fait un si lasche tour?* Would you thinke that I haue, or had plaid such an idle trick?

If both the Verbes, signifie actions done by the same person, it is best to put the last Verbe in the *Infinis.* Mood; as *I'aimerois bien faire service au Roy*, I should loue to doe the King service; *Voudriez vous pas bien sçavoir la langue Françoisse?*
Would

Would you not faine learne the french tongue ;
Leonard se plairoit à estudier, Leonard would ver-
 ry faine studie ; But of this in the rules of the In-
 finitive Mood.

When the sense requireth some Relative viz.
qui, que, lequel, dont, &c. instead of the Con-
 iunction *que*, then, after the Relative, you shall
 put a Verbe of the Indic. Mood, if wee speake af-
 firmatively of a thing, that it is ; as *le voudrois a-
 voir un livre qui est imprimé à Paris*, I would
 haue a booke that is printed at Paris ; *le boirois
 volontiers du vin que j'ay cueilli, & dont j'ay
 foulé la vendange*, I would willingly drinke of
 the wine that I haue gathered, and trode my selfe.
 But if wee speake of a thing which is not, but
 that should be, may be, or wee would haue to be,
 then, after the Relatives, wee must vse either one of
 the two Preterimp. tenses, or else one of the
 Preterplup. tenses, as the sense shall require ; as
le voudrois un livre qui fust imprimé à Paris, I
 would haue a booke which should be printed at
 Paris ; *le recevrois en bonne part, tout ce qui
 viendrait de vous*, I would take in good part, all
 that should come from you ; *le boirois à cœur d'
 un vin dont j'eusse, or j'aurois foulé la vendange*,
 I would very gladly drinke of a wine that I had,
 or should haue trode my selfe ; *I'aurois un
 cheval qui allast, or qui jrott l'amble*, I
 would like a horse that should am-
 ble.

Strangers faile often, in vsing the Indic. Mood
 for the Optat. Marke therefore these examples,

and take them for a generall rule; *Si j'ay quelque chose qui soit digne de vous*, If I haue any thing that is worthy of you: Here a stranger would say, *qui est digne &c.* *Je voudrois vous faire service qui vous fust agreable*, I would doe you service that might please you: Heere a stranger would say *qui vous estoit, &c.*

In regard this second *Preterimp.* tense signifieth something that may be, or an inclination to a thing, wee ioyne to it these *Adverbes*, *Bien* well, *mieux* better, *volontiers* willingly, *facilement*, *aisement* easily, *plustost* rather or sooner, and others, either of a *usere*, or *contrary* signification to these: as *mal* ill, *pis* worse, *a peine* scarce, *a regret*, *enuis* vnwillingly, &c. as *il vous feroit plus mal de mesdire, que de vous taire*, It would befit you worse to speake ill, then to hold your peace; A *peine* croirois je un homme qui m'auroit desia abuse, I would scarce beleive a man that should haue abused mee. These *Adverbes* are not alwayes expressed, but vnderstood sometimes. *A voir vos contenance on diroit que seriez fol*, To looke vppon your gestures, a man would say you were a foole, *On estimerait que fussiez en colere*, A man would thinke you were in choller, [after *diroit*, and *estimerait*, the *Adverbe bien* is vnderstood.]

The two *Preterplup.* tenses, may be vsed in this *Potentiall* tense, but not the 1. *Preterimp.* in my opinion. Saue onely, that wee vse the first *Preterimp.* tense, of the Verbe *aimer*, with these *Adverbes*, *mieux* better, *plus cher* dearer, *plustost*

plustoft rather; as *Nous amassions mieux vous avoir creus, il nous en auroit mieux pris*, had wee rather chosen to beleive you, the busines had taken better effect.

So likewise doe we vse the Verbe *valust*, when it is put *Impersonally*; as *Il leur valust mieux avoir esté endormis, que d'avoir fait telle folie*, They had better to haue bin a sleepe in their beds, then to haue playd the fooles soc.

Both the *Preterpluperfect* tenses, are many wayes indifferently used one for another. Yet much regard is to be had, to the *Preterimp.* tense of which they are compounded. Besides, you are to note, that in pleading, the *second Preterplup.* tense of the *Optat. Mood*, hath the signification of the *Preterp.* tense of the *Indicative Mood*; as *Le demandeur dit et remonstre, qu'il auroit souvent demandé au defendeur, payement de ses peines et vacations, dont il n'auroit tenu compte, et n'ayant seu en tirer raison, auroit esté contraint le faire convenir par devant vous, on auroit sans procéde, &c.* The Plaintiffe saith and declareth, *ſ* he hath often demanded payment of the defendant, for his worke, which demandes of him, the defendant neglected and slighted: and not being able to draw him to reason, he hath beene forced to cite him before you, where he hath thus farre proceeded.

The use of the Tenses of the Subjunctive Mood.

ALL the Tenses of the Optat. and the Subjunctive Mood are the same, save onely the Future tense: and therefore what hath bin already, and shall hereafter be said of the Optative, may serve for the Subjunctive Mood. Besides, I purpose to speake at large of the Conjunctions, in a chapter towards the end of this booke, and inther you must have recourse, for the fuller understanding of the Subjunctive Mood: but you must alwayes remember to carry along with you, those Adverbiall formes which I mentioned, in the chapter of the auxiliary Verbe of the Active voice, in the beginning of the Treatise of the Verbes.

Concerning the Future tense of the Subjunctive Mood, I will, according to my promise, speake a word or two. Note therefore, that when wee speake of two actions, the one to be done after the other, the sentence beginneth with these Adverbiall formes, viz *quand* when, *Lors que* then when, *apres que* after that, and such like: and then, wee put the Future tense of the Subjunctive, which signifieth the leading action, in the beginning: and in the last place, wee put the following action in the Future tense the Indic. Mood, or in the Imperative, or otherwise, as the sense shall require or the speaker please; as *Quand j' auray achevé cet ouvrage, je le communiqueray au public*, When I shall

shall haue ended this worke, I will publish it. Strangers put the *leading* action in the *preterp.* of the *Indicative* Mood, and say *Quand j'ay levé, &c.*

I haue often haue heard them speake in *this* manner, to the Maid seruant of the house: *Fais, tantost que nous auons fait icy, venez faire la chambre,* Maid, come and dresse the chamber as soone as wee haue done heere: Where we would say, *Quand nous aurons fait.* This change of tenses, and putting one for another, sheweth *harsh* in our eares for 2. causes: 1. Because they put a *Preterp.* tense for *Future*, which haue noe affinity one with another: 2. Because wee vse the *same* manner of speaking, when wee would signifie, what things we do ordinarily one *after* another, as *Après que je suis levé je vay au manege,* When I am vp in a morning I goe to the riding place; *Quand j'ay dîné je vay me pourmener,* When I haue dined I goe a walking. That is to say, it is my *ordinary* custome soe to doe: [*viz.* to goe to the riding place so soone as I am risen, and to walke abroad after dinner.]

Of using the Coniunction *que* with Verbes.

IN the last chapter but one, I set downe a *general* Rule, vpon which dependeth all that here is to be said, concerning the ioyning of Verbes with the Coniunction *que*: The Rule was this:
viz.

viz. that if wee speake of a thing, that is really and indeed, wee must vse a Verbe of the Indicative Mood, after the Coniunction *que*, or these Relatives viz. *qui*, *que*, *lequel*, *dont*: for it is the proper use of the Indic. Mood, to signifie things which really and actually, *are, were, or shall be.*

On the contrary, if wee speake by way of Modification [as the Logicians call it] that is, of things which may, might, would, or should be, wee vse the Tenses of the Operat. Mood, after the coniunction *que*. But because these generall Rules will not content all learners, vnlesse wee descend to a more speciall handling of the Verbes, I will here divide the Generall Rule, and apply it to diuerse sorts of Verbs.

These Verbes following, viz. *sçavoir* to know, *voir* to see, *connoître* to know, *affirmer* to affirme, *reconnoître* to acknowledge, *appercevoir* to perceiue, *considérer* to consider, *regarder* to looke vpon, *noter* to note, *contempler* to contemplate, *ouïr* to heare, *sentir* to feele, *toucher* to touch, *gouster* to tast, *taster* to handle, *trouuer* to finde, *sauouer* to savour of any thing, *entendre* to vnderstand and heare, *juger* to iudge or discern, *distinguer* to distinguish, *discerner* to discern, *se souvenir* to remember, *se remeñvoir* to call to remembrance, *reciter* to reckon vp, *raconter*, *narver* to tell a story, *maintenir* to vphold or maintaine, *soustenir* to make good or assure, and all other Verbes which haue a signification like to these, together with all Phrases to the same purpose, which

which affirms a thing certainly and directly, when they have after them the conjunction *que*, or any of the *aforsaid Relatives*, they have also after them a Verbe of the *Indic. Mood*: as *Je ſçay bien que vous eſtes de mes amis*, I know well that you are one of my friends. *On m'a adertainé que le Turc a eſté deſfait et repouſſé par l'Empeyreur*, I have certaine intelligence that the Turke hath been defeated and bearen backe by the Emperour. *L'ay entendu que vous avez oui nouvelles de la part de vos amis*, I have heard that you have received newes from your friends. *On apperçoit aſſément dont vient le mal*. They ſee eaſily whence the miſchiefe commeth. It is true indeed, that when the *thing* ſpoken of is *to come*, and ſo *conceived* of heretofore, wee uſe the *Opt. Mood*: as *j'eſtoy aſſuré que vous apprendriez bien*, I was aſſured that you would learne well. *j'ay reconnu que vous gagneriez ſur cette marchandſe*, I have avowed that you would gaine by theſe wares. For this *ſecond Preterimp.* hath a ſignification, like the *Indic. Mood*. The *2. Preterplup.* may alſo be uſed in ſuch ſentences, becauſe of the *auxiliary Verbe* of which it is compounded: as *je me ſuis bien apperceu que vous auriez reçu mauvaiſes nouvelles*, I well perceyved that you would heare bad Newes.

If the ſentence be *Interrogative*, *Conditional*, or *Negative*, it is indifferent, whether we uſe the *Indic. Mood*, or the *Optat.* as *ſe ne ſçavois pas bien que vous eſtiez, or fuſſiez de mes parents*.

I did not well know you were of kin to me. *si vous reconnoissez qu' on vous fait, or face plaisir,* if you acknowledge that they do you a courtesy. *Trouvez vous que le soleil vous nuit, or nuise à la vue?* Doe you find that the Sunne hurteth your sight? There is this difference notwithstanding, that the *Judic.* Mood, according to the proper nature of it, doth affirme a thing positively for truth, which the *Opt.* doth not. And therefore these Relatives afore mentioned, will have onely Verbes of the *Judic.* Mood after them. The second *Preterimp.* of the *Optat.* would fit better, if the thing spoken of be to come. As, *vous estes bien assuré que je ne ferois pas à ma promesse,* You was well assured that I would not fayle in the performance of my promise: The 2. *Preterpluperf.* might also have beene used in this place.

These Verbes, *Penser* to thinke, *croire* to beleve, *estimer* to thinke, *cuider* to thinke, *tenir* put for *croire* to beleve, *imaginer* to imagine, *douter* to doubt, *souppçonner* to suspect, *opiner*, *avoir opinion*, to suppose, *s' esjouir* to rejoyce, *estre aisé, joyeux*, to be glad; *estre marri, déplaisant* to be sorry, *s' ennuyer* to be weary of, *s' émerveiller*, *s' esbahir* to wonder, *s' estonner* to be amazed, and such like, (*viz.* such as signifie a motion of the mind betweene certainty and uncertainty) when they come after the Coniunction *que*, or the Relatives aforesaid, may have indifferently cyther a Verbe of the *Judic.* or the *Optat.* Mood. *Il pense que l' on le craint, or craint,* he

he thinketh that men feare him. *On croit qu'un tel homme est, or soit homme de bien*, Men beleeve that such a one is an honest man. If you use the 2. *Preterp.* tense of the *Optat.* Mood, you are supposed to speake of a thing, which yet is not, but *will be hereafter*. As *l'avois opinion que vous tiendriez mon parti*, I had a conceit that you would take part with me. The 2. *Preterplup.* may here be used, (which is compounded of the auxiliary of the 2. *Preterimp.*) as I sayd before.

In *Negative*, *Conditionall*, and *Interrogative* sentences, a *Verbe* of the *Indic.* Mood may likewise be used: but, to speake the truth, the *Opt.* is more smart and elegant: as *Supposez vous que l'on vous vueille mal?* Doe you suspect that men wish you ill in it? *Ne puis-je pas que l'on vous souteñne en votre tort.* Doe not you thinke that men uphold you in your injury. *Si vous croyez que d'on vous haïsse, vous vous abusez.* If you thinke that men hate you, you mistake your selfe.

I sayd, that when any sentence doth beginne with the 2. *Preterimp.* of the *Optat.* Mood, it significeth an *inclination*, *ability*, and *will* to something. But if it be the 2. *Preterimp.* of these *Verbes*, then may the *Present* tense of the *Indic.* Mood, or either of the two *Preterimp.* tenses of the *Optat.* Mood, be put after the Coniunction *que*, or the *Relatives* aforesayd: and in signification they differ so little, that it is not materiall to the sense whether of them you use. As *je pen-*
serois

serois voyant vostre complexion *que* vous estes, fustiez, or seriez colere, Observing your disposition, I thought you to be angry. J' aurois opinion *que* vous aimez, aimissiez, or aimeriez les bonnes lettres, I should thinke that you love Learning.

Commander to command, *enjoindre* to injoyne, *encharger* to give in charge, *conseiller* to counsell, *soigner* to take care of, *ordonner* for *commander* to decree, *voir*, *regarder* and *adviser*, whom they are put for *soigner*, and *prendre garde* to take care of. *Suader* to perswade, *mettre ordre* to give order, *mettre peine* to labour, *pourvoir* to provide, *induire* to induce, *instiguer* to instigate, or incense, *advancer* to goe forward, *haster* to haste, *moyener* to intercede, *tenir la main* to have a care of, *Prendre garde* to have an eye over, *avoir soin* to have a care, with such like Verbes and Phrases, signifying Providence or inclination to any thing, will have the first *Preterimp.* and the 1. *Preterplup.* tenses of the *Optat.* Mood, after the Conjunction *que*. as *on vous avoit bien conseillé que* pourveussiez d' heure à vos affaires, It was a good advise, to perswade you to lopke to your businesse instantly. Those Verbes, which signifie meerely Providence without any *motive*, having *que* after them, may have eyther the *Future* tense of the *Ind.* Mood, or else the 2. *Preterimp.* of the *Ops.* Mood: as *Je donneray ordre que* vous ferez, or seriez contenté, I will take order that you shall be contented.

Many Verbes are used divers wayes, and have
seve.

severall significations, and accordingly have divers constructions. As *Adviser*, *voir*, *regarder*, *entendre*, and many others, which belong one while to one Rule, another while to another, according to the different senses in which they are used.

Likewise, Verbes which signifie a *Will*, *Permission*, or *necessity*, as *vouloir* to be willing, *désirer* to desire, *souhaiter* to wish, *entendre* for *vouloir* to meane, *falloir* to behoove, *poursuivre* to pursue or urge, *requerir* to require, *demande* to request, *prier* to intreat, *inviter* to invite, *semonder* to summon, *accorder* to agree, *permettre* to permit, *souffrir*, *endurer* to suffer, *souffrir* to tolerate, *consentir* to consent and such like, will have the 1. *Preterimp.* and *Preterplup.* tenses of the *Opt.* Mood after *que*. The 6. last, if the sense require it, may have cyther the *Fut.* tense of the *Indic.* Mood, or the 2. *Preterimp.* of the *Opt.* Mood: And you are to understand without any further repetition, that those *Phrases*, which have the same sense with Verbes, have the same Construction.

Verbes of a contrary signification to these last mentioned, have the same construction: such are *defendre* to forbid, *empêcher* to hinder, *prohiber* to forbid, *dissuader* to dissuade, *detourner* to turne away, *démouvoir* to put aside, *dévertir* to divert, *retarder* to hinder or stop, *craindre* to feare, *appréhender* for *craindre* to feare, *abhorrer* to abhorre, *Refuser* to refuse, *nier* to deny, *Ignorer* to be ignorant of, *differer* to differ, *Reverser* to goe backe, &c. After *que*, will have the

the 1. *Preterimp.* and 1. *Preterplup.* Tenses. As *l'ignore que vous puissiez faire ce dont vous vous vantez*, I doe not know that you can doe that which you boast of. *Il desdigna que je luy aidasse*, he scorned that I helped him.

Now, *all the Verbes* mentioned in *this Chapter*, and others which have the *same signification*, may be joyned with an *Infm.* Mood, rather then with *que* and an *other* mood, if the verbe which may be put in the *Infinitive* mood, belong to the *same person*, which the leading verbe belongeth to: as *Je veux étudier* I will study; *vous desirez savoir la langue Françoisse* you desire to understand the French tongue. *Il pense l'entendre* I thinke I understand it.

You may observe from the Rules aforeseyd, that *ordinarily*, in sentences which are eyther *Interrogative*, *Conditionall*, *doubting* or *partitive*, the Tenses of the *Optative* Mood, are used after the Conjunction *que*, or the *Relatives* aforementioned, viz. *qui*, *que*, *lequel*, *dont*.

The like may be sayd of *Negative* sentences, which have *not* in them the *Demonstrative Pronoun* *ce*; for *ce*, in regard it doth *Demonstrate* a certaine thing, will have an *Indicative* Mood.

The use of the Infinitive Mood.

TO Verbes which signifie *will*, *thought of*, *permission*, or *any action of the senses*, wee
adde

adde an *Infinitive* Mood, without a Preposition; alwayes provided, that both the Verbes, signifie actions belonging to the same person: as *je veux escrire des lettres*, I will write Letters. *Vous desirez apprendre la langue Françoise*, You desire to learne the French tongue. Or if these Verbes of *will, thought, &c.* have before them, a *Personall Preposit. Pronoun*, of the *Dative* or the *Accusat.* case; as *si vous m'estimez haïr toute dissimulation*, ajoutez *soy à mon dire*, If you thinke that I hate all dissimulation, then, believe what I say. These Verbes following, are such as this Rule mentioneth. viz. *je veux* I will, *je cuide*, *je pense* I thinke, *je croy* I beleive, *j'ose* I dare, *je doy* I ought, *je puis* I can, *il faut* I must, *j'estime* I thinke, *j'imagine* I suppose, *je me semble* I seeme to my selfe, *je vay* I goe, *j'oy* I heare, *je voy* I see, *je sen* I spy, *j'apperçoy* I perceive, *je connoy* I know, *j'enten* for *j'oy* I heare, *je remarque* I observe, *je note* I note, *je contemple* I contemplate, *je considere* I consider, *je laisse* I leave, *j'endure, souffre*, I endure, *je permets* I permit, when it is joyned with the person in the *Accusat.* Case: for if the person bee put in the *Dat.* case, it is best, to joyn the Preposition *de* to the *Infinitive* Mood: as *Vous luy avez trop permis de prendre ses plaisirs*, You have suffered him to take his pleasure too much.

Some will have the Preposition *de*, before the Verbe of the *Infinitive* Mood: as *je crains d'importuner mes amis*, I feare to be importunate to my friends; *Vous m'avez empêché de faire*

mon profit, You have hindered me from making my profit. This putting of the Preposition *de*, before the *Infinitive Mood*, is, when the leading Verbe signifyeth *forbidding* or *hindring*: as *le deffen*, *prohibe* I forbid, *Je dissuade* I dissuade, *le detourne* I turne aside, *le Retarde* I hinder or keepe backe, *le detourbe* I disturbe, *le diverti* I divert, *le Recule* I goe backe, *le Refuse* I refuse, *le differe* I shift off, or protract.

Likewile, when the *Infinit. Mood* expresseth the *materiall* cause, or *motive* of the action, signified by the leading Verbe, the Preposition *de* must be put before it: as *le m' es-jouis d' apprendre*, I rejoyce in Learning. This kind of *Infinitive*, with *de* before it, is used after *these following* Verbes, viz. *le me fâche* I am angry, *le m' ennuie* I am weary, *le m' esmerveille*, *le m' esbahi*, I wonder, *le m' estonne* I am amazed, *le me soucie*, I am carefull, *le me lasse* I weary my selfe. Likewise, *le commande* I command, *j' enjoins* I injoyne, *j' ordonne* I decree, *le suade* I persuade, *le haste* I haste, *j' instigue* I incense, *j' encharge* I give in charge, *je conseille* I counsel, *j' advance* I advance, *j' accorde* I consent, *j' entrepren* I undertake, *je m' atten* I expect, *je me vente* I boast of my selfe, *je me diligente* I bestirre my selfe, *je depesche* I dispatch, *j' engarde* I withhold, *je meus*, *j' esmeus*, I moove, I make a stirre, *j' occasione* I give occasion, *je presse* I presse, *j' approche* I approach, *j' excuse* I excuse, *je dispense* I dispense, *il suffit* it sufficeth. Here also you may place many *Impersonals*,

nals, which are to be found before, in their proper Chapter.

Likewise, after Nounes Substant. or Adjectives, *de* is put before the Infin. Mood, to signifie the Originall of a thing, or to signifie and imply leasure, and disingagement from other imployments: as *Soigneux d'estudier* desirous to study: *Content de faire plaisir*, Content to doe a courtesie. *Las de courir*, weary of running. *Enroué de prier*, Hoarse with praying. *Envie d'apprendre*, Desire to learne. *Loisir d'escrire*, Leysure to write. And others, which are used where the Latines use the Gerund in *di*.

Some Verbes will have the Preposition *d*, before the infinitive Mood which followeth them. As *I'appren à parler François*, I learne to speake French. *Vous apprestez vous à partir*, you make ready to be gone. In the same manner wee use *j'estudie* I study, *j'enseigne* I teach, *j'indui* I induce, *j'eimeu* I moove or stirre in a businesse, *j'instrui* I instruct, *j'incite* I stirre up, *je condui* I conduct, *j'adresse* I adresse, *j'appareille* I make preparation, *je tends* I stretch, *j'occupe* I busie, *j'embe songne* I set on worke, *je Reduis* I reduce, *j'atten* I stay or expect, *je prepare* I prepare, *j'exerce* I exercise, *le pourchasse* I prosecute, *je parvien* I come to, *je pousse* I thrust. *j'enten*, for *je scay*, or *je pren garde*, I know, I take heed to; *je poursui* I proceed, *j'attente* I attempt, *je nuis* I hurt, *j'addonne* I apply, *j'incline* I incline, *le panche* I leane over, or on one side, *j'amuse* I busie ones head, *j'employe* I em-

ploy, *j' applique* I apply, *j' acbarne* I flesh a man, viz. in quarrelling, or any bloody attempt, *j' obfine*, *j' opiniastre*, I make obstinate, *ie fasonne* I fashion, *j' accōmode* I accommodate, *j' approprie* I appropriate, *j' addextre* I make dextrous and ready at any thing. *I' habilite* I make plyable or fitting, *I' adapte* I fit one thing to another, *ie dedie* I dedicate, *ie destine* I destine, *ie consacre* I consecrate, *ie voüe* I vow, *I' abandonne* I give over a thing, *I' expose* I expose, *ie commence* I begin. And in a word, all those Verbes which imply an applying of a mans selfe to any thing.

We use likewise the same Preposition *à*, after Nounes, which signifie convenience or inconvenience, fitnessse or unfitnesse: as *diligent à chercher son profit*, diligent in minding his profit: *facile, or difficile à apprendre*, Easie or hard to learne; *Plaisant à hair*, pleasing to hate: *fort à aimer* powerful to draw love, *Prompt et adextre à secourir*, Ready and quicke to helpe. So likewise in the sentences, wherein the Latines use the Gerund in *do*, or the Preposition *ad*, as *Passer le temps à estudier*, to spend the time in study, *Prendre plaisir à iouer*, To delight in playing.

Moreover, when wee expresse an aptitude, or disposition not yet brought to effect, or put to the use intended, we use the Preposition *à*, after the Verbe substantive *le suis*, expressed or implied: as *Une maison à loër*, a house to be hyred, *Une fille à marier*, a Mayd to be married; *Ce qui est fait, n' est pas à faire*, that which is done, is not to doe. This, is almost like that sense, wherein the

the Latines use the Geronda in *dum*, or the Participle of the Fut. tense in *das*, *da*, *dum*.

So likewise, when the *Infinis. Mood* after the *Verbes*, signifyeth some *businesse to be done*: as *qu'avez vous à faire*, What have you to doe? *I'ay à estudier*, *à écrire*, I am to study, to write. And if we use the said *Verbe I'ay* I have, in the *Opt. Mood*, it implyeth *command* or *prohibition*: as *Chacun aye son devoir*, Let every one have his task to doe. *Le Capitaine s'escria, que tous eussent à le suivre*, et *qu'il nul n'eust à se feindre*, The Captaine cryed out, that all were to follow him, and that no man should flinch. So likewise, when we would signifie by the *Infin. Mood*, the *snall cause* of a thing: as *Bailler ses souliers à refaire*, *un livre à relier*, To give his shooes to be mended, a Booke to read over againe. *Prendre une terre à labourer*, *une vigne à planter*, *un jardin à façonner*, To take a piece of ground to till, a Vineyard to manure, a Garden to lay out into plots.

Some of the *Verbes* aforesayd, and others also, have after them, eyther an *Infin. without* a Preposition, or with the *Prep. de*: as *Je delibere apprendre*, or *d'apprendre*, I purpose to learne, *Je desire sçavoir*, or *de sçavoir*, I desire to learne; So likewise, *J'espere* I hope, *Je promets* I promise, *Je permets* I permit, *Je pretens* I pretend, *J'enten* for *Je veux* I desire or will, *Je prie* I intreat, *Je souhaite* I desire, *Je requier* I require, *Je demande* I aske, *Je souffre* I suffer, *J'endure* I endure, *J' imagine* I imagine, *J' assure* I assure,

assure, *je pleuvie* I undertake, *je garranti* I warrant, *je daigne* I vouchsafe, *je dédaigne* I scorn, *je crain* I feare.

Some Verbes, have after them an Infinitive Mood, eyther with *de*, or *à*; as *j' essaye de*, or *à faire mon profit*, I try to make my profit, *j'exhorte mes disciples d' escrire*, or *à escrire*, I exhort my Schollers to write. So also *je m'efforce* I endeavour, *j' evertue*, I doe my best, *je peine*, *je travaille*, I labour, I take paines, *j' incommode* I incommode, *je tasche* I endeavour, *je commande* I command, *je Refuse* I refuse, *je Recule* I turne backe, *je differe* I delay, *je semonds* I summon, *j' invite* I invite, *je convie* I invite, *je poursui* I prosecute, *je pourchasse* I pursue, I goe about, *j' attente* I attempt, *je sollicite* I sollicite, *j' instigue* I instigate or incense, *je meus* I moove, *j' esmeus* I make a stirre, *je pousse* I thrust, *ie Regarde* I looke, or have an eye to, *i' advise* I observe or marke, *ie pense* I thinke, or mind, *i' oblige* I oblige, *i' engage* I engage, *ie condamne* I condemne, *ie congedie* I take leave, *ie facilite* I facilitate, *ie delecte* I delight, *i' elabats* or *resjouis* I sport or play.

You shall finde some Verbes, which are used all the three wayes; viz. With *de*, with *à*, or with an Infinitive Mood without a Preposition, and yet signifie the same thing: as *ie contrain* I constrain, *ie requier* I require, *ie demande* I aske, *ie soubaite*, *ie desire*, I desire, *ie resous* I resolve, *ie delibere* I deliberate, *i' entre pren* I undertake: And Verbes which have a contrary signi-

signification to these : as *i' abhorre* I abhorre, *ie Refuse* I refuse, *ie dedaigne* I disdain, *i' apprehende* I apprehend, *ie meiprise* I disesteeme, *i' abhominie* I abhorre or detest.

I noted to you some Verbes, which when they have a *different Construction*, have a *different Signification*. Such are *ie vien escrire*, or *i' escrire*, I come to write, *je vien d' escrire*, I come from writing; *j' enten parler* I hear one speake, *j' enten de parler*, I purpose or intend to speake, *je m' enten i' parler*, I know how to speake. This is sufficient for a taste, you may observe the like of other Verbes, if you be curious and diligent. Adde hereto the *Chapter* of the *Impersonals*: for betweene them and these, there is some affinity and likenesse.

Adde hereto likewise, the Verbe *Faire* to doe, and Verbes which signifie the *Action* of the *Senses*: as *voir* to see, *ouir* to heare, *sentir* to feelee, *entendre* to apprehend or imagine, *appercevoir* to perceive, *Regarder* to looke, or to have an Eye to. So also *laisser* to leave, *permettre* to permit, *endurer*, *souffrir* to suffer: which Verbes, when they have after them an *Infinitive Mood*, of the *Active* voyce; without a Preposition, they give it a *Passive sense*: as *le feray imprimer mon livre*, I will cause my Booke to be printed. If we will name the *person*, whose *action* is signified by the *Verbe* of the *Infinitive* Mood, we use *i'*, *au*, *aux*, or *par*. As *je fay imprimer mon livre d'un tel*, or *par un tel imprimeur*, I cause my Booke to be printed by such a Printer. Looke backe to the

Treasure of the Articles. I'oy chanter *une chanson à un*, or par un *Musicien*, I heare a Song sung by a Musitian. A qui avez vous *ouy dire cette Nouvelle*, Of whom heard you to this newes. *Resp.* Au *courrier du Roy*, of the Kings Post.

* Which a man would think should turne the Neuter, to a Passive.

If the Verbe of the Infin. Mood be a Verbe Neuter, it *still* retaineth the signification of a Verbe Neuter, notwithstanding the * Verbe going before : as *faire fuir les ennemis*, To make the Enemies runne away. *Faire courir, aller, naistre, mourir, vire*, to make one runne, goe, be borne, dye, live. *le te faire luer d'aban*, I will make you sweat with labouring till you grudge againe. *Il l'a fait trembler et paller de peur*, He hath made him tremble and looke pale for feare.

It happeneth very often, that such a Verbe Active of the Infin. Mood, hath indifferently eyther an Active, or a Passive signification, which may be knowne by the circumstances, and the intention of the speaker : as *le vous vais escrire* : which signifieth, either, I see you write : [and then *vous* is of the Accusat. Case] or, I see that they write to you. [and then *vous* is of the Dat. case] *Je * leur feray nettoier leurs habits*, I will make them to make cleane their cloathes : [viz. they owne] or I will cause their cloathes to be made cleane for * them, [viz. by another.] And here you are to note, that all the ambiguity lyeth in the Prepos. Pronoun : for if that were *out*, there would be none at all.

* Here *leur* is of the Accus.
* Where *leur* is of the Dat. Case.

Note likewise, that when the Verbe *Faire* to doe, hath before it the negative Particle *ne*, and after

after it the Conjunction *que*, and an *Infin. Mood*, with *de* before it; it implyeth a thing newly done; as *Je ne say que d'arriver*, I am arrived but just now. *Monseigneur ne fait que de sortir*, The Gentleman doth but got forth.

The same Verbes, with the same negative Particle *ne*, before it, and the same Conjunction *que*, and an *Infin. Mood* without the Prep. *de*, after it, signifyeth a continuall use of any thing: as *Vous ne faites qu'estudier*, you do nothing but study.

Among the *Latines*, the *Accus. Case* is most proper, to put before the Verbe of the *Infin. Mood*, and to serve for a *Nom.* case to it: and we may imitate them in that kind of Phrase, if we observe these Rules following: viz.

If the *Accus.* be a *Perf. Pronoun*, it cannot serve for a *Nom.* to the *Infin. Mood*, but is to be placed before the leading Verb, and then cometh the Verbe of the *Infinitive Mood* without a Preposition: as *Je vous repute avoir autant profité aux bonnes Lettres, qu'autre de ce pays*, I esteem you to be one, that hath learned as much as any one in this Country. *Chacun vous estime avoir atteint la perfection de vertu*, Every man thinketh that you have attained the perfection of Vertue. The *Personall Pronoun*, in this sense, runneth smoothly before these Verbes following, viz. *Penser* to thinke, *croire* to beleieve, *estimer* to thinke or imagine, *Cuider* to suppose, *Reputer* to repute, *douter* to doubt, *soupgonner* to suspect, *sçavoir* to know, *entendre* to heare or understand, and such like.

But

But we may not use them to every Verbe, and in every Phrase. And therefore, wee must have recourse to a certaine manner of speaking, which is easie enough, and usuall among us : and that is, to change the *Accus.* into the *Nom.* and the *Inf.* Mood into the *Indicative*, with the Conjunction *que* before it : as *Le bruit est que vous estes Riche*, the report goeth that you are rich. *On vous a fausement rapporté que je vous veux mal*, They have told you falsely that I wish you ill. For *vous estre Riche*, *may vous vouloir*, would be but harsh Phrases.

But if the *Accusative* be not a personal Pronoun, both wayes are ordinary with us. As *On dit bien vray, les mauvaises paroles corrompre les bonnes mœurs*, or *que les mauvaises paroles corrompent*, &c. It is a very true saying, that bad words corrupt good manners. *le tien cetuy là faire office de bon ami, qui me reprend de mes imperfections*, or *que cetuy là fait*, &c. I hold, that that man doth the office of a Friend, which reprehendeth me for my imperfections.

We use also the *Inf.* Mood, without another Verbe before it, to signifie suddainnesse and hast, as *Nous chargeons brusquement l'ennemy*, et *luy* de reculer, et *nous* de le poursuivre, We charge the Enemy stoutly, and he to goe, and we after him. This Phrase, in the Latine is frequent enough. We doe ordinarily put the Conjunction *et* with the Preposition *de*, before the *Infinitive* Mood, and a *Nom.* Case betweene the Conjunction and the Preposition : as *Il estoit yvre et se*

se laissa tomber, et chacun de rire, hee was drunke and fell downe, and every one fell a laughing.

Many Novices in our Language, doe place the Preposition *pour*, very unhandfomely, before the Infinit. Mood upon all occasions. We use it indeed before the Infinitive Mood, but it is, when to a Question made by *pourquoy* wherefore, wee answer and tell, for what end a thing is so and so: as *Pourquoy estes vous venu en France*, Wherefore came you into France? *Pour apprendre la langue*, to learne the Language. You might have put *fin* in the question, and *à fin* in the answer: as *à quelle fin estes vous venu, &c.* To what end came you, &c. Resp. *À fin d'apprendre*, to learne, &c. *Pourquoy, or à quelle fin portez vous l'espée*: Resp. *Pour signaler, or afin de signaler ma qualité, et pour me defendre, or afin de me defendre au besoin*. Wherefore, or to what end doe you weare a Sword? Resp. To show my Profession, and to defend my selfe if need be.

Our Infinitives serve ordinarily for Nounes substantive, of the Masc. Gender and Sing. number, if we adde to them any Article, Pronoun Adjective, or Preposition: as *Couchez vostre dire par escrit*, set downe in writing that which you speake: *Ne vous arrestez au parler du monde*, Doe not you rely upon the rattle of the World: *Tout mon pouvoir ne scauroit m'acquitter mon devoir envers vous*, All the power that I have, cannot acquit mee of my duty toward you.
And

And sometimes in the *Plur.* number: as *Je connois assez les estres de ce logis*, I know well the Roomes of this House. *Les vivres sont à mediocre prix*, Victuals are at a reasonable rate. *Les penſers des hommes reſſemblent à l'air, aux vents, et aux ſaiſons*, Mens thoughts are like the aire, the winds, and the ſeaſons of the yeare, &c.

Par bien ſervir et loyal eſtre;

De ſerviteur on devint maiſtre,

Serve well, and be as loyall as you can.

So may you Master be, that now are man.

Vous me haïſſez ſans vous avoir fait deplaiſir,

You hate mee without any wrong on my part.

Sans eſtudier, et pener on ne devient point ſervant,

Without ſtudy and paines taking; no man be-

comes learned. *Sans cultiver et enſemenſer, la terre ne produit que ronces et chardons: auſſi ſans en-*

doctriner les eſprits, ils ne ſoiſonnent qu'en vices,

Without manuring and ſowing of Seed, the earth

bringeth forth nothing but Bryars and brambles:

and ſo likewise without inſtruction, mens minds

bring forth nothing but vices.

Besides all that hath beene ſayd above, concerning the *Preterperfect* Tense of the *Infinitive* Mood, you are to note, that it is joyned with the Preposition *apres* after, as *Apres avoir conſtamment attendu*, after you have constantly expected. *Apres avoir aſſez connu voſtre intention*, After I have ſufficiently knowne your intention. Sometimes, Writers omit the aforeſaid Prepos. *apres*, viz. when two *Infinitives*, are by a Coniunction joyned together in the ſentence: for then be-
fore

fore the latter, the Preposition must not bee set downe : as *Après avoir receu vos lettres, et icelles avoir leuës*, after I had received your Letters and read them.

Of the Participle.

HOW Particples are formed and made, you have seen in the *Treatise of the Verbes*. They are declined like *Adiectives*: & here you shall have some Rules, concerning the *Syntaxe* of them.

The *Part.* of the *Pres. tense*, which endeth in *ant*, may be put elegantly after *all Numbers* and *Persons* of the Verbe *after* to goe; and when it is thus placed, it signifieth *continuance* and *perseverance* in any action; as *Jour et nuict pour ma viande, de pleurs me vay je soustenant*, Instead of meat, I live day and night with teares. I' allois *racontant mes douleurs*, I went reckoning up my sorrowes. *Espoir charmeur qui me vas decevant*, Inchanting hope y daily thus deceivest me. And note also, that when the *Nominat.* Case to the Verbe, is of the *Plurall Number*, it is an *indifferent* thing, whether the *Part.* be of the *Singul.* or *Plur.* number: as *Plusieurs ennuis me vont rongeat*, or *rongeans*, many cares gnaw me continually. But the *Partic.* must be of the *Masc.* Gender, though the *thing* or *Person* mentioned, be of the *Fem.* as *Belle qui me vas martyrant*. Thou faire one that dost martyr mee.

The

The reason of this Construction, wherein, as you see, the *Participle* changeth neither Gender nor Number; is, because the *Participle* standeth heere to expresse the *same*, which the Latines doe by their *Gerund* in *do*: as *Allant à Paris*, on *passé par Orleans*, in going to *Paris*, you *passé* by *Orleans*. We adde sometimes the Preposition *en* to the *Participle*, as *En forgeant, on devint forgeron*, by playing the Smith, a man becommeth a Smith. And when it is thus used, it is neyther tyed to Number nor Gender by any Substantive, but is alwayes of the *Masc.* Gender and *Sing.* Number: as *En vieillissant on apprend tous jours quelque chose*, In growing old men learne something every day. So also when it is a *meere Participle*, it seemeth not to be tyed, to agree with any Substantive in Gender, but runneth most elegantly in the *Masc.* Termination, as if it were *Common*.

It is best that in the Number it should follow the Substantive: as *La rosée tombant du Ciel en faconde la terre*, The Dew falling from Heaven maketh the Earth fruitfull, *La terre humant la rosée, produit herbes en la saison*, The Earth drinking up the dew, bringeth forth hearbes in due season. *Les roys affermissent leurs estats, traictans gracieusement leurs sujets*, Kings strengthen their estates, while they deale gently with theyr Subjects. *Le sujets assurent leur repos, obeïssans à leur Prince*, Subjects assure their quiet, by obeying their Princes. *Les femmes se fardans, rendent suspecte leur pudicité*, women that paint

paint themselves, draw they: Chastity into sus-
pition.

Yet if the *Substantive* be of the *Fem. Gender* and the *Plur. Number*, the *Participle* may be put in the *Fem. Gender* also. *Les vertus reiglan-tes la vie humaine, sont bien seantes, et les volup-tez trompantes les bonnes mœurs, sont iteinuifan-tes*, Vertues which governe mans life, are very comely, and pleasures which spoyle good man-ners are very hurtfull. Yet in these sentences, where [as you see] the *Partic. governeth a Case after it*, I thinke it were best, to expresse it by the *Relative*, and a *Verbe* of the *Indic. Mood*, and say, *Les vertus qui reignent; &c. et les voluptez qui corrompent*.

Heere I would have you call to mind, that which was sayd, in the *beginning* of the Chapter of the *Prepos. Pronounes* of the *Nom. Case*: viz. that these Pronounes of the *Nom. Case*, *le, tu, il, ils*, are never put before *Participles*, but *moy, toy, luy, elle, eux, and elles*, onely: which last notwithstanding, may be omitted with more elegance, in regard, the *person* of the *Participle*, is included in the *following Verbe*: as *Hantant la cour, j'ay appris plusieurs civilitez*, while I followed the Court, I learned many civill things. *Voyageant en Italie, vous pouvez avoir appris plusieurs antiquitez Romaines*, In travelling through Italy, you may have learned many Ro-
man antiquities. *Navigant sur la mer, on court de grands risques*, In sayling upon the Sea, men run many hazards.

If the *Participle* serve onely as *Adiective*, it must agree in * *all* things with the *Substantive*: as *C' est une vertu bienſeante que la modestie*, This modesty is a well-becoming Vertue. *Voila une fort luisante lame et bien tranchante*, Looke you, there is a very shining and good cutting Blade. Where you are to note over and above, that, if the *Participle Adiective* commeth before the Substantive, it is more bound, to agree with it in Gender: and thus you may know a *meere Participle*, from a *meere Adjective*: The *meere Part.* signifyeth the *action* or *effect* of the Substantive, and a *meere Adiective*, signifyeth a *quality* belonging to the Substantive.

In like manner, when the *Part.* of the *Passive* Voyce is a *meere Adiective*, it must agree with the Substantive in *all* things: as *Un Royaume divisé ne subsistera point*, et la cité desunie sera desolée, a Kingdome divided shall not subsist, and a City at discord shall be desolate. And so must the *common Part.* of *all* Verbes be used, whether *Passive*, *Neuter*, or *Reciprocall*: The reason why it must bee so used, is, because these kinds of Verbes, have the Verbe Substant: *Je suis* for their *Auxiliar*.

But, if the *common Participle* be joyned to the *Active* auxiliar, viz, *I' ay* (as it is in many tenses) then there is some doubt, concerning the use of it. And in my opinion, these Rules are to be observed, if we will speake exactly.

When we use *Active* and *Transitive* Verbes, if the *Substantive*, being of the *Accus. Case*, and follow

following the Verbe, signifieth a thing upon which the action of the Participle is exercised, and have the Part. before it, the Part. is tyed neyther to Gender, nor Number, but is set downe in the Masc. Gender, and Singular number: as *j'ay enhui appris une belle leçon*, I have learned to day a good Lesson. *Un tel m'a dit de nouvelles de nostre país*, Such a one hath told me newes out of our Country. Vnder this Rule, I conteine all Impersonals, compounded of the Syllable *on*, and the Verbe *Active*: for they have the same constructiō, with the *Transit. actives* in all things.

If the afore-mentioned common Participle, cometh after the Substantive afore sayd, and be referred to it by a Relative of the *Accus.* case, or a Prepos. Pronounce, of the *Accus.* Case, then, if the Participle should not agree with the Substant. in Gender, and Number, there would bee a solecisme, and false constructiō. And that man, whosoever doth dislike this Rule, taketh liberty to speake without observation: as *j'ay receu les livres que j'avois achetez*, I have received the books which I had bought. *Vous souviene de cette leçon, que vous avez ouye, et a present bien entendue*, Remember this Lesson that you have heard, and now well understood. If the Substant. be not expressed, but understood, yet the Rule must hold: as if we speake to a woman, wee say, *Qui vous a conduite venant icy?* Who did conduct you in your comming hither? *Qui vous a advisée d'y venir*, who perswaded you to come hither? *Resp. Un tel m'en a advisée, il m'y a amenée,*
C c such

such a one advised mee, he brought me hither, *J'ay esté bien receuë, on m'y a honorablement traitée*, I was there well entertained, and honorably vsed.

Heere two observations present themselves, 1. that scing the *Participle*, by this rule, is then *only* bound to agree with the *Substantive*, when it is of the *Accusative* case, if the *Subst.* be of any other case, the *Participle*. is not to agree with it, but it is to remaine in the *Sing.* number, and *Masc.* gender; as *Connoissez vous les damoiselles de la Roynie?* Doe you know the *Queenes* *Maides* of honour? Resp. *Ouy; je les ay long temps servies, et leur ay obeï de bon cœur; je les ay bien aimées, elles m'ont tous jours pleu, pour leur vertu et honnesteté, je leur ay servi de maître de musique*, Yes, I have served them a long time, and have obeyed them with all my heart, I have loved them well, they have alwayes pleased me with their vertue and goodnesse, I have served them as their Master to teach them Musicque: If you take this sentence in pieces, you shall find, that where the *Substant.* is of the *Accusat.* case: there the *Participle* agreeth with it, but where it is of the *Dat.* it doth not.

The other observation is, that though the *Substant.* be of the *Accusat.* case, yet if a *Verbe* of the of the *Infinis* Mood follow the *Participle*, you may indifferently, either make it agree with the *Substant.*, or let it remaine in the *Masc.* gender and *Sing.* number; as *Avez vous veu la Roynie?* Have you seene the *Queene*? Resp. *Ouy; je l'ay*
veu

veu parler, or je l'ay veuë parler à Monsieur l' Ambassadeur, Yes, I saw her speake to my Lord Embassador: *Avoit il desja fait sa harangue*? Had he then made his oration? Resp. Non, mais je la luy ay oui, or je la luy ay ouië prononcer *elegantment* or *elegantment* prononcer: No, but I heard him pronounce it elegantly.

This obseruation is still the same, though the Verbe be *Reciprocal*: as *La damoiselle ne s'est pas voulu*, or *voulue fier aux paroles du gentilhomme* The Gentlewoman would not rely vpon the Gentlemans words.

You must not forget what I said, concerning the *Relatives* of the *Accusative* case, viz. *que, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles*, and the *Proposit. Pron.* likewise of the *Accusative*: viz. *me, se, te, vous, le, la, les*: without which, the Substantive cannot well come before, the Verbe or the Participle, whose action is exercised upon it. For these Phrases, *J'ay enhuy une belle leçon apprise*, I haue learned a good lesson this day: *Je vous ay m'amour donnée*, I have giuen you my love: *sa bonne grace elle m'a octroyée*, She hath granted mee her good favour, These (I say) are out of use, vnlesse it be in verse, where perhaps they may be passable.

To conclude, I haue told you sufficiently in what is past, that wheresocuer the *Passive Auxiliary je suis* is placed, the *Particip.* must necessarily agree with its *Substantive*: I doe not meane the *Substantive* of the *Accusative* (marke this well)

but of the *Nominative*, whither it goe before the *Subjt.* as in *De nostre temps sont advenues choses memorables, et en ont esté escrites histoires tresbelles a voir*, Memorable things have happened in our time, and excellent Histories have beene written of them. Or whether it come after the *Substantive*: as in *Les Gaules furent jadis conquises par Cesar*, the Gaules were conquered in old time by Cesar.

In the Rules of the *Redoubled definite tenses*, I made mention of some Phrases, wherein the common Participle *beginneth* the sentence, and is followed by the *Conjunction que*: as *Rendues que furent le lettres de Cesar aux Consuls par Fabie*, *Cesars* Letters being delivered to the Consuls by *Fabius*. *Parachevé*, or *parachevés* qu'il eut ces choses, having finished these things Here you see, that in the first example, where the Participle hath the *Passive auxiliar* joyned with it, viz. *furent*, it is governed by the *Nom. Case* *lettres*: but in the second example, where it hath the *Active auxiliar*, viz. *eut*, it is indifferent, what *Gender*, or *Number* the *Participle* is of, in regard the *Accusat.* case commeth after it.

The same sense may be expressed by the *Part.* of the *Preterplup.* tense, which are composed of the *auxiliars* of the *Passive* voyce, viz. *ayant esté*, and *estant*: as *Les lettres de Cesar ayans esté rendues, or estant rendues, Cesars* Letter being delivered: *Ayant parachevé ces choses, ayant ouï ces nouvelles*, having finished these things, having heard this Newes.

These

These Phrases are very usefull to us, in expressing the *Ablative Case absolute* of the *Latines*. For you are to know, that as in the *Latine* the *Ablat.* case is *absolute*, so in our language the *Nominative* is. Tu n'as eu cessé si non ayant parachevé mon affaire, or si non mon affaire étant parachevé, Unless my business had beene ended, you had not left off. Which in *Latine*, is expressed by the *Ablative Case*, thus. Nisi perfecta re, de me non conquiesci. So likewise, Hannibal ayant deffait les Romains, à la bataille de Cannes, se gasta es delices de Capue, Hannibal having defeated the Romans, at the Battaille of canna, spoyled himselfe in the pleasures of Capua. Which in *Latine*, may bee expressed thus: Hannibal cum, or postquam in praelio Cannensi Romanos posttravisset, se Capua delitijs corruptit: or by the *Ablative case absolute*: as Casis ab Hannibale Romanis, &c. [This in French may be expressed divers wayes:] as Les Romains étant deffaits, or ayans esté batuz, or deffaits qu'eurent esté les Romains par Hannibal, or Hannibal ayant taillé en pieces les Romains, or apres que Hannibal eut deffait les Romains, or apres que le Romains eurent esté deffaits par Hannibal, or Hannibal, apres avoir taillé en pieces, or deffait les Romains: or Hannibal, taillé qu'il eut en pieces les Romains, s'alla gaster es delices de Capue: or Les Romains apres avoir esté taillés en pieces par Hannibal, il s'alla spoltronner es plaisirs & voluptez à Capue.

[Here followeth another example.] in *Latine* it is thus expressed: *Adventante Romano Caesare, tota est commota civitas*, Caesar comming to Rome, all the City was in a combustion. [This in French is rendred diuerse wayes] as *Cesar arrivant à Rome*, or *approchant de Rome*, or *pres d'arriver à Rome*, or *allant arriver à Rome*, toute la ville, or tout le pais fut en esmeute, or se mit en alarme &c.

Againe, *Discedente Pompeio, non ausus est Senatus Roma consistere*, When Pompey went away, the Senate durst carry noe longer at Rome, in French thus: *Pompée delogeant*, or *s'en allant* le Senat n'osa demeurer à Rome. Note also these following Phrases: *Quo audito* which being heard or vnderstood, quoy entendu, *Quo facto* & being done, quoy fait: *His rebus peractis* these things being done, Ce fait, or ces choses mi fet à fin, I haue enlarged my selfe on purpose vpon this subiect, to shew the variety of Phrases in our Language.

Note by the way, that the *Participles* of our *Auxiliar Verbes*, are never of the *Feminine* gender, but alwayes of the *common*: as *ayant*, *ayans* *estant*, *estans*, *esté*, never varieth either in gender or number: for wee never say *estée*, or *estez*. For other *Participles*, you haue the rules in the beginning of the chapter.

Our *Participles* of the *Active Termination*, serve for nouns *Substantive* of the *Masculine* gender: as *Le croissant de la Lune*, The increase of the Moone: *Le pendant d'une espée*, d'une bourse,

bourse, d'une montagne, A Belt to hang a Sword on, the string whereby a Purse hangeth, the brow of a Hill. *Le tranchant d'un couteau*, d'une épée, The edge of a Knife, or of a Sword. *Le courant de l'eau*, The current of the Water: *Le levant* the East. *Le couchant* the West. *Les tenants et aboutissants*, The inhabitants and Borderers, *Un assaillant* an assailer, *un défendant* a Defendant, *un soutenant* an upholder, and many others.

From these Participles, many *Verbal Nounes* are derived, of divers endings.

First, Nounes in *eur*, in the *Masc. Gender*, which make their *Feminines* in *euse*, or *esse*: these are formed of the Participle, by changing *ant* into *eur*: as of *changeant* changing, *changeur* Masc. *changeuse*, and *changeresse* Fem. a Changeling: of *bâtissant* building, *bâtisseur* Masc. *bâtisseuse*, and *bâtisseresse* Fem. a Builder. Of *jouant* playing, *joueur* Masc. *joueuse*, and *joueresse* Fem. a Gamester, &c.

Eur.

Many in *ent*: as *Changement* a changing, [which is derived of *changeant*, by changing *ant* into *ment*] *établissement* an establishing, & many of this sort, which are derived from the 3d. Conjugation: from which, in some we cut off *ss*, as in *Bâtiment* a building, *fourniment* a furnishing, *poliment* a polishing. In some we let alone the *ss*, as in *avertissement* an admonition, *accomplissement* a perfecting of any thing. Some we have of both the sorts, viz. with the *ss*, & without it: as *blanchissement* and *blanchiment* a whitening

Ent.

over, *fournissement* and *fourniment* a furnishing, or a helping one with any thing. Here you must observe, which of the Terminations is most in use.

age.

Many in *age*, of the *Masc.* Gender: as *passage* a passage, *blanchissage* a whitening over, *mariage* a marriage, *charriage* a carrying by Cart, Coach, or Wagon.

ance.

In *ance*, which are of the *Fem.* Gender; as *mesdisance* ill speaking, *jouissance* an injoying, *acointance* an acquaintance, *oubliance* a forgetfulness.

ure.

In *ure*, of the *Fem.* Gender: as *polissure* a polishing, *blesure* a hurt, *rompure* a breach, &c.

rie.

In *rie*, of the *Fem.* Gender, as *venterie* boasting, *menterie* lying, *tuerie* slaughter, &c.

son and ion.

In *son* and *ion* of the *Fem.* Gender: as *guerison* a healing, *benisson* a blessing, *Invention* invention, *intention* intention, and many others.

In a word, almost all Nounes Verball, whatsoever they be, are derived from this Participle of the *Pres.* tense, by varying the Termination:

The *Femin.* Termination of the *Passive*, or common Participle, serveth also for a Noun Verball of the *Fem.* Gender: as *allée* a going, or an Alley. *Arrivée* an arrivall, *Entrée* an Entry, *sortie* a going forth, *Couvée* a brood of Chickens or other Birds, *donnée* a giving, *issuë* an issuing forth, *veuë* the sight, *departié* a departure, *venue* a coming, *saillie* a jutting or leaping forth, *crüe* and increasing, *assemblée* an assembling, *prise* a taking, *apprise*, *entreprise* an undertaking, *mise* expence, *remise* a sending backe, *entremise*

a meditation, *montée* a going up, *devalée* a descent, *crainte* a feare, *contrainte* a constraint, *portée* an ability to beare, or that which was borne by a woman, or any female. *Enceinte* a compassing about. Very many others there are besides these, which are, both *Participles*, and *Substantives* of the *Fem. Gender*.

Of the Adverbe.

All words which are *undeclined*, or *unconjugated*, and joyned to *Verbes*, *Participles*, or *Nounes Adjective*, to fill up, enlarge, restrain, to explicate, or otherwise to modify their signification, may be called *Adverbs*. Hence is it, that many other parts of Speech are turned into *Adverbs*, and many *Adverbs*, are turned into other parts of Speech.

Adverbes of Place.

Où where, *d' où* from whence, *par où* which way. *Cy*, *icy* heere, *d' icy* from hence, *par cy*, *par icy*, this way. *çà*, *dès çà*, hither, on this side. *Là* there, *de là* on that side, from thence. *çà sus*, *çà haut* here above, *çà bas* here below, *là sus*, *là haut* there above, *là bas* there below. *Pardeçà* by hither, on this side. *Pardelà* on that side, *de pardeçà* of, or belonging to this side, *de pardelà* of, or belonging to that side. *Illes* there, *là* thither,

thither, that way. *D' illec* from thence. *Ailleurs* elsewhere, *d' ailleurs* from some other where. *Par ailleurs* some other where. *Par tout* every where, *nulle part* nowhere, *quelque part* some where, or wherever; *devant* before, *de devant*, *au devant*, in the front, *par devant* in ones presence, *du devant* from before, *derriere*, *de derriere*, *du derriere*, *au derriere*, *par derriere* behind, *dans dedans* within, *du dedans*, *de dedans*, on the inside; *au dedans* inwards, *par dedans* all within. *Hors* without, *dehors* without, *de dehors* from without, *du dehors* on the outside, *au dehors* outward, *par dehors* all without. *Pres* neere, *de pres* at hand forthwith. *Apres* after, *d' apres* after that, *par apres* afterward. *Aupres d' aupres*, *par aupres*, close by. *Loin* farre, *de loin* from farre, *au loin* farre off, *la loin* there a farre off. *Plus pres* neerer, *plus loin* further off, *tres pres* very neere, *tres loin* very farre off. *Oultre* beyond, *plus oultre* farre beyond, *tres oultre* very farre beyond. *Haut* above, *bas* below, *plus haut* higher, *tres haut* most high. *Plus bas* lower, *tres bas* very low. *Ceans* here within, *leans* there within.

Cy, *icy*, *ça*, and their compounds, signifie a place neere him that speaketh. *Là, illec*, signifie a place some distance from the speaker. *Icy* significeth resting and residence in a place: *ça* when it is used as an *Interjection*, significeth as much as *Baillez* give, or *cado* in Latine: as *ça cela* give me that, *ça ce livre* give me that Booke there. Likewise, *ça de peschons* nostre affaire, goe to, let us dispatch our businesse.

Adverbes

Adverbs of Time.

QUOND when, *maintenant*, or, *ore*, *ores*, now, now that, or-*primes*, or-*aprimés*, now at length, not before now. *A cette heure* just now. *Presentement* instantly, *pour le present* for the present. *Huy*, d' *buy*, en *buy*, this day, d' *enbuy*, belonging to this day, *au jour* day on this day, d' *aujourduy* belonging to this day, *du jourd' buy* from henceforward. *Tost* quickly, *tanrost* presently, by and by : *si tost* so soone, *si tost que* so soone as. *Plustost* sooner. *Tousjours* alwayes, *de tous jours* from Eternity, *à tousjours* to Eternity. *Tous les jours* at all times, *chaque jour* dayly. *Ordinairement* commonly. *Demain* to morrow, *de demain* belonging to to morrow, *à demain* till to morrow, *après demain* after to morrow. *Matin* early, *de matin* belonging to the morning, *du matin* of the morning, *à matin*, *au matin*, *ce matin* in the morning, to the morning, even this morning. *Soir* evening time, *de soir*, *du soir*, of or belonging to the Evening, or Since & Evening, *à soir*, *ce soir*, *au soir*, *sur le soir*, in or about the Evening. *Tard* late, *à tard*, *sur le tard*, late at night. *Le lendemain* the day after, *du lendemain* of or belonging to the day after, or on the day after, *au lendemain* on the day after. *Souvent* often, *n'aguères* of late, *Jamais* never, *à jamais*, *pour jamais* for ever, *à tout jamais* for all Eternity, *à tous jours mais* for ever and ever.

Jadis heretofore, *mais que* whenas, *quelq; jour* one day. *Tandis, cependant, ce temps pendant,* in the meane time. *Pieçà long agoe.* *Lors* then, *delsors* during that time, since that time, *à lors* at that time. *Lorsque* then when. *Ainsique* so when. *Quelquefois* sometimes. *Mainefois* many times. *Souventefois* oftentimes. *Le passé* heretofore, *par le passé* during that time which is past. *L'advenir* hereafter, *à l'advenir* in time to come, *onc, onques* ever. *Jusques à quand, tant que,* So long as, whiles that, *jusqu'à quand?* how long, till when? *tantque, jusqu'à tantque, jusques à tantque, jusqu'à ce que, jusques à ce que,* till that. *Deformais, d'ores en avant, dorenavant, dorenavant* hereafter, from henceforward. *Depuis* after that, *du depuis* since that. *Puis après, après, par après,* afterward, next to that. *Avant* before, *paravant, au paravant* in times past. *Devant* before that. *Cy-après* hereafter, *cy-devant* heretofore. *jà desjà,* already. *Quand et quand* forthwith. *Soudain, incontinent* instantly after. *Des* since, *deique* since that, *soudainque, incontinent que* as soone as. *Des l'heure* since the time, *à l'instant* upon the instant. *Tout à l'heure* now presently. *Sur le champ* before you budge a foote. *De bonne heure* in good time. *Dés, mes-huy* from this very day. *A tant* till the time when. *Autrefois* at other times. *Midi, à midy* at Noone, *après midi* in the Afternoone, *de relevée* about 3. of the Clocke in the Afternoone, *Minuit* Midnight, *à Minuit* at Midnight, *après Minuit* after Mid-

Midnight. *D' icy á peu* a little while hence,
peu apres a little after, *á chef de piéce*, just
 when the thing was ended. *Bonne piéce de temps*,
 a good space.

Adverbs of Order.

DE rang, de suite, in order, en suite d' ordre
 one after another. Par ordre orderly,
 de rang á rang from rancke to rancke. De
 point en point from point to point. De jour á
 jour from day to day, de jour en jour every day,
 one after another, d' heure á heure from houre to
 houre, d' heure en heure every houre none mist.
 Apres next, par apres next after, puis, puis apres
 in the next place. Avant first or before, par a-
 vant, auparavant, devant, before, or in the place
 before, par devant just before, preallablement
 au preallable going before, á la fin in the end,
 á la par fin toward the end, finalement, fina-
 blement, finally; to conclude, sur la fin upon
 the end: D' entrée, d' arrivée, d' abordée, d' in-
 trade, d' abordade, de prime face, upon the first
 onset, tryall, or sight. En fin at the last. Pre-
 mier, premierement, first of all. Secondement,
 deuxiement, secondly. Tiercement, troisié-
 mement, chirdly. Quartement, quatriesment,
 fourthly. Quintement, cinquiement, fifthly.
 sixiement, sixthly. Septiement &c en pre-
 mier lieu, in the first place. En second lieu, in the

the second place, *en troisieme lieu* in the third place. Note here, that many Adverbs of Order, are also Adverbs of Number.

*Adverbs of Number, or ac-
count.*

COMBien how many ? *Quantes fois, combien de fois*, how many times ? Resp. *Tant* so many, *autant* so many as. *Tant de fois* so many times, *autant de fois* as many times. *Mai- res fois, souventes fois*, many times, oftentimes ; *Aucunes fois, quelque fois*, sometimes. *Toutes fois et quantes*, *toutes et quantes fois*, as often as : *une fois* once, *deux fois* twice, *trois fois* thrice, &c. à *combien de fois, à quantes fois*, to how many times. *Tout à la fois* all at once, *par fois* at times, in course : *à beaucoup de fois* at many times, *à trop de fois* at too many times, *à assez de fois* often enough, *à une fois* at once, *à deux fois* at twice, *à coup* at a blow, *tout à coup*, *tout à un coup*, all at once, *à peu de fois* at few times, *à gueres de fois* scarce at once, *à plus de fois* at more times, *à moins de fois* at fewer times, *à plu- sieurs* at more times.

Adverbes of Quantity.

Combien how much, beaucoup much, peu a little, moins lesse, plus more, trop too much, assez enough, moult very much, par trop by too much, prou much, assez peu little enough, gueres scarce, point nought, tant so much, quant how much, autant as much, or as many. Presque, quasi, quassiment, à peu pres, almost, as it were, somewhat neere. Peu plus somewhat more, peu moins somewhat lesse, pour le moins, à tout le moins, au moins at the least. Au plus at the most, pour le plus for the most part, d'avantage over and above. These Articles, for the most part, will have after them the Article de, as hath beene said already.

Tant, autant, when they meereley signifie Quantity, without Comparison, have the same signification: and their Redditive is que, not quant. And you are to note, that in sentences altogether affirmative, the one may be used as well as the other: as *J'ay receu du Roy tant de faveurs*, or *autant de faveurs que j'ay voulu*, I have received from the King, as many favours as I have desired. But, if after the Conjunction que, the Sentence be Negative, tant onely is to be used, not autant: as *j'ay tant receu de biens de Dieu, que je ne le scaurois nombrer*, I received so many good things from God, that I cannot number them.

Adverbes

Adverbes of Comparison.

P *Plus* more, *moins* lesse, *pis* pirement worse, *mieux* better. *Si, aussi, si, tant, autant* as much as. These Adverbes of Comparison; have after them the Conjunction *que* : which, I would have strangers note the more carefully, because they erre frequently, in the use of these Adverbes *plus* and *moins* : which, when they signifie Quantity meerely, without comparison, have the Article *de*, after them : and when they are used in comparison, they have after them the Conjunction *que*. In this following example, you may see them used both wayes. *Crassus avoit plus de richesses, que Caton, mais moins d'honneur, Crassus* had more wealth then *Cato*, but lesse honour.

Si also, and *tant*, differ from *aussi* and *autant*; not in signification, but in use. For in affirmation you must say, *aussi* as much, *autant* as many, not *si*, and *tant* : but note withall, that *aussi*, is used before Adjectives and Adverbs only, and *autant* before Substantives with the Preposition *de, du, or des* : *Si je ne suis si riche que vous, j'ay autant d'honneur en ma vie, qu'aucun autre scauroit avoir*, If I be not as rich as you, I have as much honour as any man can have.

But if the Sentence be Negative, you may indifferently use, *si, aussi, or tant, autant* before Adjectives and Adverbs, but *si*, is best : And before

before Substantives *tant* or *autant*, but *tant* is best.

Adverbes of Quality.

Bien well, mal ill, *bonnement* fitly, *malement* unfitly, *sagement* wisely, *doctement* learnedly, *vertueusement* virtuously: and all those Adverbes which are formed of *Adjectives*, and end in *ment*.

But you are to note, that Adverbes ending in *ment*, are of two sorts: some are derived of *Adjectives* or *Participles*, ending in *ent*, or *ant*, & these double the *m*: so of *prudent*, cometh *prudemment* wisely, of *elegant*, *elegantment* elegantly, of *ardent*, *ardemment* ardently. Others, which are derived from other *Adjectives*, doe not double *m*: as *heureux* happy, *heureusement* happily, &c. Of which sort there are great store. There be many *Adjectives*, which, in the *Mascul.* or *Neuter* Gender, are used for *Adverbes*, as they are also in the *Latine* and *Greeke*: as *Chanter clair*, to sing clearly, instead of *clairement*. So we say, *voir clair*, to see cleerely, *voir trouble* to see dimly. *Parler haut* to speake high, *courir roide* to runne swiftly, *couper court* to cut short. So also doe wee use, *juste* justly, *fort* strongly, *droit* rightly, *obscur* obscurely, *viste* quickly, *leger* lightly, *doux* sweetly, *rué* rudely, *soudain* suddainely, and many others.

Note likewise these Adverbiall Phrases, *à par* purely, *à plein* plainly, *à clair* cleerly, *à net* neatly, *à sec* dryly, *au net* purely, fairly, exactly, *à loisir* idly, *à plaisir* cheerefully, *à puissance* powerfully, *au possible*, *le possible*, possibly, *à tort* unjustly, *à droit* deservedly, *à couvert* closely, *à decouvert* openly, *à la Françoisé* in the French fashion, *à la solade* in a Souldier like manner: in these two last, *mode* or *maniere* seemeth to be understood, & they signifie as much as if we should say, *à la mode Françoisé*, *à la mode solade*: So likewise *à l' Italiene*, after the Italian manner, &c. *à point* fitly, *à profit* profitably, *à nud* nakedly, *à blanc* whitely, *à creu* rawly, *à temps* seasonably, *à heure* timely, *à froid* coldly, *à chaud* hotly, *au large* amply, largely, *à l'estroit* narrowly, *à despourveu*, or *au despourveu* at unawares, *à seureté* securely, *à repos* quietly, and such like, which are almost infinite in number.

Adverbs of Gentlenesse, and Moderation.

B *Ellement* softly, *tout beau* gently, *tout bellement* very softly, *tout beau bellement* very faire & softly, *peu à peu* by little & little, *petit à petit*, *de pas à pas*, step by step, *coy, tout coy*, *coyement* hush, calmly, *doucement*, *tout doux* sweetly, very sweetly, *lentement* lazily, *pié à pié*, foot by foot, *entre deux*, in the middle betweene both.

Adverbs

Adverbs of Haste.

EN haste, *hastivement*, à la haste hastily: soudain, *soudainement* suddenly: viste *vistement* quickly; à coup on a suddaine, tout à coup, all on a suddaine: sur le champ, forthwith, *promptement* readily, *prestement* readily, à la chaude hotly, à l'instant in a moment;

Adverbs of aggravation, and Inforcement.

SI, tant so, si que, tanque, so that: Si bien que, tellement que, de sorte que, en sorte que, de maniere que, so that: Du tout, totalement, entièrement, wholly, fully: voire even.

Si, and tant, have the same power of aggravation & intension, but in their use they differ. For si, is joyned onely with Nounes Adjective, and Adverbes: as, Si beau so faire, si bon so good, si sagement so wisely, si promptement so readily: with Verbes, Pronounes, and Participles which governe cases like Verbes, it is not used. For if wee should say, Un tel est si mon ami que rien plus, Such a man is so much my Friend, that no man is more. Or, Il a si joüé à la paulme, qu' il en est malade,

he hath playd so much at Tennis, that hee is sicke. This were bad French. But *tant* is joyned with all words: for we may say *Un tel est tant mon ami que, &c. Il a tant joué que, &c.* Both *si*, and *tant*, have the Conjunction *que*, after them, as you may see in the last Examples.

Adverbes of Asking.

POur quoy wherefore? Comme how? Combien how many? Comment in what manner? Pour quoy now why not? à sçavoir mon, and how? à sçavoir si and how if? à sçavoir mon and what I pray? à sçavoir mon si and what forsooth if?

Adverbes of Affirming.

Si so it is, ouy yes, bien well; ouy dà yes forsooth, voire voirement true it is so, ouy bien yes indeed, ay mon I have indeed, c'est mon it is indeed, ce fay mon I doe indeed.

It may be, we borrowed this encliticall Particle from the Greekes, without much varying of the use of it. For this word among us, serveth for an *Expletive*, viz. to fill up the sence, in *Interrogative* and *doubtfull* sentences: as à sçavoir mon, qui est le plus profitable, ou dommageable, le fer ou l'or? And which is most profitable, or hurtfull iron, or gold? So likewise, when we require any

any one to make an *assay* or *tryall*: as *écrivez mon*, come, write: *Lisez mon*, pour voir si vous entendez, Come reade, and see if you can understand it.

We use likewise this Particle *mon*, in *granting* and *yeilding* sentences, with the Verbe *faire* to doe, *avoir* to have, *estre* to be, *falloir* to behoove, and sometimes *vouloir* to be willing: but withall, take along with you these observations.

When the *chiefe* Verbe in the sentence, to which *assent* is given, is of an *uncompounded* tense, that is to say, if it be not compounded of the *common* Participle, and the *auxiliar* Verbe, then, the *assent* must be made to it, by the Verbe *faire*, which must be put, *without* the personal Pronounce of the *Nom.* case, and in the *same* tense with the Verbe, which signifieth the *thing*, to which assent is given: as *Vous écrivez* you write. *Resp. Ce fay mon* I doe indeed. *Monsieur jouëra à la paume*: The Gentleman will play at Tennis: *Ce fera mon*, he will indeed.

But, when the *chiefe* Verbe, of the *leading* sentence, is *one* of the *auxiliaries*, viz. *avoir* to have, *estre* to be, or the Imperf. *falloir* to behoove, the *assenting answer*, must be made by the *same* Verb that is the *chiefest*, in the leading sentence: as *Vous avez écrit*, you have written. *Resp. j'ay mon* I have indeed. *Cet enfant aura bon esprit*. That Child will have a good wit. *j'aura mon* he will indeed. *Vous estes de mes amis*, You are one of my friends: *Resp. Ce suis mon* I am indeed. *Vous estiez hier malade*, you werst sicke yesterday.

Yesterday. *Resp. C' est mon* it is true indeed. *Il faut prendre garde à vous*, A man must looke to you: *Resp. Ce faut mon*, or *ce fait mon*, hee must indeed. *Il faudroit estre sage*, a man should be wise: *Resp. Ce faudroit mon*, or *ce feroit mon*, hee should indeed. So likewise, when the Verbe *Vouloir* to be willing, is the leading Verb: as *Vous voulez venir avec moy*, you will come with me. *Resp. Ce veux mon*, or *ce fay mon*, I will indeed, or so I doc. *Mon sieur voudra partir matin*, The Gentleman will be gone early. *Ce voudra mon*, or *ce fera mon*, he will indeed.

When the Sentence is eyther a *command*, or a *request*, we give *assent* to it, by saying, *bien* well: as *Venez avec moy*, come with me. *Resp. Bien* well I will. *Je vous prie m' attendre un peu*, I pray stay for me a little. *Resp. Bien* well I will. *Un tel mande que vous luy escrivez*, Such a one biddeth you write to him, *Bien* well.

If the Sentence be *interrogative*, we must give *assent* to it, by the Adverbe *ouy* yes: as *Avez vous appris vostre leçon*, Have you learned your Lesson? *Ouy* yes. In those assenting answers, wherein we used the expletive *mon*, wee might have answered absolutely, by the Adverbe *ouy*, or *voire*, yes it is so, or you say true.

Besides this use of *voire*, it hath also another: for it signifieth an *exhauncing* of price, *increase*, *augmentation*, or *aggravation*, of some thing before mentioned: as *J' y mettray cinquante escus voire cent s' il est besoyn*, I will lay fifty crownes on it, I a hundred if need be. *Il emploie ses biens*,
voire

voire *sa vie pour ses amis*, He spendeth his estate, I and his life too, for his friends.

We use it likewise *Ironically*, as the Latines doe the Adverbe *scilicet*: as *Voire, que je croye une telle bourde*, Yes I shall beleeeve such a sop as this, shall I not? *Voire-voire, vous nous en voulez conter*, Yes yes, you will tell us a tale now. *Voire-dà, c'est bien à propos*, Yes forsooth, this is very fit now is it not?

Voirement signifieth in good truth or verily, and is used with the *Verbe*: which *Verbe*, in the *assenting* answer must be *repeated*, and *voirement* joyned with it: as *Vous aimez le jeu de la paume*, You love Tennis. *Resp. Je l'aime voirement*, I love it indeed. *Et ne vous en pouvez passer*, and you cannot be without it. *Je ne puis voirement*, I cannot indeed. *Voirement*, doth also signifie the Latine word *quidem*, in this manner. *Un tel est voirement habile homme, mais il luy est trop avis, &c.* Such a man is indeed an able man, but *indeed*, he is too much perswaded of his owne wit.

Adverbs of Denying.

NOn no, *ni* nor; nor, *Ne, Nenni, pas, point, no*, no such matter; *Non pas* no sure, *Nullement* by no means, *Non-dà* no forsooth; *Nenni* is an absolute *Neg.* & doth not require any other word

to be joyned with it : as *Voulez vous venir*, will you come ? *Resp.* *Nenni* no. *Me demande-on* doth any man aske for me ? *Resp.* *Nenni*, No.

Non, may be used in the same manner: and it may besides, be joyned to *Nounes*, *Adverbes*, and to *Participles* which are *meere* Adjectives : but not to *Verbes*, nor to *Participles* which *gouverne* Cases after them like *Verbes* : for *before* *Verbes*, and *such* *Participles*, we use *ne*, which, in the continuing of our speech, must come *before* the *Verbe* which signifieth the *thing done* : as *Je suis venu en France*, non afin de *passer inutilement mon temps*, mais pour apprendre la langue *Françoise*, I came not into France to spend my time idly, but to learne the French tongue. *Je ne suis pas venu pour perdre le temps*, I came not to loose time. *Ne dites mot*, speake not a word. *N'en croyez rien*, Believe nothing of it. *Ne faites rien mal à propos*, Doe nothing unsuitably. If the speech be not continued, *ne* is not used. For otherwise, in an *absolute* Negative answer, made by the *Verbes* *faire*, *avoir*, *estre*, *falloir*, *vouloir*, we must use *non*, in the mannner above mentioned : as *Ditez moy votre nom*, Tell mee your name. *Non feray* I will not. *Voilà votre hôte*, Looke you, there is your host. *Non est*, it is not be. *Il faut dissimuler* you must dissemble : *Non faut* I must not. *Vous ne voulez mal*, you wish me ill. *Non veux* or *non fay* I doe not.

If to a *Negation*, we will give an *affirmative* answer, we use the *Adversative* *si*, with the *Verbe*

Verbes aforeſayd, and in the ſame manner. *Vous n'eſtudiez point*, you doe not ſtudy. *Si ſay*, but I doe. *Non faites*, but you doe not. *Vous n'avez point d'ennuy*, you have no trouble. *Si ay*, but I have : *Non avez* you have not. *Vous mentez* you lye. *Non ſay*, I doe not. *Si faites*, but you doe. *Ce livre eſt mien*, this Booke is mine. *Non eſt*, it is not. *Si eſt*, but it is. *Il ne faut point eſtudier*, you muſt not ſtudy. *Si faut*, but I muſt. *Non faut*, you muſt not. *Vous me voulez mal*, you wiſh me ill : *Non veux*, I doe not. *Si faites*, but you doe.

We answer *almost* in the ſame manner, when we *aſſent* to a thing ſpoken, and allow it to bee true ; for then alſo we uſe *ſi* and *auffi* : as *Vntel eſt un habile homme*, Such a one is an able man. *Reſp. ſi eſt il, auffi eſt il*, he is, or ſo hee is. *Je croy que vous m'eſtes ami*, I thinke that you are my friend. *Si ſuis je, auffi ſuis je*, I am ſo, ſo I am. *Vntel a bon entendement*, Such a man hath a good underſtanding, *ſi a-il, auffi a-il*, he hath ſo, ſo he hath. *Ayez ſoin de vos affaires*, have a care of your buſineſſe. *Si ay je, ſi auray je, auſſi ay je*, ſo I have, ſo I will have, I have ſo. In theſe Phraſes, you ſee, the *Perſonall* Pronounes are uſed : but *after* the Verbe, as I ſayd in the Rules of the Pronounes.

When wee give an *aſſent* to a Negation, wee uſe alſo a Negative : as *Vous ne mentez pas*, You doe not lye. *Reſp. Non*, no I doe not. *Il n'eſt pas notre ami*, Hee is not
our

our friend. Resp. *Non, noe* : *Vn tel ne viendra point en France* ; Such a one will not come into France ; Resp. *Non, noe*. Soe likewise doe wee giue assent to a Prohibition : as *Ne vous parjurez pas*, Doe not forswear your selfe ; Resp. *Non feray je*, or *aussi ne feray je*, I will not ; *N' ayez point de peur*, be not afraid : *Si n' ay je, non ay je*, I haue not : *Aussin' auray je*, Nor will I : *Ne soyez point envieux*, Be not envious : *Non suis je*, I am not : *Si, or aussi ne suis je*, Nor am I : Wee may giue assent to these prohibitions, by saying absolutely *Bien*. Or *contradist* them, by saying *si suis, si feray, si ay, si auray, si feray, &c.*

Pas, & point, serue onely to make a negation fuller. In their vse they differ not much. *Point* fitteth best, when wee speake of things having quantity : as *le n' ay point d' argent, point de puissance, point d' esprit*, I haue no mony, no power nowit. It serueth also often, to make an absolute answer, which *pas* neuer doth. But *pas* doth better conclude either a simple negation, or a negation of quality : Yet it is often vsed, to signifie a negation of quantity also.

là, sometimes hath a peculiar smartnesse, in making a negation fuller : as *le ne vous diray ja ce que je pense*, I will never in this world tell you what I thinke. *On ne vous en croira ja*, Men wil neuer beleive you in this.

In conditionall sentences, (which are like the Latines with *nisi* and a Verbe) wee often leaue out *pas* and *point* : as *Si je ne vous renois de mes amis*.

amis, Vnlesse I thought you one of my friends. *Si vous ne m'estiez cher, je n'aurois tel soin de vous*, If you were not deere to me, I would not have such a care of you. So likewise in sentences, wherein the Negative Adverbe *ne*, followeth the Relatives *qui, que, lequel, dont*, which, with the Adverbe, signifie *quin* but, and *qui non*, which doth not, in Latine: as *Il n'y a homme qui ne peche*, There is not a man but sinneth. *Je ne vi jamais personne, qui ne fust bien aise d'estre loüé*, or *à qui on ne face plaisir de le loüer*, I never knew any man, that was not glad to be commended, or, that a man should not please in commending him. *Il ne fait rien, dont il ne se repente*, he doth nothing but he repenteth himselfe of it. So also in some Interrogations: as *Que ne faites vous vostre devoir?* Why doe not you your duty? *Que n'estudiez vous?* Why doe not you studie?

Moreover, we leave out *pas* and *point*, in sentences, wherein *hindrance, taking of heed, or foresight* of any inconvenience, is signified: as *Sauvez vous, que lon ne vous empoigne*, Away, take heed they doe not catch you. *Gardez que ne soyez descouvert*, take heed you be not discovered.

So likewise, when in the sentence, there is already some other word, which implyeth negation: such are, *rien* nothing, *jamais* never, *nul* none, *nullement* by no meanes; or *gueres* scarce, *onc* ever, *aucun* any, *quelconque* any one whatsoever, which doe also make a Negation fuller: as *je ne demanderay rien*. I will demand nothing. *Je ne vous connus onc*, I never knew you.

So also, when wee use the Verbe *Sçavoir* for *pouvoir* to be able : as *je ne sçaurois veiller*, I can not watch ; or the Verbe *pouvoir* it selfe, or *oser* to dare, *designer* to vouchsafe, *manquer* to faile. The rest you may learne by observation.

Strangers, when in the sentence there is a word that seemeth to include a negation, omit the Adverbe *ne*, and say *I' ay rien fait*, for *le n' ay rien fait*, I haue done nothing ; *I' ay jamais entendu cecy*, for *le n' ay jamais entendu cecy*, I never vnderstood this. Which should not be : For these words, viz. *rien*, *jamais*, &c. serue onely, in the course of our speech, to make a negation fuller : And a negation, to speake properly, is that Adverbe, which adheareth to the Verbe, and maketh the sentence negative. Wee must say then, *Nul ne peut servir à deux maistres*, No man can serve two masters, *Il n'a gueres de soin*, *aussi n'apprend-il rien*, He hath almost no care, nor doth he learne any thing ; Indeed, in the course of our speech, *rien* signifieth any thing, *jamais* ever, *gueres* somewhat, or some little, *nul* some, or any : But in an absolute answer, they are negatives, and signifie, nothing, neuer, little or nothing, none. In an affirmative sentence, *jamais* signifieth for euer, as *Nostre amitié est pour jamais*, or *durera un jamais*, Our friendship shall last for euer ; *le suis à jamais vostre serviteur*, I am your euerlasting seruant. Vnlesse you will say, that I should haue said *Jamais ne finir*, Nevert to end : And that *ne finir*, neuer to end, is cutt off by Ecclipsis. Rien in affirma-
tion

mation serueth to signifie a Subject, or an attribute; as *Cela est moins que rien* This is lesse then nothing, [here *rien* is an attribute] *Vn rien est suffisant à vous amuser, tant vous faites grand cas de rien*, A matter or nothing is sufficient to put you into a muse, soe little heed take you of any thing, [the first *rien*, is here taken for a subject, and the last, for an attribute] *On vous contente de rien*, you are contented with nothing. In negation, we e adde the expletive *pas* to *rien*: as *Cela ne pas rien*, This is not nothing; *Ce n'est pas moins que rien* This is somewhat yet: *Rien n'est pas suffisant*, Nothing is not sufficient: So also wee vie *nul*: as *Vostre opposition est nulle*, Your opposition is none at all: *N'est pas nulle* Is not nothing, *Leur pourchas sont nuls*, Their pursuits are vaine; *Leur pourchas ne sont pas nuls*, Their pursuits are not none at all.

Ne and *ni* signifie *nor*, and when a negation goeth before, you may indifferently use *ne* or *ni*, to repeat it ouer againe; as *Je ne crain ni vous*; *ni les vostres*, or *ne vous*, *ne les vostres*, I feare neither you, nor yours; *Je ne voy ne rime*, *ne raison*, or *ni rime*, *ni raison en vostre dire*, I see neither rime, nor reason in what you say.

Adverbes of Forbidding or Caution.

NE least that, *de peur que* for feare that, *afin que ne*, or *pour que ne* that it may not.

Observe

Observe these Examples for a rule. *Ne faites mal à personne, que mal ne vous en prene*, Doe no man hurt, *least hurt light on you*; or *De peur que mal vous en prene*, or *De peur que mal ne vous en advienne*. But, *De peur que mal ne vous en prene* p^{is}, signifieth, that harme may not light on you.

Adverbes of Swearing.

CErtes truly, *certainement* assuredly, *vrayement*, *en verité* in truth, *de vray*, *pour vray* in very deed, *par mon serment* by the oath & I have taken, *asseurement*, *pour certain*, *d'assurance* without doubt, *par mon ame* by my soule, *sur mon honneur* vpon mine honour, *sur ma vie* vpon my life, *en bonne foy* in good faith, *sur ma foy* vpon my credit, *si m'aide Dieu* so helpe me God, &c. *en da & ma nen da* indad, *mideux* gods mee, &c. are nice female oathes.

Adverbes of shewing.

Aga, voy, voyez loe, see, voicy see heere, voy-là, see there, these, will have after them the thing which they show, in the *Accus.* case; voy is vied to such a person, as wee vse *tu* and *toy* to, and soe is *Agā*. Some laugh at the word *aga*, and put it out of the number of Adverbes: But, since the learned doe it so much honour, as to say that it is deriued from the Greeke, I doe not see why

why such distaste should be taken at it; especially seeing it is so common among vulgar people. For my part, I know not whether it come from the Greeke or no; but this I know well enough, that it commeth from the *same originall* with *agacha*, which in *Languedoc* signifieth to see, as *aga* among our common people doth. The other words *aboue mentioned*, may be spoken *indifferently*, to one person, or more, viz. *voy-cy, voilà, voyez, &c.* as *me voi-cy* looke you heere I am, *Les voilà* looke you there they are.

Adverbes of difficultie.

A *Peine, scarce, difficilement, mal aisement* hardly, *à toute peine*, doe what you can, *à regret, enuis, à contrecœur* against ones will, against the haire. *à force, à toute force* with paines taking, *out of the fire* as we say, *n' a garde, ja n' adviene* signifie a difficulty of effecting that vpon a man, *from which* he hath an aversion, as *n' a garde de se laisser tromper*, He will hardly suffer himselfe to be cheated; *Je n' ay garde d' y retourner, je m' y suis trop mal trouvé*, I can forbear well enough going thither againe, I fared so ill there [it is like our english Phrase when wee say, *you shall not need to set a gard upon a man*, to keep him from going, where he hath no mind to goe.

Ja n' adviene, ja à Dieu ne plaise God forbid, will haue with them the Coniunct. *que*: as *Ja n' adviene que je vous offence*, God forbid that I should offend you; *Pensez vous que je sois venu pour*

pour enfreindre la loy ? jà n'advienne, Doe you thinke that I am come to violâre the law ? God forbid. Other Phrases of this sort, have power to make the *Personall* pronounes of the *Nomin.* case, come after the Verbe: as *A peine me puis je soutenir, tant je suis las*, I can scarce stand on my legs, I am so wearie.

Adverbes of contrariety.

AU contraire on the contrary, *au rebours*, à rebours quite thwart, à contrepic¹, à contrepoil, à l'opposite directly opposite.

Adverbes of confusion and disorder.

SENs dessus dessous, sens devant derriere, topsie turvie, the cart before the horse. *Pesle, mesle*, pell mell, *confusement* confusedly. You shall find some, that write it, *C'en dessus dessous*, c'en devant derriere: But I like the first Orthographie better.

Adverbes of Entercourse or vicissitude.

EN contre eschange In exchange, *A la pareille* one for another, *en retour, de retour, au retour*

tour, au reciproque forward and backward. *En son rang*, in its order. *L'un apres l'autre*, one after another, *reciproquement* reciprocally, *alternativement, tour à tour*, first one then another.

Adverbes of Emulation.

A *L'envi, d qui mieux mieux*, who shall get the better, *d qui pis pis*, who shall doe worst. When there is a contention betweene two, striving to get the better, wee use this Phrase, *viz. d qui*: as, *joüons à qui gagnera le prix*, Let us play for the stakes. *Disputons d qui sera plus savant*, Let us Dispute and see who shall be thought the Learnedest man. *Ces archers tirent, d qui donnera le plus pres du blanc*, These Archers shoote who shall come nearest the white. Sometimes *d* will have an *independant* Inf. Mood, with the *Comparative* degree: as *Faisons d mieux sauter*, Let us try who can leape best. *Faisons d courir plus roide*, Let us try who can run fastest, &c.

Adverbes of Progresse; and advancing.

D *E bien en mieux*, from good to better, *de mieux en mieux*, from better to better, *de mal en pis*, from bad to worse, *de pis en pis*,

ph, from worſe to worſe. *D' an en an*, from yeare to yeare ; *de jour en jour*, from day to day ; *d' heure en heure*, from houre to houre ; *de moment en moment*, from moment to moment ; *pied à pied*, *de pied à pied*, from foot to foot. Where we expreſſe an Adverbe in this manner, by *de* and *en*, the Latines make it end in *tim* : as *de porte en porte*, *d' huis en huis*, from gate to gate ; in Latine, *Oſſitim* : *de Ville en Ville*, from Towne to Towne ; in Latine *Oppidatim*. So likewiſe, *De rue en rue*, from ſtreet to ſtreet ; in Lat. *Vicatim*. So likewiſe, *de village en village*, *de maiſon en maiſon*.

When we make any diſtribution, we ſay, *par* or *à chaque*, as *par homme*, or *à chaque homme*, man by man ; in Lat. *Viritim*. *Par troupeaux*, *par bandes*, or *à chaque troupe*, *à chaque bande*, Troupe by Troupe, in Lat. *Catervatim* : *à chaque ſoldat*, Souldier by Souldier, &c.

Adverbes of Doubring.

PEut eſtre it may be, *par adventure*, *à l'adventure*, peradventure ; poſſible it is poſſible, *il ſe peut* perhaps, *à tout hazard* by hap.

Adverbes of Chance.

D' Adventure, *de fortune*, *par hazard*, *par fortune*, *de cas fortuit*, *fortuitement*, by chance, fortune, happe, happily.

Adverbes

Adverbes of Gathering together.

E*Nsemble, ensemblement, assemblément, together; avec together with, quand et quand, conjointement, pareillement joynly; l'un avec l'autre, the one with the other; uniment joynly.*

Adverbes of Similitude, and Comparison.

S*i, aussi so, tant, autant so as; comme as, ainsi so, ainsi que so as, si comme, ainsi comme as; de mesme, pareillement, en pareil cas, semblablement, en semblable cas, in like manner.*

Adverbes of Diminishing the Value.

A*u moins, à tout le moins, at the least; pour le moins, at least wise; au pis aller, let the worst come to the worst.*

Ec

Adverbes

Adverbs of Increasing the value.

AU plus, pour le plus, at the most; au mieux aller, pour le mieux, at the best.

Adverbs of abundance, and increase.

DE surcroist, over and above; d'abondant, in abundance; au surplus, par dessus, de par en sus, de surplus, du surplus, au surplus, au reste, au demeurant, moreover, so likewise, so also. Qui plus est, that which is more; outre, en outre, outre plus, besides, one thing more; de renfort adde hereto.

Adverbs of Assent and Teilding.

SOit, qu'ainsi soit, be it so; Pose le cas que, suppose it be so; Prenez que, prenez le cas que, take it for granted.

Adverbs of Separation.

A Part severally, à part moy, by my selfe, à part luy by him selfe, à part soy, by it selfe, &c. Arriere, backe with it; à l'escart, a-
Gray,

stray ; *à quartier*, here and there ; *separement*,
a sunder, *l'un d'avec l'autre*, the one from the
other.

Adverbes of Iteration.

D*ereches, encores*, againe ; *par fois*, first one
and then another at the same thing ; as *mon-*
rons à cheval par fois, let us ride, first one
and then another ; *de fois à quatre, arriere*, backe
and over againe, *coup sur coup* againe and againe.

Adverbes of Seriousnesse.

A*escient*, in good earnest ; *expres, expres-*
sément, expressly, deliberately ; *de pro-*
pos delibéré, on set purpose ; *de faict ad-*
visé, advisedly ; *de faict à pens*, *de guet à pens*,
considerately, watchfully and warily ; *de plein*
gré, with full consent.

Adverbes of Inconsideration.

P*ar mesgarde*, at unawares, imprudently, *au*
despourveu, à l'impourveu, à depourveu, à l'
improvisé, improvidently, inconsiderately ;
à l'estourdie, headily ; *à la volée*, giddily, all in
hast, upon the fling ; *inconsiderement, sans y penser*,
inconsiderately, without minding it ; *temeraire-*
ment rashly.

Adverbes of Conclusion.

EN *fin* in fine, *finablement*, *finalement* finally ; *au bout de tout*, at the upshot ; *pour faire fin*, to conclude ; *pour conclusion*, *pour conclurre*, to make an end ; *fin finale*, *à la fin*, at the very last : *à la par fin*, when all comes to all ; *pour finir*, *pour achever*, to make an end. I am not ignorant, that many more Adverbiall Phrases might here be added, but these may suffice, and by these a man may judge of the rest.

Of the Preposition.

I Shall not now need, to make repetition of what hath beene fully sayd already, concerning the use of the Prepositions *de*, *du*, *des* ; which, though they serve us for Articles, yet they are answerable to the Latine Prepositions *de* of, *è*, *ex*, out, of, *à*, *ab*, *abs*, from ; So also, our Prepositions *à*, *aux*, *es*, answer to the Latine Prepositions *ad* to, *erga* towards, *in* in, *intra* within. If you have forgot, looke backe to the Articles.

Preposi-

*Prepositions serving to the Nom. and
Accus. Case.*

A Pres after, avec with, avant before, chez at, contre against, dans, dedans within, deçà on this side, delà on that side, des from, devant before, derriere behind, dehors without, dessus above, dessous beneath, devers towards, depuis since, from. En in, emmi among, es in, envers towards, environ about, entour about, entre between, endroit about, encontre right over against, hors without, juxte hard by, outre beyond, beside; par by, parmi all along, pour for, par dedans all within side of, par dehors all without, par devant in presence of, par derriere on the back side of, par dessus above, par dessous beneath, par devers to, toward; par deçà on this side, par delà on that side, sans without or except; sus, sur above, sous under, selon according to, riere under the command of, vers towards, à vau, à val, downe, as à vall' eau, downe the water; à mont upwards.

*Prepositions serving to the Gen.
Case.*

A Rriere behind, auprès neere, à l'environ about, aux environs, au tour, à l'entour,

aux entours, round about; *le long*, *au long* all along; *au prix* in comparison, of; *ensuite* consequently upon, *à l'esgard*, *au regard* in respect of, *à l'encontre* against, *au rencontre* at the meeting of, *au travers*, *à travers* quite, or crosse through, *au rebours*, *à rebours* quite contrary to, *à l'endroit*, about; *loing*, *au loing* farre off, *au devant* in presence of, *au dessus* above, on the top; *au dessous* underneath, *au derriere* in the backside, *au dehors* on the outside, *au dedans* on the inside, *au deſà* on this side, *au delà* on that side, *à l'es- cart* aside, *au droit*, *droit à droit*, *vis à vis*, over against, right over against; *au ras* neere, *ras à ras*, very neere.

*Prepositions serving to the Nom.
and Gen. case.*

A *Utour* about, *à travers*, *au travers*, quite through; *à val*, *d'au*, downeward, *à mont* upwards, *environ* about, *entour* round about, *bors* without, *dehors* without, *pres* neere, *vis à vis*, right over against; Note here that *pres*, and *vis à vis*, are not joyned to the Nom. cases of the *Personall* Pronounes. For it is not good to say, *pres moy* neere me, *pres elle* neere her: but *pres de moy*, *pres d'elle*: nor may we say, *vis à vis vous*, right over against you; but, *Vis d'vis de vous*: When they are joyned to other words, they serve to both Cases.

Prepositions serving to the Dative Case.

I *Usque, jusques* untill, *eu esgard*, respect beeing had; *dans, dedans* within a place, *en* in a place: but these last, *viz. dans, dedans, en*, differ in their use and Syntaxe. For *dans* and *dedans* may be joyned to any word, of what Gender or Number soever it be: but *en*, cannot be joyned with the Article *le*, or *les*: as *Le roy est dans, dedans le chasteau*, or *au chasteau*, The King is in the Castle: and not, *en le chasteau*. So likewise, *dans, dedans les jardins, aux*, and *es jardins*, in the Gardens: and not, *en les jardins*. *En*, is put before all words of the Feminine Gender: as *en la Maison*, in the house: It is likewise put before all Masc. which begin with a Vowell, or *h*; Mute: as *En l' hostel, en l' arbre*, In the Inne, on the tree. In a word, it commeth before all Nounes, and Pronounes, which have not the Article *le*, without an Apostrophus, nor *les* before them: as *plusieurs many, maint much, tout all, tel such*.

En is used likewise before these Articles, *de, du, des*: and where we cannot use *en*, wee use *dans, dedans, à, au, aux*, or *es*: but if we doe not speake of a place, and the thing contained in it, we must not use *dans* or *dedans* instead of *en*.

En, when it is put before a Noun, without any Article, it signifieth like: as *Parler en sage personnage*, to speake like a wise man; *Marcher en Capitaine*, to walke like a Capitaine. We

We use *en*, in such Phrases as these which follow; *En verité je garderay vostre memoire*; In truth I will remember you: *En Resouvenance de vous*, In memory of you. *En Recompense de vos bons offices*, In recompence of your good offices. *Recevez en signe d' amitié*, take it for a token of Friendship.

Es, is a Definite Preposition of the Plurall number, and is as much as *dans les*: as *se pourmener es prez*, to walke in the Medowes.

The names of *Regions, Countreyes, Kingdomes* and *Iles*, are joyned with the Preposition *en*, and *Verbes* signifying *motion* or *Resting*: as *le vay en Italie, pendant que vous sejournez en France*; I goe into *Italy*, while you tarry in *France*. The Grammarians call these the greater Places.

The names of *Cities, Townes Corporate, Hamlets, Villages* and *Castles* (which the Grammarians call the *lesser places*) have commonly the Preposition *à*, with the aforesaid Verbs of *motion* and *rest*: as *Vous allez à Paris, et je demeure à Bloys*; you goe to *Paris*, and I stay at *Bloys*. The names of *Innes*, must be joyned with the *Definite Articles*, viz. *au, à l' à la, aux*: as *Logé à la pomme de pin, au Lion d' or*, Lodged at the *Pine-Apple*, at the *golden Lion*.

Yet you shall read, *en Ierusalem*, at *Hierusalem*, *en Iericho* at *Iericho*, *en Damas* at *Damascus*, *en Antioche* at *Antioch*, *en Beroë* at *Beroe*, &c. I thinke, that this is peculiar to places beyond the Sea, mentioned in the Holy Scripture. We may say indeed, *en Paris, en Bloys, en Orleans*, but then

then wee doe not meane transporting thither, or staying there, but something contained within the compasse of Paris, Bloys, or Orleans: as *Un tel est le plus sçavant homme qui soit en Paris*, Such a one is the most learned man in Paris.

Some of our Prepositions, enter into composition with Verbes, Nounes, and other parts of Speech.

Entre among, signifieth a mutuall, and Reciprocall action, if the Verbe be Reciprocall: as *s'entr'aimer*, to love one another; *s'entre haïr*, to hate one another; *s'entr'aider*, to helpe one another; *s'entre nuire*, to hurt one another; Otherwise, it signifieth Diminution of an action: as *entr'ouvrir*, to open by halves; *entr'ouïr*, to heare by halves; *entrevoir* to have glympe of.

Contre, signifieth Repugnance: as *contredire* to contradict, *contre quarrer* to thwart. Likewise imitation: as *contre faire* to counterfeit.

sur, signifieth exceeding: as *surmonter* to excell, *surprendre* to surprise, *surpasser* to surpass, *survivre* to survive.

Pour also is used in composition: as *pourschasser* to prosecute, *poursuivre* to pursue, *poursuivre* to breake up.

Many Prepos. are inseperable, the most part of which are derived from the Latine. viz. *a, ab, abs, in, ex, præ, pro, dis, per, trans, con, Re*, which have the same force with us, that they have in the Lat.

We have some inseperable Prepositions, proper to our language, viz. *Mes, des, for, tre.*

Mes,

Mes, implyeth error: as *mesdire* to speake amisse, *mesprendre* to mistake out of wilfulnesse, *mesgarde* to mistake out of ignorance.

Des, changeth the word in which it is, to a contrary sense: as *desordre* disorder, *despecer* to dispatch, *desdire* to unsay.

For, signifieth going out: as *Forligner* to degenerate, *forclorre* to shut out, *forbannir* to banish forth, *fortraire* to draw forth.

Tre, as *Trepasser* to dye, *treffaillir* to sparkle, *trespigner* to leape up and downe, *tremousser* to shiver and shake, with others, which by custome and observation may be learned.

Of the Coniunction.

Coniunctions Copulative.

OR but, et and, si yea, que that, aussi also, aussi que as also, joint, joint que moreover, avec both.

Coniunctions Conditionall.

SI if, si non, si non que, but that; pourueque so that, mais que when as, Par tel-si que if so be that, à condition que, à la charge que, provided, or on condition that.

Con-

Coniunctions Disiunctive and of Doubting.

OU or, ou bien, or else; si whether, que si and if, soit, soit que whether, en que or that, fust, fust que, were it shan.

Soit and *fust* have no Verbes after them, but onely some Nounes; as *soit riche, soit pauvre, j'en en say pas moins d'estime, pourveu qu' il soit homme de bien*: Be he poore, or be he rich, I esteeme him no whit the lesse, so he be an honest man. *Fust*, may be put after Phrases, which signifie time past; as *Il les salua toutes, fust belles, fust laides*, He saluted them all, were they handsome or unhandsome: Yet in the *Plural* number, it were better to say *soyent* and *fussent*: as *Cette Province est si fertile, que soyent Villes, ou Bourgades, tout est rempli de biens*; This Province is so fruitfull, that whether they be Cities, or Country Townes, there is good store every where. *Il offrit de quitter tous les avantages qu' il avoit receus, fussent honneurs, dignitez, ou possessions*, He offered to forsake all advantages and conveniences which he had received, whether honours, dignities, or possessions,

Soit que, fust que, soyent que and *fussent que* have after them Verbes of the *Oprat.* Mood. *soit que* and *soyent que*, will have the first *Preterimp.* the *Preterperfect*, and the first *Preterpluperfect* Tense: *Fust que*, and *fussent que*, will have the

the first *Preterimp.* and the first *Preterpl.* tense; and they signifie the same that the Latine *Coniunct.* *five* doth, *viz.* whether.

Or, when it is a *Coniunct.* copulative, it begetteth a Sentence gravely: as *Porro, autem, ceterum*, in Latine doe, which signifie *now, moreover, but*: and *que* signifieth the same with *quod*, *viz.* that: but commonly before *que*, we put the *Demonst.* Pronoun *ce*: as *Ce que vous vous esjouissez de ma prosperité, je ne m'en esbahis pas*, or *de ce que*; I wonder not that you rejoyce at my prosperity. In the Treatise of the *Verbes*, and elsewhere, I have set downe many examples, wherein this Coniunction is used.

The Rest of the Coniunctions, are of themselves well enough knowne: save onely *si*, which in our tongue is used divers wayes, and hath diverse Constructions. When it is a Coniunction copulative, it joyneth very gravely, one member of a Sentence to another: as *Lors Pompée fut adverti que Sertorius approchoit, Si se prepara à luy livrer bataille*, Then was Pompey advertised of Sertorius approaching, and so hee prepared to give him bataille. *Il Rencontre le personnage, si luy dit, &c.* He met the man, and so sayd unto him. You may have very many examples of this, in *PLUTARCHES* workes, translated by *Mons. AMIOT*, and in other Authors besides: When *si* hath this signification, it is joyned with all the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

Si, when it is a *Coniunct.* of *Doubting* signifieth

eth *whether*, or *whether or no* : and when it hath this signification, it may be joyned with *all* the Tenses of the *Indicative* Mood, the *Fut.* not excepted : Likewise, with the second *Preterimp.* and the two *Preterplup.* Tenses, and the *Fut.* of the *subjunct.* Mood, and not with the first *Preterimp.* the first *Preterp.* nor the *Pres.* Tense.

When *Si* is a *Conditionall Coniunct.* it signifieth *if*, and then it is joyned with *all* the *Indic.* Mood, but the *Fut.* Tense : and instead of it, makes the *Present* Tense have a *Fut.* signification. It will not admit of any Tense of the *subjunctive* Mood, save onely the first *Preterplup.* Tense, to which it is often joyned, and sometimes the first *Preterimperfect* tense, but that is very seldom.

Pourvenque and *maisque*, agree with the *Pres.* the first *Preterim.* the *Pret.* and the first *Preterplup.* Tense of the *subjunct.* Mood.

Par tel si que, *à condition que*, *à la charge que*, and such like Phrases, agree with the *Fut.* Tense of the *Indic.* Mood, and the whole *subjunctive* Mood.

Si non, is a kind of *Exceptive Coniunction*, which hath no *Verbe* after it, but eyther a *Noune*, *Pronoune*, *Participle*, or some other part of Speech. *Que* may be used in the same sense, after a *Negation* : as *le ne connoy si non vous*, or *Que vous en cette Ville*, I know no body in this towne but only you. But when an *affirmation* goeth before it, *sauf*, *fors*, & *horsmis*, may be used instead of it : as *J'ay veu toute la France si non, sauf, fors, la*

la Bretagne, I have seene all *France*, but *Bretany*.

Si non que, sauf-que, forf-que, &c. Vpon severall occasions, may be joyned with all the Tenses of the *Indic.* and *Subjunct.* Mood.

But, because every *Conditionall* Sentence consisteth of two parts, viz, The *Antecedent* and the *Consequent*; You are to understand, that when *si*, being a *Conditionall* Coniunction, is joyned with the *Preterimp.* or the *Preterplup.* of the *Indic.* Mood, in the *Antecedent*, it requireth ordinarily, the second *Preterimp.* or the second *Preterplup.* tense of the *Optat.* Mood in the *Consequent*: as *Si j' avois escrit cecy, j' aurois achevé ma tasche*, If I had written this, I should have finished my Taske.

But if, in the *Antecedent*, the Coniunct. *si* be joyned, with other Tenses of the *Indic.* Mood, then the Verbe of the *Consequent*, may be of any Tense of the *Indic.* Mood, that the sense shall require: or of the second *Preterimp.* of *either* of the *Preterplup.* tenses, or the *Future* of the *Subjunct.* Mood, if the sense will beare it.

When *si* is joyned with the first *Preterplup.* of the *Subjunct.* Mood, in the *Antecedent*; it shall have the same Tense commonly, in the *consequent*, where also it may have, the second *Preterimperf.* and the second *Preterplup.* Tense of the same Mood.

If the *Antecedent* be compounded of many Verbes, joyned together by some Coniunct. viz. *ou que, et que*, or a *Relative*, viz. *qui, que, lequel,*

quel, dont, and if the thing spoken of, be positively affirmed, then, after the Coniunctions and Relatives aforesayd, Verbes of the *Indicar.* Mood must be used : as *Si j' avois le livre qui est chez vous*, If I had the Booke which is at your house. In a word, when the thing spoken of, is positively affirmed, it must be expressed in the *Indicative* Mood.

If the thing spoken of in the *Antecedent*, be not positively affirmed that it is so, but mentioned as a thing that *may, might, would, should* or *ought* to be, then, after the *Coniunct.* and *Relatives* aforesayd, Verbes of the *Optat.* Mood must be used, and for the most part, of the same *Tense* with the fore-going Verbe, though it should fall out by this meanes, that a *Pres.* Tense, should be joyned to a *Present*, and a *Preterp.* to a *Preterperfect* Tense : as *Si j' avois chose qui vous fust utile, dont eussiez besoin, ou qu' eussiez affaire de moy, et me voulussiez employer, je vous servirois de bon cœur, et m' y efforcerois à mon pouvoir*, If I had any thing that were usefull to you, and you had need of it, or had you any businesse for me, and would employ me, I would with all my heart serve you, and doe my best indeavour to the utmost of my power. *Si je voy qu' il face son devoir, je le Recompenseray amplement*, If I see that he doth his dury, I will give him a large Re-compense. *Si j' ay en ma puissance, chose qui vous soit agreable, &c.* If I have in my power, any thing that is pleasing to you. Let those, which learne our language, marke this Rule : for that which they

much stumble at, is the using the *Indic.* Mood for the *Opt.* and the *Opt.* for the *Indicative*; In the Books which they read, there are many examples to guide them, let them give their minds to observation.

Pourveuque, and *Maisque*, if, in the *Antecedent*, they be joyned with a *Verbe* of the *Present* tense of the *Subj.* Mood, in the *Consequent*, they shall have, either a *Pres.* or a *Fut.* tense of the *Ind.* Mood. If, in the *Antecedent*, they be joyned with the *Preterp.* of the *Subj.* Mood, they shall have a *Fut.* tense of the *Indic.* or *Subjunct.* Mood, in the *Consequent*. If, in the *Antecedent*, they have the 1. *Preterimp.* of the *Subj.* Mood, they shall have the 2. *Preterimp.* in the *Consequent*. If, in the *Anteced.* they have the 1. *Preterpl.* of the *Subj.* Mood, they shall have the 2. *Preterpl.* in the *Consequent*.
Si non que, *si ce n'est*, &c. as, in the *Antecedent*, they may have all the Tenses of the *Indic.* and *Subjunct.* Mood, so likewise may they, in the *Consequent*, if the sense will beare it,

Coniunctions causall or Rationall.

CAr for, *par ce*, *pource*, because; *par quoy* whereby, *pour ce que*, *par ce que*, because that; *autant que*, *pour autant que* forasmuch as, *a cause que*, *a raison que*, because that; *autant que* in somuch &c, *a fin que*, *a ce que*, *a fin de*, to & end that.
A fin que, and *a ce que*, will have after them & *Pres.* the 1. *Preterimp.* and the 1. *Preterpl.* of the *Subj.*

Subj. Mood ; & *à fin de*, cometh before an *Infin. Mood*.

The rest of this rancke, are joynd to *all* tenses of the *Indic.* and the *Subjunct. Mood*, and other Moods also, if the sense require it : for of themselves, they governe no Mood:

Coniunct. discretive, & Adversative.

M*ais, ains*, but ; *ainçois*, but rather ; *mais que* but that ; *ains que, ainçois que* or ere that, *quand* seeing that, *toutes fois* notwithstanding, *neant moins* nevertheless, *si est-ce que* yet for all that, *bien que* *combien que, ore que, encore que, ja soit que*, howsoever it be ; *attendu que* so that, *pourtant* yet, *comme ainsi soit que*, seeing it is so, *ven que* seeing that, *lors que* then when, *si, aussi, et si, aussi que*, yet, yet if, yet withall. *Puis que* since that.

Mains, ains, ainçois, toutes fois, neant moins, si est-ce que, may be joynd with all the *Indic. Mood*, with the 2d. Preterimp. and both the Preterplup. tenses, and the *Fut. tense* of the *Subjunct. Mood*. If they be joynd with other Tenses of the *Subiunct* mood, this is put upon them, by some other swaying word in the sentence, for of themselves they would not require it.

Ains, mais, ainçois, have the same signification ; viz. but : and in a *Corrective Sentence* [that is, such a sentence, wherein that which cometh in *the latter* part of it, mendeth either in whole, or in part, that which went before] one may be put for the other,

both in *Affirmation* and *Negation*: as *Untel n'est pas savant, mais, ains, ainçois n'a pas du juel salué les bonnes Lettres*, Such a man is not learned, nay, he hath scarce saluted the Muses over a Threshold. *Beaux yeux, ainçois flambeaux, mais soleils de mon ame, qui luisiez, ains, lancez une amoureuse flamme*, O yee faire eyes, yea starres, yea even Sunnes of my Soule, which with your light send forth, yea dart forth Loves fire. And when they are taken in this *sense*, they bind no Verbes to be of any Tense, but follow the construction, of that part of the sence, that goeth before, and is corrected in a manner by these Conjunctions, viz. *mais, &c.*

But when they are *Adversatives*, they differ in their use; For *mais*, is generally used in all opposition, but *ains, ainçois*, are then onely used, when that, which goeth before in the Sentence, is

* Here aime Negative: as *Je vous aime, mais vous ne me rendez pas le Reciproque*, I love you, but you doe not love me againe. Heere *ains*, and *ainçois*,

* Here aime might not have beene used. *Vous ne m'aimez pas mais, ains, ainçois, vous me haïssez*, You doe not love me, but you hate me.

Ainsque, ainçois que, (which imply some time, and signifie before that) are joyned to the *Present*, the first *Preterimp.* the *Preterperf.* and the first *Preterplup.* tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood, as well as *ains, mais, ainçois, &c.*

Maisque, quand, lorsque, alorsque, are, in divers respects, both *Adverbes* and *Conjunctions*, and signifie so that, if so be that: And of *maisque*

que you are to note, that it is joyned to the *Pres.* the first *Preterimp.* the *Preterp.* and the first *Preterplup.* of the *Subjunct.* Mood.

Quand, lorsque, alorsque, à l'heure que, may be joyned to *all* the Tenses of the *Indic.* Mood, and to the 2d. *Preterimp.* Tense, to both the *Preterplup.* Tenses, and the *Fut.* Tense of the *Subjunctive* Mood: the like may be sayd of *tantdisque, ce pendant que, à mesure que,* and other such like Phrases.

Bienque, combienque, ja-soitque, oreque, encoreque have the same signification and construction, with *all* the Tenses of the *Indic.* and *Subjunctive* Mood, wherewith they are joyned: But it is best, to joyne them with the *Present*, the first *Preterimp.* the *Preterp.* and the first *Preterplup.* Tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood.

Ueuque, attenduque, puisque, will admit *all* the Tenses of the *Indic.* Mood, to be joyned with them: and when they are in any *Conditionall* Sentences (whether the condition be *expressed* or *understood*) or in Sentences *Imperative*, or *Exhortative*, they will agree with the second *Preterimp.* or the two *Preterpl.* and the *Futures* of the *Subjunct.* Mood: as *Attendu que je vous aurois aidé en vostre nécessité, vous me deussiez rendre la pareille,* Seeing that I had ayded you in your necessity, you should requite me. *Que ne secourez vous vos amis, puisque vous le seriez bien si vous vouliez,* Why doe not you ayde your friends, seeing you could if you would.

Comme-ainfi-soitque, may be joyned with *all* the Tenses of the *Indic.* and *Subjunct.* Mood: but best, with the *Pres.* tense, the first *Preterimp.* tense, and the first *Preterplup.* Tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood.

Comme ainfi fust que, is an Adverbiall Phrase, sometimes used, and it is joyned to the first *Preterimp.* and the first *Preterpluperf.* Tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood.

Et si. sometimes signifieth although, notwithstanding, like *et si*, and *quanquam* in the Latine, and *combien que*, *ja soit que*, in the French: and it is a meere *Adversative*, which, neyther in Latine, nor French, can begin a sentence, but is alwayes used in *opposition*, to something that went before: as *Vous m'avez fait assez de mal*, *et si ne vous fis onc déplaisir*, You have done me mischief enough, though I never did you any displeasure.

Sometimes it signifieth, and withall, moreover, like *quinetiam*, *atque etiam* in Latine, and *et mesme*, *et encor*, *outréplus*, in French: and it is used, to *add* something over and above, to that which hath bin already spoken: as *Alexander estoit liberal*, *et si, accompagnoit ses dons, d'un joyeux visage, qui les rendoit plus agreables*, Alexander was liberall, and withall, he accompanied his gifts with a cheerefull countenance, *et* made them more pleasing. *Il parla à eux gracieusement*, *et si leur fit de beaux presens*, He spake gracionly to them, and withall, he gave them goodly Presents. This Coniunct. is joyned with *all* the *Indic.* Mood,

Mood, and with the second *Preterimp.* both the *Preterplup.* Tenses, and the *Future* Tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood.

Si, aussi, aussi que, si est ce que, when they are *Adversatives*, are joyned with all the *Indicative* Mood, with the 2d. *Preterimp.* both the *Preterplup.* tenses, and the *Fut.* tense of the *Subjunct.* Mood. See some Phrases, wherein the two first of these are used, in the Rules of *e, Feminine*, *Pag.* 14. and in the rules of the *Prepositive* Pronouns of the *Nom.* case, *Pag.* 153. as also in the Rules of the *Adverbs* of *denying* and *affirming*. For *si*, and *si est ce que*, it is evident, that they differ from the rest, in one thing: *viz.* in being used, to make opposition, betweene that which goeth before in the sentence, and that which followeth: as *Vous me voulez mal, si ne vous sis je jamais tort, or si est ce que je ne vous sis, &c.* or *et si je ne vous sis, &c.* You wish me ill, yet I never did you wrong. *On se fie en un tel, si n'est il, or si est ce qu' il n'est gueres homme de bien:* They trust in such a one, and yet he is scarce an honest man.

Aussi, aussi que, are used to bring in a reason, in the latter part of the sentence, to confirm something, that was mentioned in the beginning. *Vous haïssez un tel, aussi vous en a il donné occasion, or aussi qu' il vous en a donné occasion,* you hate such a one, and he hath given you cause. *Vous vous fiez en moy, aussi suis je de vos meilleurs amis, or aussi que je suis,* You trust and relye upon mee, and I am one of your best friends.

Concluding Coniunctions.

Donc, doncques therefore, Parquoy, partant wherefore, and therefore ; par ainsi so that, ainsi donc so then, pourtant whereupon, for which cause ; pour ce, par ce, for this reason ; par cecy by this now, par cela by that then, pour cecy for this heere, pour cela for that there.

Pourtant, was put among the *Adversative* Conjunctions, and then it signified *notwithstanding*, like *toutes fois*, *neanmoins*, and governeth the same Tenses that they doe : And when it is a *concluding* Conjunction, it doth *not* alter the tenses wherewith it is joyned, no more then others of the same ranke doe.

Of the Interiection, which is a kind of Adverbe.

[Before I come to the *Interjections*, I must tell you, that *not onely* in the French, but in *all other* Languages, they are *so peculiar* to each language, that they *cannot* be translated *word for word*, out of any one language into another : I hope therefore, it will be sufficient, if in English I set down what we say, when we meane the same that they doe in *France*, when they use *their Interjections*.]

of

Of Sorrow, and Wearisomnesse.

H*A! ah! he! eb! las! belas! oh! alas! &*
weary.

Of Encouraging.

S*Us! or sus! up! goe too! avant! or-avant!*
on! now then! Hai heigh there! hai avant
heigh! on there! courage! stoutly! pousse
boute! put on, ça, ça! there, there.

Of Admiratiō.

A*A, oho, aha, hoïe, oh, voy, aga, dà, et dà.*
he dà, what? oh me, wonderfull, very
strange, looke looke, see see.

Of Calling.

H*é, hau, hau-là, houlabé, chouse, hochouse.*
Ho, ho there, hoho there.

of

Of crying out in Affright, or Danger.

A *H, ah, à l' aide* helpe here ; *à l' arme*, to armes, to armes ; *à la force*, oh they offer me violence ; *au secours*, helpe there ; *au meurtre* murther, murther, *au feu* fire, fire, *au Loup* ô the woolfe, *halas, alas*, our alas.

Of feeling Paine.

A *Ou, baou, aouf, ah, of, alas*. The same words will serve in English.

Of Scorne or Aversion.

Fi, Poüach! out, foh, fye upon it.

Of Spight or Indignation.

B *Bran, foin, babou, bab, vab, brique*, a T. in your teeth, a straw for you, away, away, blocke, post, dullard.

Of Driving away.

G *Are ware, bai, bai, d' icy*, begone ; *bai de là*, away there ; *bor d' icy*, out here ; *bor de là*, out there ; *apreç* backe, *devant* on there.

of

Of Commanding Silence.

ST, paix là, st, peace there; Cheut, mot, jouë,
tout coy, husht, not a word.

Of making Stop.

HOlà, ho there, prou well, well, so, so;
assez enough, enough; Demeure, arreste;
stay, stay, budge not.

Of Ioy.

GAy, debait, alaigrement, heighday, as a
man would wish, merrily then.

The greater part of the *Interjections*, re-
quire a *Nom.* or *Vocative* case, to be joyned with
them: as *belas moy miserable*, oh wretch that I
am. *Oh le grand malheur*, oh what horrible ill
lucke is this.

Interjections of Indignation, and driving a-
way, will have an *Ablat.* case: as *Brav de vous*,
a T. for you. *Foin du sot*, a straw for that Ass; *Babou du babouin* a mcw for a Baboone. So like-
wise *Interjections of abhorring*: as *Fy de la vi-*
lanie, out upon baseness.

Ofte times, when we use *Interjections*, we break
off abruptly, and say no more words after *thé*. And
often-

oftentimes, we use the Conjunction *que* after them: as *Las ! que nous sommes misérables, A-las !* how miserable are wee. *Or-sus ! que l'on se dépeiche,* well ! let them make an end there. *Hé ! que cela est laid,* Oh ! how ugly is that. *Pouach ! que voilà qui put,* foh, how that stinketh.

We say likewise, *gare l'eau, gare le heurt* wære the blow, *gare la teste* wære your head there: as if it were the *Imperative* Mood of some Verbe: and some say, *gare vous delà,* away there, take heed.

Aga, is a word very commonly used, in familiar *thouing* Phrases, or in *Admiration*: Some thinke it *ridiculous*, because of the *common* use of it among the *Vulgar*, which indeed giveth authority to all other things, [and why not to this?] Some learned men, doe it the honour, to derive it from a *Greeke* word, which signifieth *to Wonder*: I know not whether that be so or no: but I am sure, in *Languedoc*, when they would *shew* a thing, they say commonly, *Agache, agacha,* looke.

Dà, cyther is an Interjection, or very like one; yet, because it is used much among the common people, some could willingly laugh at it, and yet it is so necessarie, that they cannot bee without it. They derive this too from the *Greeke*, because our Forefathers wrote it *dea*, and, as it seemeth, pronounced it as they wrote it: for our old good, honest hobinols in the Country, pronounce it so still. For the *antiquity* of it, I can say little: but we have shortened it, and it is a word infinitely

used

used an
enforce
est mon
doth I
not.
ter, I
I. II
nothi
W
missio
si Rig
He d
He d
pray

used among us, upon all occasions, to fill up, and enforce an asseveration : as *ouy-dà*, yes indeed. *C'est mon dà*, it is so upon my word. *Ce fait mon dà*, it doth I can assure you. *Non fait dà*, sure it doth not. *Non dà*, no sure. *Nenni dà*, no such matter. *Je le veux bien dà*, I with all my heart will I. *Il n'en sera rien dà*, I warrant you he will doe nothing in the world.

We use it also, to expresse *Wonder* and *Submission*, both together : as *Et dà ! vous ne serez si Rigoureux*, Oh sure ! you will not be so hard. *He dà ! je vous en prie*, alas Sir ! I pray you now. *He dà ! or et dà ! ne vous en fâchez pas*, Nay, I pray now be not angry, &c.

Laus Deo.

FINIS.
